

Intermediate

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman



Sara.English.School

[www.SaraEnglishSchool.com](http://www.SaraEnglishSchool.com)



SARA  
English School

# Oxford Word Skills



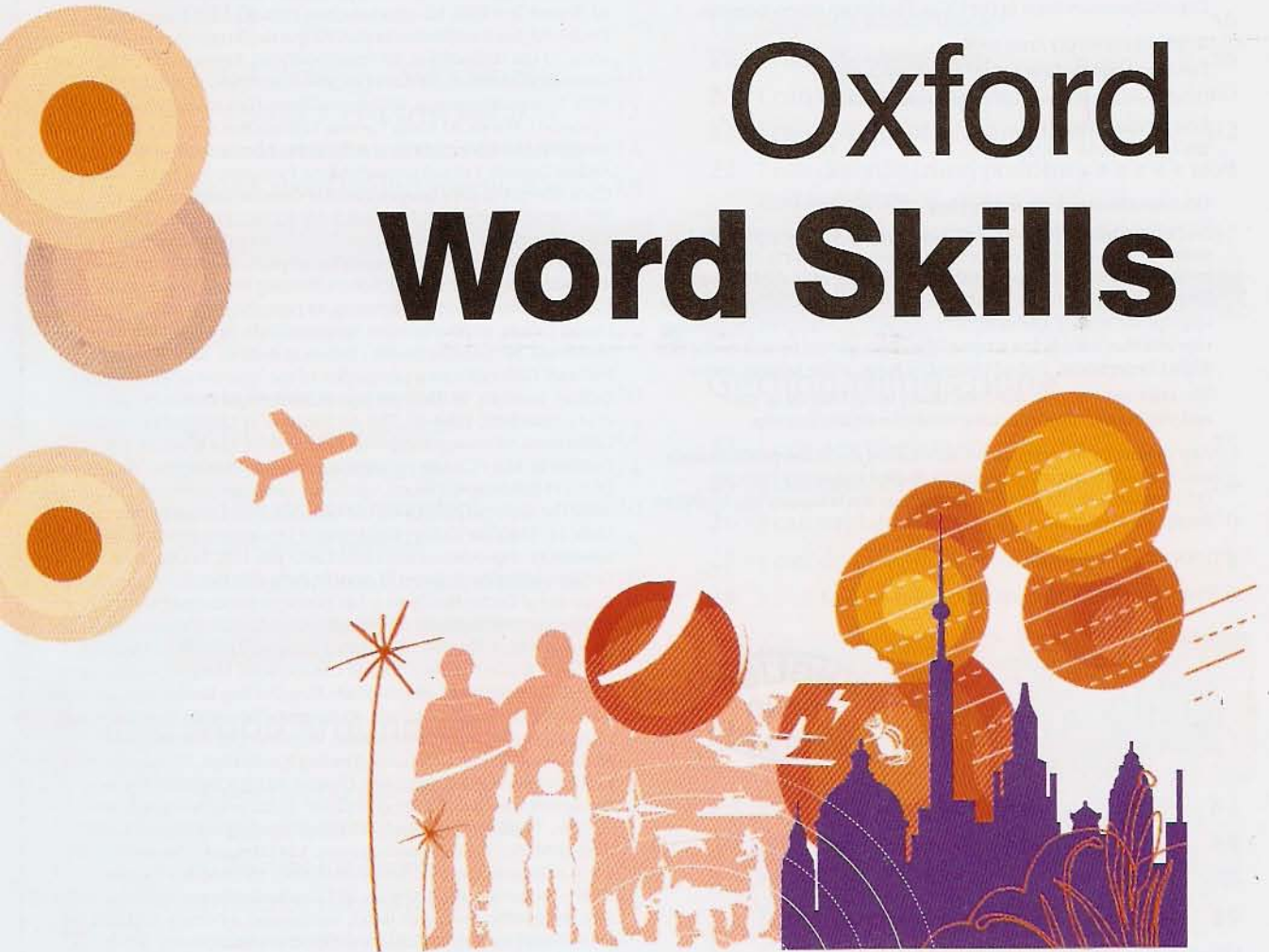
Learn and practise English vocabulary



Intermediate

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman

# Oxford Word Skills



OXFORD  
UNIVERSITY PRESS

50430



## OXFORD

UNIVERSITY PRESS

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford OX2 6DP

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford.  
It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship,  
and education by publishing worldwide in

Oxford New York

Auckland Cape Town Dar es Salaam Hong Kong Karachi

Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Nairobi

New Delhi Shanghai Taipei Toronto

With offices in

Argentina Austria Brazil Chile Czech Republic France Greece

Guatemala Hungary Italy Japan Poland Portugal Singapore

South Korea Switzerland Thailand Turkey Ukraine Vietnam

OXFORD and OXFORD ENGLISH are registered trade marks of  
Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2008

The moral rights of the author have been asserted

Database right Oxford University Press (maker)

First published 2008

2012 2011 2010 2009 2008

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

**No unauthorized photocopying**

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced,  
stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any  
means, without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University  
Press, or as expressly permitted by law, or under terms agreed with the  
appropriate reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning  
reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT  
Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not circulate this book in any other binding or cover  
and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer

Any websites referred to in this publication are in the public domain  
and their addresses are provided by Oxford University Press for  
information only. Oxford University Press disclaims any responsibility  
for the content

ISBN: 978 0 19 462004 8

Printed in Hong Kong

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

*Illustrations* by Anne Cakebread pp 12, 13, 20, 21, 58, 79; Mark Duffin  
pp 36, 56, 62, 86, 115, 116, 164, 197, 198; Stephane Gamain p 8; Nick  
Hawken pp 38, 53, 55, 93, 100, 174; Gavin Reece pp 30, 40, 48, 67, 78,  
92; Willie Ryan pp 29, 41, 47, 51, 60, 64, 66, 76, 77, 87, 89, 97, 103,  
104, 119, 120, 135; Tony Sigley pp 32, 61, 99, 118, 179.

*Commissioned photography* by MM Studios pp 7, 8 (hand and pencil), 53  
(kidney), 53 (carp).

The publisher and authors would also like to thank the following for permission  
to reproduce photographs: Alamy pp 44 (earthquake/Yoshiaki Nagashima/  
Pacific Press Service), 46 (gorilla/David Fleetham), 52 (plum/Tim Hill),  
52 (grapefruit/Keith Leighton), 52 (avocado/Iconotec), 52 (passion fruit/  
foodfolio), 52 (papaya/Iconotec), 52 (pomegranate/Keith Leighton),  
52 (spinach/ignazuri), 52 (chick peas/Sara Danielsson/Bon Appetit),  
52 (fennel/Tim Hill), 52 (artichoke/Sue Wilson), 52 (asparagus/Emilio  
Ereza), 52 (beetroot/Emilio Ereza), 52 (parsley/artpartner-images.  
com), 52 (mint/foodfolio), 52 (basil/foodfolio), 52 (thyme/foodfolio), 52  
(rosemary/foodfolio), 53 (trout/Brigitte Krauth/Bon Appetit), 53 (Tim  
Hill), 53 (squid/Iconotec), 53 (lobster/Dieter Heinemann/Photostock),  
53 (crab/D. Hurst), 53 (clam/Theresa Raffetto/Bon Appetit), 74 (hospital  
ward/WR Publishing), 84 (house/Malcolm Fairman), 98 (police arrest/  
Arthur Turner), 114 (oil paints/Andrew Paterson), 114 (watercolours/  
Chris Rose), 116 (Dex Image), 124 (Rio Carnival/Demetrio Carrasco/  
Jon Arnold Images Ltd), 153 (Sam/John Eccles), 159 (Janine Wiedel  
Photolibrary), 171 (niceartphoto), 174 (Tony Craddock/Images Etc  
Ltd); Corbis pp 24 (Franck Seguin/TempSport), 42 (the earth/NASA),  
42 (rainforest/Louise Murray/Robert Harding World Imagery), 44  
(hurricane/Henry Romero/Reuters), 44 (volcano/Jim Sugar), 46 (eagle/  
Daniel J. Cox), 47 (shark/Stuart Westmorland), 74 (operating theatre/  
Mediscan), 90 (Georges Seurat, *Bathers at Asnières*, 1883–84, The  
National Gallery/By kind permission of the Trustees of the National  
Gallery, London), 90 (Georges Seurat, *Sunday Afternoon on the Island  
of La Grande Jatte*, 1884–86, The Art Institute of Chicago/The Gallery  
Collection), 98 (courtroom/Heide Benser/zefa), 114 (portrait/Self-  
Portrait by Mary Cassatt ca. 1880/Smithsonian Institution, Washington  
DC), 114 (landscape/Vincent van Gogh, *Landscape with Green Corn*,  
1889/The Gallery Collection), 114 (still life/Paul Cezanne, *Fruit on a  
Cloth*, ca. 1890/The Gallery Collection), 114 (abstract painting/Wassily  
Kandinsky, *Improvisation with Green Center* (No. 176), 1913/Burstein  
Collection/Barney Burstein © ADAGP, Paris and DACS, London 2008);  
Courtesy of Gecko Headgear p 146 (www.geckoheadgear.com); Getty  
Images pp 22 (Dan/Justin Pumfrey/Iconica), 22 (Giles/Victoria Snowber/  
Photographer's Choice), 28 (Marilyn Monroe/Alfred Eisenstaedt/Pix  
Inc./Time & Life Pictures), 28 (Bill Clinton/Scott Morgan), 44 (drought/  
Angelo Cavalli/Stone), 46 (lion/Dave King/Dorling Kindersley), 46 (tiger/  
Dave King/Dorling Kindersley), 46 (monkey/Tatsuhiko Sawada/amana  
images), 46 (fly/James Cotier/Stone), 46 (whale/Jeff Hunter/Riser),  
46 (mosquito/Frank Greenaway/Dorling Kindersley), 52 (raspberry/  
Kevin Summers/Photographer's Choice), 52 (fig/Christian Teubner/  
StockFood Creative), 52 (broccoli/Kevin Summers/Photographer's  
Choice), 74 (x-ray/Vincenzo Lombardo/Photographer's Choice), 83  
(Jonnie Miles), 101 (3D4Medical.com), 104 (Alexander Nemenov/AFP),  
124 (La Tomatina festival/Jose Jordan/AFP), 158 (London Express/  
Hulton Archive), 165 (E. Dygas), 193 (Lyn Holly/Photographer's Choice  
RR); MorgueFile.com pp 84 (brick wall/bosela), 84 (stone wall/bosela);  
Photolibrary.com pp 44 (tidal wave/Vince Cavataio/Pacific Stock), 53  
(veal/Philip Wilkins/Fresh Food Images), 53 (cod/Maximilian Stock  
Ltd/Fresh Food Images), 53 (oyster/Maximilian Stock Ltd/Fresh Food  
Images), 153 (Jake/Ulrika Malm/Nordic Photos), 154 (Photodisc);  
Punchstock pp 22 (Kaz/Stockbyte), 46 (bee/Don Farrall/Photodisc), 46  
(shark/DLILLC), 52 (apricot/C Squared Studios/Photodisc), 52 (celery/  
Stockbyte), 53 (calf's liver /Foodcollection.com), 53 (duck meat/  
Foodcollection.com), 53 (rabbit meat/Foodcollection.com), 53 (sea bass/  
Foodcollection.com), 53 (mussel/Melba Photo Agency), 98 (fingerprints/  
Steve Allen/Jupiterimages/Brand X), 152 (Marcy Maloy/Photodisc), 153  
(Boss/Purestock), 155 (Stockbyte); Rex Features pp 37, 124 (cherry  
blossom festival/Sinopix Photo Agency Ltd); Royalty-free pp 46  
(leopard/Photodisc), 46 (spider/Photodisc), 46 (elephant/Ingram), 46  
(camel/Photodisc), 46 (bear/Photodisc), 46 (snake/Photodisc), 47 (snake/  
Ingram), 52 (coconut/Ingram), 52 (leek/Photodisc), 52 (sweetcorn/  
Stockbyte), 173 (Photodisc); Science Photo Library p 74 (scan/just SPL)  
Images sourced by Suzanne Williams/Pictureresearch.co.uk  
Cover illustration by Carol Verbyst



# Contents

Introduction	5
--------------	---

## Starter unit

Abbreviations and symbols	9
---------------------------	---

## Learning

1 I can talk about vocabulary learning	10
2 I can describe my progress and aims	12
3 I can understand a learner's dictionary	14
4 I can talk about English punctuation	16

Review	18
--------	----

## People

5 I can talk about appearance	20
6 I can talk about character	22
7 I can describe my feelings	24
8 I can talk about relationships	26
9 I can talk about families	28
10 I can talk about weddings and funerals	30

Review	33
--------	----

## The world around us

11 I can describe the universe	36
12 I can talk about rivers and the sea	38
13 I can describe the climate	41
14 I can describe natural disasters	44
15 I can describe animals and insects	46

Review	49
--------	----

## Daily life

16 I can describe a range of food	52
17 I can talk about diets and cooking	54
18 I can talk about money	56
19 I can talk about sleep	58
20 I can talk about injuries	60
21 I can talk about cars and driving	62
22 I can describe travel problems and accidents	64
23 I can talk about clothes and fashion	67

Review	70
--------	----

## Getting things done

24 I can describe a visit to the dentist	73
25 I can describe hospital procedures	74
26 I can explain household tasks	76
27 I can describe housework	78
28 I can talk to a hairdresser	79

Review	80
--------	----

## Describing things

29 I can describe urban life	82
30 I can describe parts of a building	84
31 I can describe objects	86
32 I can describe the senses	88
33 I can describe a painting	90
34 I can describe actions	92

Review	94
--------	----



## Social and political issues

35	I can talk about crime	96
36	I can describe the justice system	98
37	I can discuss health issues	100
38	I can talk about politics	102
39	I can talk about war and peace	104
40	I can talk about events in history	106
<b>Review</b>		<b>107</b>

## Media and entertainment

41	I can understand newspapers	110
42	I can talk about films	112
43	I can talk about art and photography	114
44	I can talk about music	116
45	I can talk about people and places in sport	118
46	I can describe sporting events	120
47	I can talk about books	122
48	I can describe festivals	124
<b>Review</b>		<b>126</b>

## Work and study

49	I can get through exams	129
50	I can describe university life	130
51	I can apply for a job	132
52	I can describe jobs	134
53	I can describe a career	136
54	I can describe working conditions	138
<b>Review</b>		<b>139</b>

## Business

55	I can talk about finance	142
56	I can talk about companies	144
57	I can describe a successful business	146
58	I can discuss marketing	148
<b>Review</b>		<b>150</b>

## Social English

59	I can express probability	152
60	I can explain similarities and differences	153
61	I can make arrangements to meet	154
62	I can discuss my likes and dislikes	155
63	I can give my opinion	156
64	I can talk about rules	158
65	I can discuss hopes and plans	160
66	I can express dissatisfaction	162
67	I can understand warnings	164
<b>Review</b>		<b>165</b>

## Language

68	I can use link words	168
69	I can use a range of adjectives	171
70	I can express time and place	174
71	I can use prepositions in phrases	176
72	I can use prefixes	178
73	I can use suffixes	180
74	I can use verb patterns	182
75	I can use phrasal verbs	184
76	I can use a range of adverbs	186
<b>Review</b>		<b>188</b>

## Styles of English

77	I can recognize informal English	191
78	I can write a formal letter	194
79	I can understand abbreviations and short forms	196
80	I can understand American English	198
<b>Review</b>		<b>200</b>

Vocabulary building tables	202
Answer key	203
Answer key to review units	223
List of spotlight boxes	232
Word list / Index	233
Acknowledgements	254



# Introduction

## What is Oxford Word Skills?

*Oxford Word Skills* is a series of three books for students to learn, practise, and revise new vocabulary.

<b>Basic:</b>	elementary and pre-intermediate (CEF levels A1 and A2)
<b>Intermediate:</b>	intermediate and upper-intermediate (CEF levels B1 and B2)
<b>Advanced:</b>	advanced (CEF levels C1 and C2)

There are over 2,000 new words or phrases in each level, and all of the material can be used in the classroom or for self-study.

## How are the books organized?

Each book contains 80 units of vocabulary presentation and practice. Units are between one and three pages long, depending on the topic. New vocabulary is presented in manageable quantities for learners, with practice exercises following immediately. The units are grouped together thematically in modules of four to nine units. At the end of each module there are further practice exercises in the review units, so that learners can revise and test themselves on the vocabulary learned.

At the back of each book you will find:

- vocabulary building tables
- an answer key for all the exercises
- a list of all the vocabulary taught with a phonemic pronunciation guide and a unit reference to where the item appears.

There is a CD-ROM at each level with oral pronunciation models for all the vocabulary taught, and further practice exercises, including listening activities.

## What vocabulary is included?

At Intermediate level, the vocabulary includes:

- a wide range of common topics, e.g. money, health issues, relationships
- words and phrases needed in social interaction, e.g. giving opinions, making arrangements to meet
- areas of lexical grammar, e.g. prefixes and suffixes, link words.

There is an emphasis on high-frequency vocabulary in everyday spoken English, but also vocabulary from different types of written text, e.g. job advertisements, magazine articles, web pages, and warning signs. At Advanced level, learners encounter more figurative meanings of vocabulary items, more idiomatic language, and a wide range of collocations.

The series includes almost all of the words in the Oxford 3000™, which lists the 3,000 words teachers and students should prioritize in their teaching and learning. The list is based on frequency and usefulness to learners, and was developed by Oxford University Press using corpus evidence and information supplied by a panel of over 70 experts in the fields of teaching and language study. In addition, we have included a wide range of high frequency phrases, e.g. *don't bother*, *I haven't a clue*, as well as items which are extremely useful in a particular context, e.g. *a filling* at the dentist's.



We have taken great care to ensure that learners will be able to understand the meaning of all the new words and phrases as used in the particular contexts by supplying a clear illustration, a glossary definition, or an example of each word or phrase. Learners should be aware that many English words have more than one meaning. They should also be aware that nouns may be countable in some senses and uncountable in others. They should refer to an appropriate learner's dictionary for information on other meanings and structures and on countability. (See 'How to learn new words' in the Starter unit for advice.)

## How can teachers use the material in the classroom?

New vocabulary is presented through different types of text, including dialogues, tables, and visuals. The meaning of new vocabulary is explained in an accompanying glossary unless it is illustrated in visuals or diagrams. Particularly important items are highlighted by means of 'spotlight' boxes.

Here is a procedure you could follow:

- Students study the presentation for 5–10 minutes (longer if necessary).
- You answer any queries the students may have about the items, and provide a pronunciation model of the items for your students to repeat.
- Students do the first exercise, which they can check for themselves using the answer key, or you can go over the answers with the whole class.
- When you are satisfied, you can ask students to go on to further exercises, while you monitor them as they work, and assist where necessary.
- When they have completed the written exercises, students can often test themselves on the new vocabulary using the cover card enclosed with the book. The material has been designed so that students can cover the new items while they look at the visuals, glossaries, or tables and test themselves. This is a simple, quick, and easy way for learners to test themselves over and over again, so there is no pressure on you to keep searching for different exercises.
- After a period of time has elapsed, perhaps a couple of days or a week, you can use the review exercises for further consolidation and testing.
- You will often notice the headings 'About you' or 'About your country'. These indicate personalized exercises which give learners an opportunity to use the new vocabulary within the context of their own lives. Students can write answers to these, but they make ideal pair work activities for learners to practise their spoken English while using the new vocabulary. If you use these as speaking activities, students could then write their answers (or their partner's answers) as follow-up. In the answer key, possible answers for these activities are provided by proficient non-native speakers from different parts of the world.

## How can students use the material on their own?

The material has been designed so that it can be used effectively both in the classroom or by learners working alone. If working alone, learners should look at the Starter unit first. For self-study, we recommend that learners use the book alongside the CD-ROM, as it gives them a pronunciation model for every item of vocabulary, as well as further practice exercises. They can check their own answers and use the cover card to test themselves. One advantage of self-study learning is that students can select the topics that interest them, or the topics where they most need to expand their knowledge.



# Starter

## A How to use a unit

Study the new words.  
They are in **bold type**.

You can listen to the words on the CD-ROM and practise the pronunciation. Or you can look at the **word list** (page 233) to find out how to say the words.

### B Choosing a book

Booksellers' survey: how did you choose the last book you read?

The title and front cover just attracted my attention.

I was browsing in a bookshop. I just picked up a paperback that looked interesting.

A recommendation by a friend – he said it was very readable and well written.

It was a gift, but I like the author so I was really pleased.

I looked through the first chapter – it looked fascinating.

#### Glossary

title	• the name of a book, play, film, etc.
cover	• the outside part of a book, magazine, etc.
attract sb's attention	• If sth attracts your attention, it interests you so that you want to look at it.
browse	• spend time pleasantly in a shop looking at things.
paperback	• a book with a thick paper cover (a hardback has a hard cover).
readable	• easy or interesting to read.
gift	• a thing that you give to sb, e.g. for their birthday. <i>syn present</i> .
author	• the writer of a particular book, play, etc.
look through sth	• read sth quickly. <i>syn skim sth</i> .
chapter	• one of the parts into which a book is divided.
fascinating	• very interesting.

A **glossary** explains the new words.

A '**spotlight**' tells you about important words.

#### Spotlight: Compound adjectives with well

There are many adjectives consisting of **well** + past participle, e.g. **well written** (of a book, article, etc.), **well informed** (= knowing a lot about a subject), **well known** (= famous).

#### 4 Tick (✓) the correct sentence ending.

- Who is the author? ☒ gift ☐ ?
- 1 The cover attracted my chapter ☐ attention ☐.
- 2 The author was well known ☐ well written ☐.
- 3 I read the second title ☐ chapter ☐.
- 4 The book looked very readable ☐ well informed ☐.
- 5 I wanted the cheaper one, so I bought the hardback ☐ paperback ☐.
- 6 I was in a bookshop the other day, just attracting ☐ browsing ☐.

#### 5 Complete the text.

My cousin has just written a reference book. He's not **well** known, but he's a good (1) a \_\_\_\_\_. His book might attract a lot of (2) a \_\_\_\_\_ because it's called 'How to make a lot of money by doing very little' – isn't that a great (3) t \_\_\_\_\_. I read the first (5) c \_\_\_\_\_ about selling things on the internet, and it's really (6) f \_\_\_\_\_. I couldn't put it down. On the front (7) c \_\_\_\_\_ there's a picture of my cousin in bed with his laptop; it's a bit silly. But it's a funny book and it's (8) well w \_\_\_\_\_.

#### 6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- What kind of books do you find most fascinating?
- What kind of reference books do you use most often?
- Do you enjoy browsing in bookshops?
- Are you ever attracted to a book just by the cover?
- Do you have more paperbacks or hardbacks? Why?

#### 7 Test yourself. Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. What are the words?

MEDIA AND ENTERTAINMENT 123

Do the exercises. Check your answers in the **answer key** (page 203).



Use the **cover card** to test yourself.

Use the vocabulary to write or speak about yourself in 'ABOUT YOU' or 'ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY'.

**Oxford Word Skills**

Unit 47

Click, listen, and say.

Unit 16, hardback, phonics, typical example

Click, listen, and say.

Unit 47

1 Tick the correct column.

	Yes	No
► If a novel is readable, it means that you have definitely read it.		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
1 Reference books are useful when you want to get information.		
2 There is often a picture on the cover of a book.		
3 A well-known person is someone only a few people have heard of.		
4 An encyclopedia is arranged in alphabetical order.		
5 If you are browsing in a shop, you definitely won't buy anything.		
6 You'll find novels in the non-fiction section of a bookshop.		
8 An autobiography is someone's life story, written by someone else.		

Unit 16, hardback, phonics, typical example

Unit 47

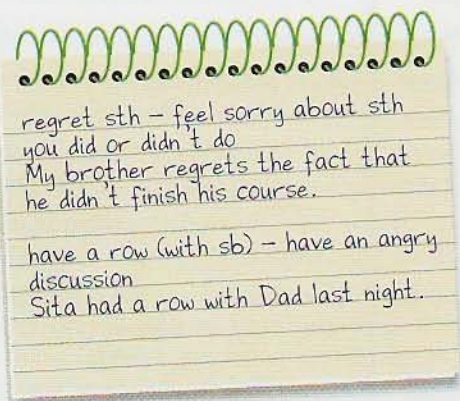
There's more practice in the **review** units and on the **CD-ROM**.



## B How to learn new words



- Repeat the words and phrases two or three times to help you remember them.



- Write down new words in a notebook, with the meaning in English or your own language, or draw a picture.
- Write down any other important information about a word or phrase, e.g. words that often go together (*a serious relationship*) or constructions with verbs (*regret the fact that*). Write your own example sentences.

### Perfect Weekend Channel Five Wednesday 9 p.m. – 11 p.m.

TV drama about a group of young people who got to know one another at university, and now, five years later, get together for a weekend. But things soon go wrong. John doesn't get on with Dan, and now realizes they have nothing in common, while Pete regrets the fact that he split up with Amy, the girl he used to go out with. Now Amy is in a serious relationship with Keith (who didn't go to university), and Keith doesn't like Amy's old friends. This creates tension in the group, and soon there's a big row. Amy falls out with Pete, and Dan and John stop speaking to each other. And that's just the beginning ...

### Glossary

get to know sb meet and become friends.  
one another each of the other  
get together (of two or more people) meet for a social reason.  
go wrong used when a situation or relationship becomes difficult.  
realize sth begin to understand sth you didn't know before.  
have nothing in common no interests that are shared by two or more people.  
regret sth / doing sth feel sorry about sth you did or didn't do

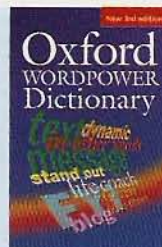
### 7 Complete the text.

Milo and I got to know one (1) another when we were in summer. We had a lot in (2) common and got on really well, but serious (3) relationship at the time. Then it all went (4) wrong. We had a big (5) argument and he (6) split up with her. We stayed out with each other almost immediately, but Milo soon (8) regretted his relationship with Inez. He (9) realized he was still in love with her, which was a big mistake.

get to know one (1) another  
I had a lot in (2) common and got on really well, but serious (3) relationship at the time. Then it all went (4) wrong.

- Use a pencil for the exercises. Check your answers, then rub them out and do them again a week later.
- You can do the exercises in the review units, or the CD-ROM exercises, after each unit. Or do them a month later to test yourself, perhaps after you've studied all the units in that module (e.g. 'The world around us').
- Look at the vocabulary building tables at the back of the book (page 202).
- Go to the website ([www.oup.com/elt/wordskills](http://www.oup.com/elt/wordskills)) for more useful materials and more practice.

Buy a good dictionary for your level. The *Oxford Wordpower Dictionary* (Oxford University Press) is very good for intermediate learners.



- Use a highlighter pen to help you remember difficult words.



## C Abbreviations and symbols

N	noun	USU	usually
V	verb	C	countable noun (A countable noun can be used with <i>a/an</i> and can have a plural form.)
ADJ	adjective	U	uncountable noun (An uncountable noun cannot usually be used with <i>a/an</i> and usually has no plural form.)
ADV	adverb		
OPP	opposite (for example, <i>modest</i> is the opposite of <i>arrogant</i> )	PT	past tense (the past simple form of an irregular verb)
SYN	synonym (a word that means the same as another word; for example, <i>drawback</i> is a synonym of <i>disadvantage</i> )	PP	past participle
INF	informal (If a word or phrase is <b>informal</b> , you use it when you are speaking to friends or people you know well.)	sth	something (used in glossaries and tables, e.g. <i>regret sth</i> )
FML	formal (If a word or phrase is <b>formal</b> , you use it at important and serious times with people you don't know well, or in written English.)	sb	somebody (used in glossaries and tables, e.g. <i>dismiss sb</i> )
PL	plural	etc.	used at the end of a list to show there are other things, but you aren't going to say them all
SING	singular	e.g.	for example (as in: <i>jewellery</i> , e.g. <i>earrings</i> , <i>necklace</i> )

### Vowels

i:	see	/si:/
i	happy	/'hæpi/
ɪ	sit	/sɪt/
e	ten	/ten/
æ	hat	/hæt/
ɑ:	father	/'fɑ:ðə(r)/
ɒ	got	/gɒt/
ɔ:	saw	/sɔ:/
ʊ	put	/pʊt/
u	casual	/'kæʒuəl/
u:	too	/tu:/
ʌ	cup	/kʌp/
ɜ:	bird	/bɜ:d/
ə	about	/ə'baʊt/
eɪ	say	/seɪ/
əʊ	go	/gəʊ/
aɪ	five	/faɪv/
aʊ	now	/naʊ/
ɔɪ	boy	/bɔɪ/
ɪə	near	/nɪə(r)/
eə	hair	/heə(r)/
ʊə	sure	/ʃʊə(r)/

### Consonants

p	pen	/pen/
b	bad	/bæd/
t	tea	/ti:/
d	did	/dɪd/
k	cat	/kæt/
g	got	/gɒt/
tʃ	cheap	/tʃi:p/
dʒ	jam	/dʒæm/
f	fall	/fɔ:l/
v	verb	/vɜ:b/
θ	thin	/θɪn/
ð	this	/ðɪs/
s	so	/səʊ/
z	zero	/zɪərəʊ/
ʃ	shoe	/ʃu:/
ʒ	television	/'telɪvɪʒn, telɪ'vɪʒn/
h	hat	/hæt/
m	map	/mæp/
n	no	/nəʊ/
ŋ	sing	/sɪŋ/
l	leg	/leg/
r	red	/red/
j	yes	/jes/
w	wet	/wet/



# 1 I can talk about vocabulary learning

## A Reading

### Tips for reading

When you're reading in a **foreign** language, you should try to get the **gist** of the **text**. You will meet vocabulary you don't **recognize**, but you can often **go through** the text again. If so, try this:

- **Identify** the new words and phrases which seem to be important. Try to **guess** the meaning from the **context**, and/or use a dictionary.
- **Keep a record of** the words in a notebook, and, if possible, **make a note of** any special information. For example, is the word **formal** or **informal**? Is it used in a particular kind of **construction**, e.g. a verb that is often followed by a preposition?
- Write a **translation** if you think it helps; sometimes it isn't necessary.

### spotlight *formal*

We use **formal** language to appear serious or official, or sometimes when we don't know people well. **OPP informal**. **formality** N.  
**OPP informality**.

### Glossary

<b>foreign</b>	• from a country that is not your own (a person is a <b>foreigner</b> ).
<b>gist</b>	• <b>SING</b> The <b>gist</b> of sth is the general meaning but not all the details.
<b>text</b>	• the written part of a book, newspaper, etc.
<b>recognize sb/sth</b>	• know who sb is or what sth is because you've seen or heard them before. <b>recognition</b> N.
<b>go through sth</b>	• read sth carefully from beginning to end.
<b>identify sth</b>	• recognize sth and decide what it is.
<b>guess sth</b>	• give an answer to sth without being sure of the facts. <b>guess</b> N.
<b>context</b>	• the words before and after the new word or phrase that help you to understand the meaning.
<b>keep a record of sth</b>	• write sth down to help you remember it. <b>record sth</b> v.
<b>make a note of sth</b>	• write sth down quickly to help you remember it.
<b>construction</b>	• the way words are used together in a sentence. <b>construct sth</b> v.
<b>translation</b>	• a text that has been changed from one language into another. <b>translate sth</b> v.

## 1 Replace the words in *italics* with a single word that has the same meaning.

- I looked at the pictures but didn't understand the *written part*. text
- 1 I understood the *general meaning* of the text. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 We couldn't *recognize and decide* what language they were speaking. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 The way you *use words together to make* a sentence in German is different. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 He is *from another country*. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 5 You can guess the meaning from the *words before and after the new word*. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 6 There was a text which I had to *change from one language into another*. \_\_\_\_\_

## 2 Complete the dialogues.

- Is 'How do you do' formal ? ~ Yes, we usually just say hello.
- 1 Did you know the answer? ~ No, I had to \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 2 Did you understand everything? ~ No, but I got the \_\_\_\_\_ of it.
  - 3 Did you \_\_\_\_\_ everyone? ~ There were one or two people I didn't know.
  - 4 Were there many \_\_\_\_\_? ~ No, all the people were from this country.
  - 5 Did you understand the text? ~ Yes, but can we \_\_\_\_\_ through it again?
  - 6 Do you make a \_\_\_\_\_ of new words? ~ Yes, I keep a \_\_\_\_\_ in my notebook.



## B Speaking and listening



- In a **conversation**, you can often ask someone to **repeat** words or phrases you don't understand, and **explain** the meaning to you.
- Repeat new words to yourself, so you know how to **pronounce** them.
- Look for **opportunities** to practise them when you're speaking. Don't be afraid to **experiment** with new language, and don't worry about **making mistakes**.
- It's important to **revise** new vocabulary. If not, you may forget it quite quickly.
- Remember: there isn't a correct **method** of learning vocabulary. Do what **works** for you.

### spotlight

*conversation, chat, discussion, argument*

A **conversation** is a talk between two or more people. You can also **have a chat with sb**, which is a friendly informal conversation (**chat v**). A **discussion about sth** is when you talk about something seriously (**discuss sth v**). An **argument** is a discussion in which people disagree, often angrily.

### Glossary

repeat sth	• say sth again. <b>repetition</b> N.
explain sth	• make sth clear or easy to understand. <b>explanation</b> N.
pronounce sth	• make the sound of a word or letter. <b>pronunciation</b> N.
opportunity	• a time when it is possible to do sth that you want to do. SYN <b>chance</b> .
experiment with sth	• try sth to see what result it has.
make mistakes	• NOT do mistakes.
revise sth	• study sth again (you <b>do revision</b> ).
method	• a way of doing sth.
work	• get or have the result you want.

### 3 What nouns are formed from these verbs?

- |                             |                   |                |
|-----------------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| ▶ discuss <u>discussion</u> | 2 pronounce _____ | 4 revise _____ |
| 1 repeat _____              | 3 explain _____   | 5 chat _____   |

### 4 Circle the correct answer.

- ▶ If you explain something, you make it easy to say/understand.
- 1 If you revise something, you say it again/study it again.
  - 2 If something works, it is successful/difficult.
  - 3 If you experiment with something, you try something/find something.
  - 4 You can do/make a mistake.
  - 5 A method is an opportunity to do something/a way of doing something.
  - 6 A chat is a formal/an informal conversation.

### 5 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ We had a conversation on the phone last night.
- 1 We had a serious \_\_\_\_\_ in class today about politics.
  - 2 My brother's got an \_\_\_\_\_ to work in Paris next year. Lucky him.
  - 3 I saw Joelle in town and we had a quick \_\_\_\_\_. She told me about the wedding.
  - 4 I used a new method for cooking the rice and it really \_\_\_\_\_. You must try it.
  - 5 Do you think we'll have a \_\_\_\_\_ to go shopping when we're in Milan?

### 6 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?

## 2 I can describe my progress and aims



### A Making progress 🎧

When I started learning English, I was very **enthusiastic** and **motivated**, but I found the pronunciation difficult and people couldn't always understand me. **After a while** my pronunciation **improved** and I was able to **express** basic ideas quite **effectively**. It was **obvious** that I was **getting better**,

and that was very **encouraging**. But at intermediate level, I **made** slower **progress**. There were so many new words and phrases, but also words that I could understand but couldn't use **accurately**. I think I **was** more **aware** of my mistakes, which **was** good – but also **frustrating**.

#### Glossary

<b>enthusiastic</b>	• very interested in sth or excited by it. <b>enthusiasm</b> N.	<b>obvious</b>	• easily seen and understood. SYN <b>clear</b> .
<b>motivated</b>	• If you are <b>motivated</b> , you really want to do sth. <b>motivation</b> N.	<b>encouraging</b>	• If sth is <b>encouraging</b> , it gives you hope and makes you want to continue. <b>encourage</b> V. <b>encouragement</b> N.
<b>after a while</b>	• after a period of time.	<b>accurately</b>	• with no mistakes. <b>accurate</b> ADJ.
<b>improve</b>	• become better. SYNS <b>get better</b> , <b>make progress</b> . <b>improvement</b> N.	<b>be aware of sth</b>	• If you <b>are aware of sth</b> , you know about it.
<b>express sth</b>	• say or show what you think or feel.	<b>frustrating</b>	• making you annoyed because you cannot do sth you want to do. <b>frustration</b> N.
<b>effectively</b>	• in a way that gives you the result you want. <b>effective</b> ADJ.		

### 1 Complete the sentences using the words on the right in the correct form.

- |  |             |
|--|-------------|
| ► She did the work very <u>effectively</u> . | EFFECTIVE   |
| 1 He gave me a lot of _____.                 | ENCOURAGE   |
| 2 I think my English is _____.               | IMPROVEMENT |
| 3 My mother speaks English very _____.       | ACCURATE    |
| 4 It's _____ when you can't understand.      | FRUSTRATION |
| 5 He doesn't have much _____.                | MOTIVATED   |
| 6 I was very _____ when I started.           | ENTHUSIASM  |

### 2 Replace the underlined word or phrase with a word or phrase that has the same meaning.

- She shows lots of interest and excitement. enthusiasm
- Do you think your English is improving? \_\_\_\_\_
  - I didn't worry about my mistakes after a period of time. \_\_\_\_\_
  - Where are you making the most improvement? \_\_\_\_\_
  - It's clear that he doesn't know the difference between *lend* and *borrow*. \_\_\_\_\_
  - She can speak French without mistakes. \_\_\_\_\_
  - I think she knows about the problem. \_\_\_\_\_
  - I can say most of the things I need to. \_\_\_\_\_
  - I make a lot of mistakes, which is annoying. \_\_\_\_\_

### 3 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?



## B Future goals



### Felipe's goals

- I understand **everyday** English, but my vocabulary needs to **expand** so that I can understand a **wide range** of subjects, and express more **complex** ideas.
- I'd like to be more **fluent** when I'm speaking, and be able to talk about things **in** more **detail**. And I need to get better at using **appropriate** language when I speak.
- I can understand general things, but I want to read texts that are **relevant** to my work, and some of these contain quite **specialized** language.

### Glossary

**goal** a thing you want to be able to do in the future.

SYN **aim**.

**everyday** normal or usual.

**expand** become bigger or make sth bigger.

**a wide range** a large number of different things.

**complex** not simple; often difficult to understand.

SYN **complicated**.

**fluent** able to speak a foreign language easily and well. **fluently** ADV.

**in detail** fully and including a lot of information.

**appropriate** right or suitable in a particular situation. OPP **inappropriate**.

**relevant to sth** useful for and connected to sth. OPP **irrelevant**.

**specialized** having or needing a lot of special knowledge.

### spotlight **contain** and **include**

We can often use **contain** or **include** with the same meaning.

The film **contains/includes** scenes of violence.

Sometimes we can only use one of the verbs.

The box **contains** magazines. (There are magazines inside the box.)

The price **includes** service. (Service is one part of the price.)

#### 4 Replace the underlined words with a synonym.

► The story is complex. complicated

1 I speak Russian very well. \_\_\_\_\_

2 It's part of normal life. \_\_\_\_\_

3 It isn't connected to my work. \_\_\_\_\_

4 The business got bigger. \_\_\_\_\_

5 It's not suitable here. \_\_\_\_\_

6 My goal is to get to university. \_\_\_\_\_

#### 5 Complete the dialogues with a suitable word.

► Was the information important for your report? ~ No, it was irrelevant.

1 Did you explain it fully? ~ Yes, I described it in \_\_\_\_\_.

2 It wasn't a suitable word to use. ~ I agree, it was \_\_\_\_\_.

3 Is it a simple problem? ~ No, it's quite \_\_\_\_\_.

4 Is this yoghurt bad for you? ~ No it doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ any fat.

5 Is her vocabulary getting bigger? ~ Yes, it's definitely \_\_\_\_\_.

6 Do you need any special knowledge? ~ Yes, it's very \_\_\_\_\_.

7 Is the hotel room expensive? ~ Yes, but the price \_\_\_\_\_ dinner.

8 Were there many subjects? ~ Yes, quite a wide \_\_\_\_\_ of topics.

#### 6 ABOUT YOU Write down your learning goals, or tell another student.

---



---

### 3 I can understand a learner's dictionary

How can a learner's dictionary help you? These examples are from *Oxford Wordpower Dictionary*.

Different meanings of the word are given in the **definitions**, which are in simple English.

❓ **win** /wɪn/ **verb** (winning; pt, pp won /wɒn/) **1** [I, T] to be the best, first or strongest in a race, game, competition, etc.: to win a game/match/championship • I never win at table tennis. • Which party do you think will win the next election? **2** [T] to get money, a prize, etc. as a result of success in a competition, race, etc.: We won a trip to Australia. • Who won the gold medal? • He won the jackpot in the lottery.

The dictionary helps you **avoid making** mistakes, and helps with grammar.

**HELP** Note that we **earn** (not win) money at our job: I earn £15 000 a year.

**Idioms** and phrasal verbs are at the end of the **entry**.

**IDM** win/lose the toss ➔ **toss** you can't win (informal) there is no way of being completely successful or of pleasing everyone: Whatever you do you will upset somebody. You can't win.

**PHRV** win sb over/round (to sth) to persuade sb to support or agree with you: They're against the proposal at the moment, but I'm sure we can win them over.

Examples of usage are **provided**.

Phonetic **symbols** help with pronunciation. You can find out which **syllable** is **stressed**.

Words that are often used together (**collocations**) are given in **bold**.

❓ **mistake**<sup>1</sup> /mɪ'steɪk/ **noun** [C] something that you think or do that is wrong: Try not to **make any mistakes** in your essays. • a spelling mistake • It was a big mistake to trust her. • I made the mistake of giving him my address.

**IDM** by mistake as a result of being careless: The terrorists shot the wrong man by mistake.

#### OTHER WORDS FOR

#### **mistake**

**Error** is more formal than **mistake**: a computing error. When you make a mistake you **do sth wrong**: I got the answer wrong. • You must have the wrong number (= on the phone). **Fault** indicates who is responsible for sth bad: The accident wasn't my fault. The other driver pulled out in front of me. **Fault** is also used to describe a problem or weakness that sb/sth has: a technical fault.

It helps you with **style**: for instance, whether words are formal, informal, **slang**, **offensive**, etc.

**guy** /gaɪ/ **noun** **1** [C] (informal) a man or boy: He's a nice guy. **2** guys [pl] (informal) used when speaking to a group of men and women: What do you guys want to eat?

It can teach you **related** words: this helps you **build** your vocabulary and **select** the correct word for your needs.

### Glossary

**definition** an exact statement of what a word or phrase means. **define sth** v.

**avoid doing sth** If you **avoid doing sth**, you try not to do or experience it.

**idiom** a group of words whose meaning is different from the meanings of the individual words (also **expression**).

**entry** one of a list of items included in a dictionary, list, etc. (There are three dictionary **entries** on this page.)

**provide sth** give sth to sb or make sth available for sb.

**style** the way sth is written or spoken (e.g. an informal **style**, a formal **style**).

**for instance** SYN **for example**.

**slang** very informal words or phrases used in spoken language.

**offensive** rude and likely to upset sb. **offend sb** v.

**symbol** a letter, number, or sign that has a particular meaning (e.g. the **symbol** /ʃ/ is pronounced 'sh').

**syllable** a part of a word which contains a vowel sound. (Go has one syllable and prefer has two syllables.)

**relate sth to sth** connect sth to sth. **related** ADJ.

**build sth** make sth bigger; increase sth.

**select sth** SYN **choose sth** (but **select** is more formal). **selection** N.

**spotlight stress and emphasize**

Both verbs mean to say a syllable, word, or phrase with extra loudness.

The related nouns are **stress (on sth)** and **emphasis (on sth)**.

The **stress** is **on** the first syllable. Don't **emphasize** every word.

They are also used to say that sth is important.

The newspapers **stressed** the need for urgent action.

The **emphasis** is mainly **on** education.

**1 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.**

- |  |   |       |
|--|---|-------|
| ► The city is fantastic: for example, the buildings are very impressive. | The city is fantastic: for instance, the buildings are very impressive. | S     |
| 1 That's a useful idiom to know.   | That's a useful expression to know.                                     | _____ |
| 2 Is that collocation correct?   | Is that definition correct?   | _____ |
| 3 What she said was very rude.   | What she said was offensive.  | _____ |
| 4 Does he use a lot of slang?  | Does he use a lot of idioms?  | _____ |
| 5 Can you avoid mistakes?  | Can you define mistakes?  | _____ |
| 6 Make sure you select the right number.                                 | Make sure you choose the right number.                                  | _____ |
| 7 The stress is on the first three letters.                              | The emphasis is on the first three letters.                             | _____ |
| 8 It doesn't give all the answers.                                       | It doesn't provide all the answers.                                     | _____ |

**2 Complete the sentences with a word from the box.**

symbols offending related entry ✓ selection syllable  
instance stress idiom provide build collocations entry

- In a dictionary, *foreigner* comes after the entry for *foreign*.
- Dictionaries have many uses: for \_\_\_\_\_, to find out meaning, or check pronunciation.
  - Does your local bookshop have a good \_\_\_\_\_ of dictionaries for sale?
  - Some dictionaries can help you \_\_\_\_\_ your vocabulary if they \_\_\_\_\_ synonyms and opposites, or other \_\_\_\_\_ words.
  - A dictionary can tell you which words are rude so that you can avoid \_\_\_\_\_ people.
  - You can check the pronunciation of any word in the dictionary by looking at the phonetic \_\_\_\_\_ and noting which \_\_\_\_\_ is stressed.
  - Good luck!* is given as an \_\_\_\_\_ in the dictionary, at the end of the \_\_\_\_\_ for *luck*.
  - Dictionaries often tell you which words go together. Examples of \_\_\_\_\_ are *make a mistake* and *take a photo*.
  - In the word *emphasis*, the \_\_\_\_\_ is on the first syllable.

**3 Now look at the dictionary entries on the left-hand page. Answer the questions.**

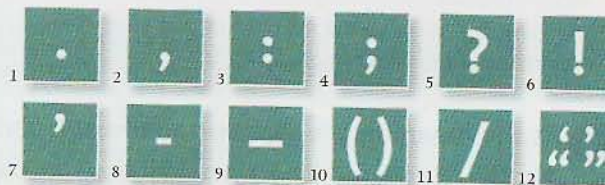
- Which syllable is stressed in *mistake*? The second syllable
- Which related words are given for *mistake* and *make a mistake*? \_\_\_\_\_
  - How many definitions are there in the entry for *guy*? \_\_\_\_\_
  - What style is the idiom *You can't win*? \_\_\_\_\_
  - Is *guy* an offensive word? \_\_\_\_\_
  - Which phonetic symbols are given for *guy*? \_\_\_\_\_
  - Are these sentences correct?
    - I haven't got the keys, but it's not my fault; Jo lost them. \_\_\_\_\_
    - My dad wins a lot of money in his job. \_\_\_\_\_



## 4 I can talk about English punctuation

### A Punctuation marks

- |                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1 full stop        | 7 apostrophe       |
| 2 comma            | 8 hyphen           |
| 3 colon            | 9 dash             |
| 4 semicolon        | 10 brackets        |
| 5 question mark    | 11 slash           |
| 6 exclamation mark | 12 quotation marks |



#### 1 Complete the words for the punctuation marks.

► com m a

1 full s \_\_\_\_\_

2 col \_\_\_\_\_

3 hyp \_\_\_\_\_

4 bra \_\_\_\_\_

5 question m \_\_\_\_\_

6 excla \_\_\_\_\_ m \_\_\_\_\_

7 semi \_\_\_\_\_

8 apo \_\_\_\_\_

#### 2 What punctuation is used in 1–8 below? You don't need to repeat *full stop* each time.

► We went home early. full stop

1 She had long, blonde hair. \_\_\_\_\_

2 What are you doing? \_\_\_\_\_

3 Congratulations! \_\_\_\_\_

4 It's too late. \_\_\_\_\_

5 I looked in the fridge; it was empty. \_\_\_\_\_

6 Someone (not me) left the door open. \_\_\_\_\_

7 A five-minute walk – and he still took a taxi. \_\_\_\_\_

8 'It's only me,' he said. \_\_\_\_\_

#### 3 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the punctuation marks. What are they?

### B Punctuation rules

#### SOME IMPORTANT PUNCTUATION RULES

A **full stop** is used at the end of a sentence that is not a question or an exclamation, and is sometimes used in **abbreviations**. Each new sentence must begin with a **capital letter**.

A **comma** in writing is like a **pause** in speech. It is used:

- to **separate** parts of a sentence, e.g. *After we left, someone tried to phone us.*
- between adjectives, e.g. *A big, expensive car.*
- to separate words in a **list**, though it is often **omitted** before *and*, e.g. *I went to France, Germany, Italy and Spain.*
- when words or phrases **interrupt** the normal progression of a sentence, e.g. *I decided, however, that I needed something to eat first.*

A **colon** is often used to introduce further **details** such as an explanation or a list, e.g. *The shop is full of antiques: dining tables, chairs, wardrobes, mirrors, and so on.*

A **semicolon** is sometimes used **instead of** a full stop when two sentences are very closely **connected**, or to separate two main clauses, especially ones that aren't **joined** by a conjunction **such as** *and* or *but*, e.g. *I went round this morning; nobody was there.*

A **slash** separates words or phrases that are **alternatives**, e.g. *single/married.*



## Glossary

**abbreviation** a short form of a word (e.g. *a.m.* is an **abbreviation** meaning 'in the morning').

**capital letter** *A B C* are **capital letters** (*a b c* are **small letters**).

**pause** a short period of time when sb stops talking.

**separate sb/sth** keep people or things away from each other. **SYN divide sb/sth.**

**list** a series of names, items, or numbers (e.g. a **shopping list**, a **list of countries**).

**omit sth** **FML** If you **omit sth**, you don't include it. **SYN leave sth out.**

**interrupt sth** occur in the middle of sth and stop it continuing.

**details** small pieces of information about sth.

**instead of sb/sth** in the place of sb/sth.

**connect sth** put two or more things together. **SYN join sth.**

**such as** You use **such as** to introduce an example. **SYN like.**

**alternative** one of two or more things that you can choose between.

## 4 Complete the sentences.

► Sentences have to begin with a capital letter.

1 I wrote a \_\_\_\_\_ of irregular verbs in my notebook.

2 I would use this dictionary \_\_\_\_\_ of the other one; it's much better.

3 We often use *and* or *but* to \_\_\_\_\_ two parts of a sentence.

4 In this application form, you have to give \_\_\_\_\_ of your work experience.

5 I asked her to marry me. There was a long \_\_\_\_\_, and finally she said yes.

6 *Prep.* is an \_\_\_\_\_ of *preposition*.

7 You need to use more adjectives \_\_\_\_\_ as *beautiful*, *delightful*, and *attractive*.

8 The teacher said we can \_\_\_\_\_ out Exercise 5 and go on to Exercise 6.

9 You can use brackets to \_\_\_\_\_ extra information from the rest of the sentence.

10 The director had to \_\_\_\_\_ the lesson to tell us to leave the building quickly.

11 You could \_\_\_\_\_ the two sentences into one by using *so*.

12 You can use a full stop, but the \_\_\_\_\_ is that you use a semicolon.

## 5 Find pairs of words in the box that go together for a reason. Write a sentence about them.

comma omit abbreviation join such as ✓ p.m. information  
separate like ✓ leave out full stop details divide connect

► 'Such as' and 'like' mean the same thing.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

## 6 What punctuation is missing, and where?

► We live in this house A full stop is missing at the end of the sentence.

1 she works in Bristol. \_\_\_\_\_.

2 He's a tall thin boy. \_\_\_\_\_.

3 The book is *in on* the table. Which is correct? \_\_\_\_\_.

4 We have two choices stay here and wait, or go and look for them. \_\_\_\_\_.

5 When we arrived we went straight to a restaurant. \_\_\_\_\_.

6 This is my boyfriends watch. \_\_\_\_\_.

7 After that fortunately we had no more problems. \_\_\_\_\_.

8 We couldn't get in the door was locked. \_\_\_\_\_.

# Review: Learning

## Unit 1

### 1 Rewrite the sentences. Change the part of speech of the underlined words.

- Did you discuss it? Did you have a discussion about it?
- 1 Could you translate this, please? Could you do \_\_\_\_\_?
  - 2 I've got to revise for an exam. I've got to do \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 3 Repetition helps me remember. It helps me remember if \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 4 How did he explain it? What was \_\_\_\_\_?
  - 5 Go on – guess! Go on – have \_\_\_\_\_!
  - 6 I record new words in a book. I keep \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 7 Did you chat about it? Did you have \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 8 How do you pronounce that word? What's \_\_\_\_\_?

### 2 Complete the text with words and phrases from the box.

make a note of go through texts ✓ translation pronounce make pronunciation gist experiment foreign guess context recognize

I've just started university and I'm studying Italian. We spend a lot of time reading ► texts – they're usually articles from Italian newspapers. They contain a lot of words you don't (1) \_\_\_\_\_, and to start with, you have to try to get the (2) \_\_\_\_\_ of the articles to show that you understand the general idea. In class we (3) \_\_\_\_\_ the texts and (4) \_\_\_\_\_ any useful new words. The teacher tells us to (5) \_\_\_\_\_ the meaning of new words by looking at the (6) \_\_\_\_\_ they are in. We then write a (7) \_\_\_\_\_ of them if we want to, and learn how to (8) \_\_\_\_\_ them correctly. I often (9) \_\_\_\_\_ mistakes with (10) \_\_\_\_\_, but I don't think it matters; it's important to (11) \_\_\_\_\_ with language; that's the best way to make progress. Next year, I'm starting another (12) \_\_\_\_\_ language: Russian. I'm really excited about that.

## Unit 2

### 1 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- I want to learn Italian – nothing very specialized, just everyday Italian.
- 1 It was a very c\_\_\_\_\_ story – quite hard to understand.
  - 2 I don't know enough words, so my vocabulary needs to e\_\_\_\_\_. That is my main a\_\_\_\_\_ on this course.
  - 3 I've lived in Costa Rica for five years now, and I can speak Spanish f\_\_\_\_\_.
  - 4 You need to know the subject very well and talk about it in d\_\_\_\_\_.
  - 5 There is now a wide r\_\_\_\_\_ of evening courses that you can do at the college.
  - 6 Does this drink c\_\_\_\_\_ alcohol?
  - 7 Some of the courses are too s\_\_\_\_\_ – I don't have the knowledge to do them.
  - 8 You have to complete each sentence with an a\_\_\_\_\_ word.

### 2 Complete the text with words from the box.

progress aware spoke ✓ getting frustrating encouraging while accurate motivated express

When I went to live in Argentina, I ► spoke some Spanish but I couldn't understand people when they spoke Spanish to me, so it was very (1) \_\_\_\_\_. But I was very (2) \_\_\_\_\_. I worked hard at my Spanish, and after a (3) \_\_\_\_\_ I could see that I was making a lot of (4) \_\_\_\_\_. It was also very (5) \_\_\_\_\_ when people told me that I was (6) \_\_\_\_\_.



better. My problem was that I still made a lot of mistakes, and I wasn't (7) \_\_\_\_\_ of them. Anyway, I kept trying, and after about a year, I was able to (8) \_\_\_\_\_ most things I needed to, and my Spanish was also quite (9) \_\_\_\_\_ – I only made a few mistakes.

## Unit 3

### 1 Complete the words in the text.

When you meet a new word in a text, ► for \_\_\_\_\_ example, *genuine*, you might want to look up the meaning in a dictionary. It's important to look at all the (1) d \_\_\_\_\_ in an (2) e \_\_\_\_\_, and then (3) s \_\_\_\_\_ the correct one, according to the context of the sentence. For (4) i \_\_\_\_\_, if the sentence is *I bought a genuine Velasquez painting*, you know the meaning is 'real' or 'authentic'. *Genuine* is a difficult word to pronounce, so it is worth looking at the phonetic (5) s \_\_\_\_\_, and note too how the word is (6) s \_\_\_\_\_; in fact, the (7) s \_\_\_\_\_ is on the first (8) s \_\_\_\_\_.

If you come across an (9) i \_\_\_\_\_ or (10) e \_\_\_\_\_ such as *under the weather*, you should check the meaning (it means 'feeling slightly ill'), and then look at the (11) s \_\_\_\_\_ of the phrase: is it formal or informal? This particular phrase isn't rude, but you certainly wouldn't want to (12) o \_\_\_\_\_ anyone, so it's always a good idea to check.

## Unit 4

### 1 Read the text, then answer the questions below.

1 *I really want to leave home, so I went to see a flat last night. It had everything: a kitchen, a living*  
 2 *room, a bathroom, a bedroom, and a study – and it was in a great location. I realized, however, that*  
 3 *it would be too expensive for me on my own. I rang Mr Pavlides at the agency this morning; he offered*  
 4 *to make it a bit cheaper, so I decided to take it. My mother was really pleased. 'You're moving out at*  
 5 *last! But Michael, who's going to wash your shirts for you now?' she said.*

What punctuation is there:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| ► after <i>home</i> in line 1 <u>a comma</u> | 4 before <i>You're</i> in line 4? _____ |
| 1 after <i>everything</i> in line 1? _____   | 5 after <i>last</i> in line 5? _____    |
| 2 after <i>on my own</i> in line 3? _____    | 6 in <i>who's</i> in line 5? _____      |
| 3 after <i>this morning</i> in line 3? _____ | 7 after <i>now</i> in line 5? _____     |

### 2 Look at the text again. Complete the sentences.

- The first sentence begins with a capital letter.
- There is a comma after *home*, which s \_\_\_\_\_ the two parts of the sentence.
  - There is a colon after *everything*. It is often used before more d \_\_\_\_\_ or a l \_\_\_\_\_.
  - In the sentence beginning *I realized*, the word *however* i \_\_\_\_\_ the progression of the sentence, so commas are used around it.
  - After the word *morning* there is a semicolon. This can be used i \_\_\_\_\_ of a full stop when the two sentences are closely c \_\_\_\_\_.

## 5 I can talk about appearance

### A Male appearance



He's got **broad shoulders**<sup>1</sup> and is **well built**.



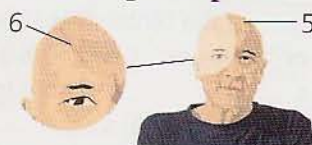
He's tall and **skinny**, but he's **in good shape**.



He's got thick **eyebrows**<sup>2</sup> and **stubble**<sup>3</sup>. He's **dark-skinned**<sup>4</sup>.  
OPP **light-** OR **pale-skinned**.



He's quite **plump**, with a **fattish** face.



He's **clean-shaven** and **bald**<sup>5</sup>. He has a **scar**<sup>6</sup> on his head.



He's **going bald** OR  
He's **losing his hair** OR  
His hair's **receding**.

### Glossary

**male** Men and boys are **male**, women and girls are **female** (a person's **sex** is male or female).

**well built** with a solid, strong body. SYN **stocky**.

**skinny** very thin, but not in an attractive way.

**in good/bad shape** in good/bad physical condition.

**plump** quite fat, in a nice way.

**fattish** quite fat. (See spotlight, next page.)

**clean-shaven** without a beard or moustache.

### 1 One letter is missing from each word. Write the words correctly.

- |                        |                        |                      |
|------------------------|------------------------|----------------------|
| ► skinny <u>skinny</u> | 3 sca _____            | 6 clean-shave _____  |
| 1 eyebrows _____       | 4 brod shoulders _____ | 7 in good sape _____ |
| 2 fatish _____         | 5 subble _____         |                      |

### 2 Similar or different? Write S or D.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| ► fattish   plump <u>S</u>                | 5 dark-skinned   pale-skinned _____                  |
| 1 skinny   dark-skinned _____             | 6 stubble   a scar _____                             |
| 2 in good shape   in good condition _____ | 7 pale-skinned   light-skinned _____                 |
| 3 go bald   be bald _____                 | 8 He's losing his hair.   His hair's receding. _____ |
| 4 stocky   well built _____               | 9 male   female _____                                |

### 3 Complete the questions. You will write your answers to the questions in Exercise 4.

In your family:

- |                            |                   |                                      |                   |
|----------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------|
| 1 who's in good s _____?   | ABOUT YOUR FAMILY | 5 who's well b _____?                | ABOUT YOUR FAMILY |
| 2 who's going b _____?     |                   | 6 who's sk _____?                    |                   |
| 3 who's c _____-shaven?    |                   | 7 who's dark-s _____?                |                   |
| 4 who's got broad s _____? |                   | 8 who's got a s _____ on their body? |                   |

### 4 ABOUT YOUR FAMILY Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.

### 5 Look at the pictures and cover the texts. Can you remember the descriptions?



## B Female appearance



This is my mother at 27 when she **was pregnant**; in fact, she was **expecting** me. She had a **pretty, roundish** face with beautiful **smooth skin** and long hair.



Here's Mum now; she looks **tanned**. She's still **slim** with a good **figure**. Her **appearance** hasn't changed much, but she's got a few **wrinkles**<sup>1</sup>, she's **going grey**, and her hair's much shorter and **neater**. She wears **contact lenses**, and you can't **tell** that she's nearly 60.

### spotlight **-ish**

The suffix **-ish** is used with some adjectives to mean 'quite'. A **roundish face** is a face which is quite round. Also: **tallish, youngish, fattish**, etc.

### Glossary

<b>be pregnant</b>	• SYN <b>be expecting a baby</b> .	<b>figure</b>	• the shape of a woman's body.
<b>pretty</b>	• attractive and nice to look at (used especially about girls or young women).	<b>appearance</b>	• the way sb looks.
<b>smooth skin</b>	• with a completely flat surface. OPP <b>rough</b> .	<b>go grey</b> OR <b>white</b>	• become grey-haired or white-haired.
<b>tanned</b>	• having brown skin after spending time in the sun. <b>tan</b> N.	<b>neat</b>	• tidy and carefully arranged.
<b>slim</b>	• thin in an attractive way. SYN <b>slender</b> .	<b>contact lenses</b>	• small round pieces of plastic you wear in your eyes to help you see better.
		<b>tell sth</b>	• know or guess sth.

### 6 True or false? Write T or F.

- ▶ If your hair is neat, it's tidy. T
- 1 Contact lenses are the same as glasses. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Skin can be rough or smooth. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 A tallish person is very tall. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 A pregnant woman has just had a baby. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 You get tanned sitting in the sun. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Everyone has a good figure. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 You usually use 'pretty' to describe a man. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 Your hair can go white or grey. \_\_\_\_\_

### 7 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ Does she wear contact lenses ?
- 1 Her \_\_\_\_\_ has gone grey, and it's completely changed her \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 She's still very slim, so you can't \_\_\_\_\_ she's \_\_\_\_\_ a baby in July.
- 3 I'm feeling so old these days – look at these \_\_\_\_\_ around my eyes!
- 4 My baby's skin is so \_\_\_\_\_ to touch, but my hands are really \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 She's got a beautiful figure: she's tall and \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 You can \_\_\_\_\_ she's been on holiday – she's got a lovely \_\_\_\_\_.

### 8 Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. What are the words?

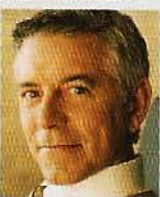
## 6 I can talk about character

### How I **see** myself

Dan (33) 'I'm **ambitious**, **self-confident**, and **generous**.  
I'm also very **impatient**.'

Kaz (18) 'I'm always **cheerful**,  
I'm **easy-going**, and I've got  
lots of **energy**.'

Giles (45) 'I see myself as  
**honest**, **hard-working**, and  
generally **tolerant**.'



### How others **see** me

'Some people really like me;  
others think I'm **arrogant** and  
maybe **aggressive**.'

'My parents don't think I'm very  
**responsible**; my friends just  
think I'm **crazy**.'

'Other people probably think I'm  
a bit **dull**, without much **sense  
of humour**.'

### spotlight *crazy, mad, stupid*

**Crazy** INF and **mad** mean 'not sensible or practical; a bit stupid'.

Both words can describe a person or an action or idea, but the meaning is not always negative. They can describe someone who is a bit out of control but just wants to enjoy life. **Stupid** is always negative.

### Glossary

see sb as sth	• imagine or think of sb in a particular way.
ambitious	• having a strong desire to do well or be successful. OPP <b>unambitious</b> . <b>ambition</b> N.
self-confident	• feeling sure about your own ability. OPP <b>insecure</b> .
generous	• happy to give more money and help than is usual. OPP <b>mean</b> . <b>generosity</b> N.
impatient	• not able to stay calm and wait for sth/sb. OPP <b>patient</b> . <b>patience</b> N.
arrogant	• thinking you are better than other people. OPP <b>modest</b> . <b>arrogance</b> N.
aggressive	• likely to fight or argue. <b>aggression</b> N.
cheerful	• feeling happy.
easy-going	• relaxed and not worried by what other people do.
energy	• the ability to be very active without getting tired. <b>energetic</b> ADJ.
responsible	• able to act sensibly and intelligently. OPP <b>irresponsible</b> .
honest	• always telling the truth. OPP <b>dishonest</b> . <b>honesty</b> N.
hard-working	• able to work with effort and for a long time. OPP <b>lazy</b> .
tolerant	• able to accept ideas you don't agree with. OPP <b>intolerant</b> . <b>tolerance</b> N.
dull	• boring.
sense of humour	• the ability to laugh at things and see when sth is funny.

### 1 Positive or negative, or can it be both? Write P or N or B.

- |                                    |                                       |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| ► She's very cheerful. <u>P</u>    | ► He's very ambitious. <u>B</u>       |
| 1 He's very arrogant. _____        | 5 She's so modest. _____              |
| 2 They're a bit dull. _____        | 6 He's very self-confident. _____     |
| 3 Both boys are very honest. _____ | 7 Karen is so mean. _____             |
| 4 My boss is very tolerant. _____  | 8 My brother is absolutely mad. _____ |



## 2 Correct the spelling mistakes.

- ▶ onest honest                      3 generos generous                      6 agresive aggressive  
 1 energie energy                      4 cheerfull cheerful                      7 patiente patient  
 2 responsible responsible                      5 energetik energetic                      8 tolarant tolerant

## 3 Match 1–8 with a–i.

- ▶ feeling sure about your own ability c  
 1 boring f  
 2 likely to fight or argue a  
 3 thinking you are better than others d  
 4 always telling the truth e  
 5 ability to laugh at things h  
 6 feeling happy i  
 7 unhappy to give money or help people b  
 8 able to accept ideas you don't agree with c
- a aggressive  
 b cheerful  
 c self-confident ✓  
 d tolerant  
 e sense of humour  
 f dull  
 g arrogant  
 h honest  
 i mean

## 4 Complete the tables.

ADJECTIVE	OPPOSITE	ADJECTIVE	NOUN
▶ patient	<u>impatient</u>	ambitious	<u>ambition</u>
honest	<u>dishonest</u>	honest	<u>honesty</u>
responsible	<u>irresponsible</u>	tolerant	<u>tolerance</u>
lazy	<u>hard-working</u>	aggressive	<u>aggression</u>
generous	<u>selfish</u>	arrogant	<u>arrogance</u>
ambitious	<u>unambitious</u>	generous	<u>generosity</u>
self-confident	<u>self-doubting</u>	patient	<u>patience</u>

## 5 Complete the words in each sentence.

- ▶ If you disagree with Matthew, he can get a bit aggressive.  
 1 My brother's a bit irresponsible and does some crazy things; but he's OK.  
 2 Keiko's a good person to share a flat with: she's very easy-going.  
 3 I like Zoltan; he's got a great sense of humour.  
 4 Hamdi is a fantastic musician, but very few people realize this because he's so much.  
 5 Since Katy got a new job and a boyfriend, she's become more self-confident.  
 6 My brother's lazy, but my sisters have always been very hard-working.  
 7 I don't think young Andy is responsible enough to drive a car.  
 8 Andrea has so much energy; she's always doing something.

## 6 ABOUT YOU Answer the questions, or ask another student.

- 1 Are you ambitious? If so, in what way? I am ambitious because I want to be a doctor.  
 2 Would you say you're hard-working or a bit lazy? I am hard-working.  
 3 Are you intolerant of anything? If so, what? I am intolerant of people who are late.  
 4 When do you get impatient? I get impatient when I am waiting for someone.  
 5 How do you see yourself? Write three adjectives. I am ambitious, hard-working, and patient.  
 6 Which two qualities do you think are the most important: honesty, patience, tolerance, or generosity? Honesty and patience.

## 7 Test yourself. Cover your opposites and nouns in Exercise 4 and test yourself. Then cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What do they mean?



## 7 I can describe my feelings

### A Feelings



Word	Example	Meaning
<b>thrilled</b>	He was <b>thrilled</b> to win and he <b>kissed</b> <sup>1</sup> the cup.	very happy and excited. SYN <b>delighted</b> .
<b>furious</b>	I lost his keys: he was <b>absolutely furious</b> .	very angry.
<b>astonished</b>	I was <b>astonished</b> to hear he was married.	very surprised. SYN <b>amazed</b> .
<b>heartbroken</b>	She was <b>heartbroken</b> when her father died.	very sad and emotionally upset.
<b>terrified</b>	I was <b>terrified</b> when the plane took off.	very frightened. SYN <b>scared stiff</b> INF.
<b>miserable</b>	You look <b>very miserable</b> . What's wrong?	unhappy and depressed. SYN <b>fed up</b> INF.
<b>proud</b>	I felt very <b>proud</b> when my book was published.	pleased about sth you or other people have done.
<b>jealous</b>	My boyfriend is <b>jealous</b> when I'm with other boys. I've always been <b>jealous</b> of Tom; everyone likes him.	1 angry or sad because you're afraid of losing sb's love. 2 angry or sad because sb has sth you don't have. SYN <b>envious</b> .
<b>anxious</b>	He was <b>anxious</b> before he went into hospital.	worried and afraid.
<b>upset</b>	Sally was very <b>upset</b> because no one spoke to her.	sad and angry because of sth that has happened.

#### 1 Complete the words and phrases.

- ▶ amazed \_\_\_\_\_ 4 thr \_\_\_\_\_  
 1 anx \_\_\_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_\_\_ broken  
 2 fur \_\_\_\_\_ 6 scared \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 ast \_\_\_\_\_ 7 ki \_\_\_\_\_

#### spotlight **absolutely and very**

Use **absolutely** before extreme adjectives, e.g. *furious, astonished, heartbroken, terrified*.

Use **very** before degree adjectives, e.g. *miserable, jealous, anxious, upset*.

I was **absolutely** amazed. (NOT **very** amazed.)

They were **very** proud. (NOT **absolutely** proud.)

#### 2 Write synonyms for these words and phrases.

- ▶ worried anxious 2 fed up \_\_\_\_\_ 4 astonished \_\_\_\_\_  
 1 thrilled \_\_\_\_\_ 3 scared stiff \_\_\_\_\_ 5 envious \_\_\_\_\_

#### 3 ABOUT YOU How might you feel in these situations? Write your answers using words from the table, or ask another student.

- ▶ Someone hits your car because they were driving badly. I'd be furious.  
 1 You've just passed an important exam. I'd be \_\_\_\_\_.  
 2 Your best friend has bought a car that you would love to have. \_\_\_\_\_.  
 3 Your lovely old dog has just died. \_\_\_\_\_.  
 4 A man walks up to you in the street and holds a knife to your face. \_\_\_\_\_.  
 5 You're on holiday but you can't go out because you've got a bad cold. \_\_\_\_\_.  
 6 You see someone you don't know kissing your boyfriend/girlfriend. \_\_\_\_\_.  
 7 You have been chosen to make a speech at an important event. \_\_\_\_\_.  
 8 You are going somewhere by plane and you don't like flying. \_\_\_\_\_.

#### 4 Test yourself. Cover the meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?



## B How emotional are you?

ABOUT YOU

### YOU AND YOUR EMOTIONS

- a I'm an emotional person and I like to show my feelings.
- b I think I'm quite **sensitive**, so I try not to upset other people.
- c I'm **sensitive** about my appearance.
- d When I'm in a bad mood, I sometimes hurt people's feelings.
- e In general, I think I'm quite a **moody** person.
- f When people have personal problems, I think I'm usually very sympathetic and supportive.

Are you like this?

Yes/No

Yes/No

Yes/No

Yes/No

Yes/No

Yes/No

#### spotlight **sensitive**

**Sensitive** has two meanings:

1 a positive meaning: 'able to understand people's feelings and problems' (e.g. sentence (b) above). **OPP insensitive**.

2 a more negative meaning: 'easily upset' (e.g. sentence (c) above).

#### Glossary

**emotional** having strong feelings, and often showing them. **emotion** N.

**show your feelings** express your feelings openly.  
**OPP hide your feelings.**

**upset sb** make sb unhappy.

**be in a bad mood** feel angry or unhappy at a particular time. **OPP be in a good mood.**

**hurt sb's feelings** say sth that makes sb unhappy.

**moody** If you are **moody**, you often change and become angry or unhappy for no obvious reason.

**sympathetic** kind and showing you understand sb's problems (**sympathetic** doesn't mean 'friendly' or 'nice' in English).

**supportive** giving help to sb who has a problem.

### 5 Circle the correct answer.

- ▶ Try not to hurt/upset his feelings.
- 1 Sarah's not very emotional, and tends to show/hide her feelings.
- 2 You can talk to Gary easily about your problems; he's very sympathetic/moody.
- 3 Be careful what you say to Susan because she's very sympathetic/sensitive.
- 4 You never know what Karen will be like because she's so moody/supportive.
- 5 Brian is the most emotional/insensitive man I know; he upsets everyone.
- 6 Love, anger, and fear are all emotions/moods.

### 6 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- ▶ Caroline is very sensitive. She seems to know when someone has a problem.
- 1 Keep away from Elton – he's in a bad \_\_\_\_\_ today.
- 2 He \_\_\_\_\_ his parents because he was so rude to them.
- 3 My children cooked all my meals when I was ill. They were very \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 I broke my leg and it was really painful, but my friends weren't very \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 I'm \_\_\_\_\_ a really good mood today. I think it's the fantastic weather.
- 6 Paul tends to upset people and \_\_\_\_\_ their feelings.

### 7 ABOUT YOU Complete the right-hand column in the questionnaire, or ask another student.

## 8 I can talk about relationships

### A Friendship

Word	Example	Meaning
<b>friendship</b>	Our <b>friendship</b> has always been very important to us.	the relationship between people who are friends.
<b>make friends</b>	I find it difficult to <b>make friends</b> .	form friendly relationships.
<b>get on (well) with sb</b>	Do you <b>get on well with</b> your classmates?	have a good relationship with sb. OPP <b>not get on with sb</b> .
<b>rely on sb</b> <b>reliable</b> ADJ	I can always <b>rely on</b> my sisters. My brother's not very <b>reliable</b> .	feel sure that sb will do what they say they will do. SYN <b>depend on sb</b> .
<b>trust sb</b>	You have to <b>trust</b> your friends.	believe sb is good and won't hurt you.
<b>loyal</b>	He was very <b>loyal</b> to my father.	being a friend to sb, even in difficult times. OPP <b>disloyal</b> .
<b>sociable</b>	She's very <b>sociable</b> and gets on well with people.	A <b>sociable</b> person likes the company of other people. OPP <b>antisocial</b> .
<b>keep in touch</b>	Simon is an <b>old friend</b> . We've always <b>kept in touch</b> .	(of two or more people) stay in contact by speaking or writing to each other.

#### 1 Combine words in the box to make phrases.

- ▶ rely ✓ friend get on well friends  
 on someone ✓ a close keep make  
 in touch on someone depend  
 with someone

▶ rely on someone

#### spotlight friend

An **old friend** is someone you have known for a long time; a **close friend** is someone you know and like very much. If you **are friendly with sb**, you treat them as a friend.

#### 2 Answer the questions.

- ▶ Another way of saying 'stay in contact with someone' is *keep in touch*.  
 1 *Rely (on)* is a verb. What's the adjective? \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 What's a synonym for *rely on*? \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 A *sociable* person enjoys the company of others. What's the opposite? \_\_\_\_\_  
 4 What's the opposite of *loyal*? \_\_\_\_\_  
 5 What's the relationship between people who are friends? \_\_\_\_\_  
 6 What do you call a friend you like very much? A \_\_\_\_\_ friend.

#### 3 Rewrite the sentences using the words in capitals in the correct form. The meaning must stay the same.

- ▶ He's a bit antisocial. SOCIABLE He isn't very sociable.  
 1 He likes Ruben. FRIENDLY \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 She never phones us. TOUCH \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 I don't have a good relationship with my father. GET ON \_\_\_\_\_  
 4 I became her friend at university. MAKE \_\_\_\_\_  
 5 My boss is very reliable. RELY \_\_\_\_\_  
 6 I've known Donna for a long time. OLD \_\_\_\_\_

#### 4 Test yourself. Cover the examples and meanings. What are the meanings?



## B When things go wrong

### Perfect Weekend Channel Five

Wednesday 9 p.m. – 11 p.m.

TV drama about a group of young people who **got to know one another** at university, and now, five years later, **get together** for a weekend. But things soon **go wrong**. John doesn't get on with Dan, and now **realizes** they **have nothing in common**, while Pete **regrets** the fact that he **split up** with Amy, the girl he used to **go out with**. Now Amy is **in a serious relationship** with Keith (who didn't go to university), and Keith doesn't like Amy's old friends. This creates tension in the group, and soon there's a big **row**. Amy **falls out** with Pete, and Dan and John stop speaking to each other. And that's just the beginning ...

#### spotlight **have a row / an argument**

Both phrases mean 'have an angry discussion', e.g. *I had a row with Li.*

The verb related to *argument* is **argue**, e.g. *They argued with each other.*

### Glossary

**get to know sb** meet sb a number of times and become friends.

**one another** each other.

**get together** (of two or more people) meet for a social reason.

**go wrong** used when a problem happens in a situation or relationship.

**realize sth** begin to understand sth that you didn't know before.

**have nothing in common** (of two people) have no interests that are the same. **opp** **have a lot in common**.

**regret sth / doing sth** feel sorry about sth you did or didn't do.

**split up with sb** stop being in a romantic relationship with sb.

**go out with sb** have sb as a boyfriend or girlfriend.

**in a (serious) relationship** having a long-term boyfriend or girlfriend.

**fall out with sb** argue with sb and stop being friendly with them.

## 5 Circle the correct word.

► They were very happy, then something got/went wrong.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 Hana's by/in a serious relationship.  | 4 They have lots in/on common.             |
| 2 Lian and Chen have fallen out/on.     | 5 She got/went out with Len at university. |
| 3 Shall we come/get together next week? | 6 How did you get/go to know Anya?         |

## 6 Complete the missing words.

- I went out with Osman for two months, then we fell out over something stupid.
- I don't get on with Dirk. We a \_\_\_\_\_ a lot, and last week we had a terrible r \_\_\_\_\_.
  - I'd like to get to k \_\_\_\_\_ Anders better because we have a lot in c \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Karli s \_\_\_\_\_ up with him last week and I think she r \_\_\_\_\_ it now; she's a bit depressed.
  - We have nothing in common. That's why I r \_\_\_\_\_ I could never g \_\_\_\_\_ o \_\_\_\_\_ with him.

## 7 Complete the text.

Milo and I got to ► know one (1) \_\_\_\_\_ when we worked together during the summer. We had a lot in (2) \_\_\_\_\_ and got on really well, but, unfortunately, he was in a serious (3) \_\_\_\_\_ at the time. Then it all went (4) \_\_\_\_\_. He and his girlfriend Inez had a big (5) \_\_\_\_\_ and he (6) \_\_\_\_\_ up with her. We started to (7) \_\_\_\_\_ out with each other almost immediately, but Milo soon (8) \_\_\_\_\_ his decision to end his relationship with Inez. He (9) \_\_\_\_\_ he was still in love with her, and that our relationship was a big mistake.

## 9 I can talk about families

### A Family relationships

Marilyn Monroe was an **only child** from a **single-parent family**, but she lived with **foster parents** until she was seven, and then she was **adopted** by her mother's best friend. She got married at sixteen, and she got **divorced** three times.



Bill Clinton's father died before he was born. His mother, Virginia, had to find a way to **support** Bill, so she studied nursing, and Bill was **brought up** by his grandparents. When Bill was four, his mother married Roger Clinton, who became Bill's **stepfather**. Roger and Virginia had a son called Roger, who is Bill Clinton's **half-brother**.

#### Glossary

**only child** a child with no brothers or sisters.

**single parent** a mother or father who looks after their children alone.

**foster parent** sb who looks after another person's child in their home for a time.

**adopt a child** take sb's child into your family and legally make them your child.

**get divorced** legally end your marriage. **syn** get a divorce.

**support sb** help someone live by giving them money, food, or a home.

**bring sb up** look after a child and teach them how to live.

**stepfather** a man who has married your mother but is not your father (related words: **stepmother**, **stepson**, **stepdaughter**, **stepbrother**, **stepsister**).

**half-brother**, **half-sister** a brother or sister who has either the same mother or the same father as you.

#### 1 Complete the words or phrases.

- |                      |                   |                       |
|----------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|
| ▶ <u>step</u> mother | 3 f_____ parents  | 6 ad_____ a child     |
| 1 an o_____ child    | 4 s_____ father   | 7 s_____ parent       |
| 2 h_____ -sister     | 5 get _____ orced | 8 br_____ somebody up |

#### 2 Same or different? Write S or D.

- ▶ She's a single parent. | She's a foster parent. D
- 1 He's an only child. | He hasn't got any brothers or sisters. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 He's my half-brother. | He's my stepbrother. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 He's my stepson. | He's my wife's son by her first marriage. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 She was adopted as a baby. | She lived with foster parents as a baby. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 She's my half-sister. | She's my mother's sister. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Our uncle supported us. | Our uncle brought us up. \_\_\_\_\_

#### 3 Complete the questions.

- 1 Where were you b\_\_\_\_\_ up?
- 2 Have you got any brothers or sisters, or are you an o\_\_\_\_\_ child?
- 3 Do you have any h\_\_\_\_\_ -brothers or -sisters?
- 4 Do you know anyone who is a s\_\_\_\_\_ parent? If so, who?
- 5 Do you know anyone who has recently got d\_\_\_\_\_ ?

#### ABOUT YOU

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

#### 4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.



## B Family history 🎧

I'm **related to** a **member** of the **royal** family.

We have **ancestors** who were Russian **immigrants**. They **emigrated from** Russia **to** Britain in the nineteenth century.

I'm from London, but **previous generations** of my family lived in Malta.

Some of my **relatives** were **originally** from China.

I **look like** my grandmother, but I **take after** my father. We're both very lazy!



queen

king

### Glossary

**be related to sb**

• be in the same family as sb. **relative** N. SYN **relation**.

**member**

• a person who is in a group such as a family or a club.

**royal**

• relating to a **king** or **queen** (see picture).

**ancestor**

• a person in your family who lived a long time ago.

**immigrant**

• a person who comes to a foreign country to live there.

**emigrate from ... to ...**

• leave your country in order to live in another.

**previous**

• happening before the one you are talking about.

**generation**

• all the people in a family born at about the same time.

**originally**

• in the beginning, before other things happened.

**look like sb**

• have the same appearance as sb.

**take after sb**

• be like an older member of your family.

### 5 Circle the correct answer.

► Our ancestors were Italian immigrants members.

1 She's one of my ancestors/relatives; she was born in 1880.

2 Janet looks like/takes after her daughter.

3 My ancestors emigrated/related to Australia a century ago.

4 Are your relations/immigrants from Italy?

5 I'm originally/previously from Rome: that's where I was born.

6 He's married to a member/generation of the royal family.

### 6 Complete the questions.

► What do you know about your ancestors ?

1 Are you r\_\_\_\_\_ to anyone famous?

2 Do you have a r\_\_\_\_\_ family in your country?

If so, do you have a king or a q\_\_\_\_\_ ?

3 Where do/did the p\_\_\_\_\_ generations of your family live?

4 Which m\_\_\_\_\_ of your family do you look l\_\_\_\_\_ ?

5 Do you take a \_\_\_\_\_ your mother or your father? How?

### ABOUT YOU

---



---



---



---



---

### 7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 6, or ask another student.

### 8 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

# 10 I can talk about weddings and funerals

## A A typical British wedding 🎧



When two people are planning to get married, they can **choose** to have a **religious ceremony** or a **civil ceremony**. On the **wedding** day, the **groom**<sup>1</sup> is helped by a **best man**<sup>2</sup> who brings the **rings** to the wedding ceremony. The **bride**<sup>3</sup> may have one or more **bridesmaids**<sup>4</sup>. Afterwards, there is a **reception** for the **couple** and the wedding

**guests**<sup>5</sup>. It's **traditional** for the best man and the groom to **make speeches**, and then everyone **drinks a toast** to the **couple**, and **wishes** them a long and happy **marriage**. After the reception, they usually go on their **honeymoon**. On the same day every year after that, the couple **celebrate** their wedding **anniversary**.

### Glossary

**choose sth** PT chose PP chosen decide which thing you want. **choice** N.

**ceremony** a formal public event.

**religious** A **religious ceremony** takes place in a church, mosque, temple, etc. **religion** N.

**civil** A **civil ceremony** is a non-religious one.

**wedding** a time when a man and woman get married.

**rings**



**wedding reception** a meal and/or party after a wedding.

**traditional** A **traditional** thing is sth that people have done for a long time.

**make a speech** give a formal talk to a lot of people at a special event.

**drink a toast to sb** raise a glass of wine, etc. to wish sb success or happiness.

**wish sb sth** say that you hope good things will happen to sb.

**honeymoon** a holiday for a couple who have just got married.

**celebrate sth** have a special meal, party, etc. to show you are happy about sth.

**anniversary** the date on which sth happened the previous year or in the past.

### spotlight wedding and marriage; bride and groom

A **wedding** is the ceremony for a **couple** (two people who are getting married). **Marriage** is the relationship between a husband and wife.

*We went to my sister's **wedding** on Saturday.*

*Jack and Dana's **marriage** lasted 40 years.*

On the wedding day, the couple are called the **bride** and **groom**. After they are married, they become **husband** and **wife**.



# 1 Correct the spelling mistakes. Be careful: some words are correct.

- |                           |                    |
|---------------------------|--------------------|
| ► mariage <u>marriage</u> | 7 weding _____     |
| 1 anniversary _____       | 8 honeymoon _____  |
| 2 I've choosen it _____   | 9 speach _____     |
| 3 tradicional _____       | 10 gest _____      |
| 4 civile _____            | 11 ceremonie _____ |
| 5 bridesmaid _____        | 12 recepcion _____ |
| 6 celebrate _____         | 13 religian _____  |

# 2 Circle the correct word.

- Jane and Mark's wedding/marriage is next Saturday.
- 1 Mark is the groom/best man.
  - 2 The bridesmaid/bride is Mark's sister.
  - 3 They have chosen/wished a religious ceremony.
  - 4 They've invited about sixty brides/guests to the wedding.
  - 5 The reception will be before/after the wedding ceremony.
  - 6 The rings will be brought to the ceremony by the couple/best man.
  - 7 Speeches are traditional at the reception/best man.
  - 8 When they're on their honeymoon, Jane and Mark will be bride and groom/husband and wife.

# 3 Complete the phrases using words from the box.

- groom ceremony a speech man a toast ceremony✓  
reception your honeymoon anniversary a happy marriage

- |                           |                        |
|---------------------------|------------------------|
| ► wedding <u>Ceremony</u> | 5 bride and _____      |
| 1 go on _____             | 6 celebrate your _____ |
| 2 drink _____             | 7 a religious _____    |
| 3 wish someone _____      | 8 the best _____       |
| 4 make _____              | 9 a wedding _____      |

# 4 Complete the questions with a suitable word.

## ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY

- 1 Can people \_\_\_\_\_ to have a religious ceremony or a \_\_\_\_\_ ceremony?
- 2 Does the groom have a \_\_\_\_\_ man at the ceremony?
- 3 Does the bride have any \_\_\_\_\_ with her?
- 4 In the ceremony, do the bride and groom put on wedding \_\_\_\_\_ ?
- 5 Is there usually a \_\_\_\_\_ after the ceremony?
- 6 How many \_\_\_\_\_ are usually invited?
- 7 Is it \_\_\_\_\_ for people to \_\_\_\_\_ speeches?
- 8 Do people usually drink a \_\_\_\_\_ to the bride and groom?
- 9 Do the \_\_\_\_\_ traditionally go on their \_\_\_\_\_ after the wedding?
- 10 Do people usually \_\_\_\_\_ their wedding anniversary every year?

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

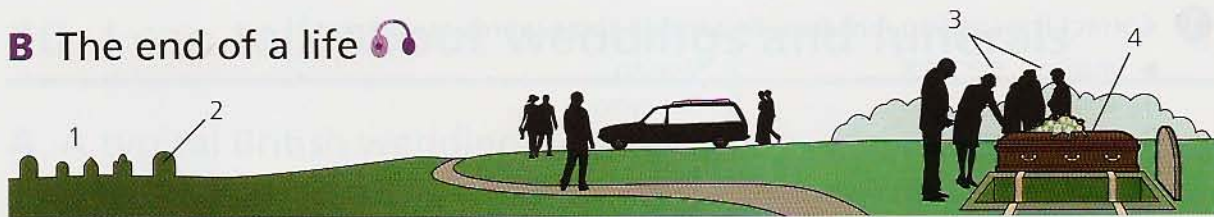
\_\_\_\_\_

# 5 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Answer the questions in Exercise 4, or ask another student.

# 6 Test yourself. Look at the picture and cover the text. Can you remember the words for the people?



## B The end of a life



1 graves 2 gravestone 3 mourners; the family are in mourning 4 coffin

Word	Example	Meaning
<b>die</b> (dic of an illness) <b>death</b> N, <b>dead</b> ADJ	He <b>died of</b> old age. His <b>death</b> was very sad.	stop living.
<b>widow</b>	Mark's <b>widow</b> never remarried.	a woman whose husband has died.
<b>widower</b>	He's been a <b>widower</b> for years.	a man whose wife has died.
<b>funeral</b>	The <b>funeral</b> was at the church.	a ceremony after sb dies.
<b>bury sb, burial</b> N	He was <b>buried</b> this morning.	put a dead body in the ground.
<b>cremate sb</b> <b>cremation</b> N	My grandmother wasn't buried; she was <b>cremated</b> .	burn the body of a dead person as part of a funeral.
<b>cemetery</b>	He's buried in that <b>cemetery</b> .	a place where dead people are buried.
<b>will</b> N	He <b>left</b> his sister €10,000 <b>in his will</b> .	a document that says who will have your money or things when you die.
<b>inherit sth</b> <b>inheritance</b> N	I <b>inherited</b> €1,000 from my uncle.	receive money or things from sb when they die.

### 7 One letter is missing. Write the words correctly.

- ded dead 3 funral funeral 6 deth death  
 1 widoer widower 4 bry bury 7 cemetry cemetery  
 2 gravstone gravestone 5 inherit inherit 8 cofin coffin

### 8 Circle the correct words or phrases.

- We went to the coffin/cemetery/funeral yesterday.  
 1 The old lady died/is dead/is death last Tuesday.  
 2 My grandfather's name is on the death/will/gravestone.  
 3 I met Jack at the funeral/burial/widow.  
 4 My grandfather was inherited/buried/cremated when he died.  
 5 Mrs Erikson was a widow/widower/mourner.  
 6 My wife was standing near the grave/coffin/cremation.

### 9 Complete the text.

I never knew my grandfather, because he ► died in 1960, before I was born. He died  
 (1) from heart problems. My grandmother was (2) in mourning for a long  
 time. She didn't marry again; she was a (3) widow for thirty years. I was very sad at the  
 news of her (4) death in 1990. I can remember her (5) funeral at our local church.  
 She was (6) buried in the cemetery near the park. She left my mother some money in her  
 (7) will, and my uncle (8) inherited her house.

### 10 Test yourself. Cover the words and examples and look at the meanings. Can you remember the words?



# Review: People

## Unit 5

### 1 Circle the correct answer.

- My uncle is going black/grey.
- Is she waiting for/expecting a baby?
  - Do you wear contact/content lenses?
  - Ahmed always looks very neat/plump and tidy.
  - You can't know/tell that she's in her fifties.
  - She goes to the gym every day; that's why she still has a great appearance/figure.
  - Olga was very bald/tanned after her holiday in Portugal.
  - You get a few scars/wrinkles round your eyes as you get older.
  - My boss is in his forties but still in good shape/figure.

### 2 Complete the sentences.

- Emilio's well built, with broad \_\_\_\_\_.
- My dad's completely \_\_\_\_\_; now my older brother is \_\_\_\_\_ his hair as well.
- He got the \_\_\_\_\_ on his leg when he fell off his bike as a child.
- I don't think his \_\_\_\_\_ has changed much in the last 20 years: he's still in good \_\_\_\_\_.
- My father has always been clean-\_\_\_\_\_ – never had a beard.
- I wouldn't say she's fat, but she is quite \_\_\_\_\_.

## Unit 6

### 1 Complete the table.

Adjective	Meaning	Noun	OPP of adjective
ambitious	having a strong desire to be successful.	ambition	unambitious
g_____	happy to give more money and help than is usual.	_____	_____
h_____	always telling the truth.	_____	_____
t_____	able to accept ideas you don't agree with.	_____	_____
p_____	able to stay calm and wait for sth.	_____	_____
a_____	thinking you are better than other people.	_____	_____
h_____	able to work with effort and for a long time.	XXXXXX	_____

### 2 Complete the dialogues.

- Is he energetic? ~ No, he's got no energy \_\_\_\_\_.
- That was a mad thing to do. ~ Yes, absolutely \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Do you find him interesting? ~ No, I think he's a \_\_\_\_\_ man.
  - Do you think you're hard-working? ~ To be honest, no – I'm quite \_\_\_\_\_.
  - He's always looking for a fight. ~ Yes, I find him very \_\_\_\_\_.
  - She never laughs at anything. ~ I know, she's got no \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_.
  - He's such a happy person. ~ Yes, he's always very \_\_\_\_\_.



## Unit 7

## 1 Replace the underlined word with either a synonym or an opposite.

- Is he always in such a bad mood? SYN terrible OPP good
- 1 Michael is usually very sensitive. OPP \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Why are they so miserable? SYN \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 We were amazed to see her. SYN \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 He never shows his feelings. OPP \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 I was terrified when it happened. SYN \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 I was delighted with my results. SYN \_\_\_\_\_

## 2 Are these sentences logical? If not, cross out the word that is not logical and replace it with a better word.

- I was astonished that I passed the exam, but really miserable. delighted
- She's very emotional, so she tends to show her feelings a lot. This is logical.
- 1 He was furious with me, and I was thrilled. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 She was so proud when her son did well, and really jealous. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I was anxious before the flight, and scared stiff by the time we took off. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 I don't know what upset her, but she was thrilled. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 She can be very insensitive and often hurts people's feelings. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 I can't talk to her because she's insensitive and very supportive. \_\_\_\_\_

## Unit 8

## 1 One word is missing in each sentence. Where from? Write it at the end.

- Paulo split / with Simone last week. up
- 1 Petros and I have nothing common. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 How did you get know her? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I like Imran; we get very well. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Don't forget to keep touch. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 You can't rely her brother. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 I don't think they're a relationship at the moment. \_\_\_\_\_

## 2 Complete the sentences. Keep the meaning the same as in the sentences on the left.

- Being friends with Tomi is important to me. My friendship with Tomi is important to me.
- 1 He just likes being with people. He's very \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 I understand what happened now. I \_\_\_\_\_ what happened.
- 3 He's been my friend in difficult times. He's been very \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 I went out for a meal with the others last week. We got \_\_\_\_\_ for a meal last week.
- 5 We share a lot of interests. We have a lot in \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 They argue a lot. They have a lot of \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 She's sorry that it happened. She \_\_\_\_\_ that it happened.
- 8 I can always depend on my sister. My sister is very \_\_\_\_\_.

## Unit 9

## 1 Which words are being defined?

- a member of your family. relative
- 1 a person who comes from a foreign country to live in your country. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 a woman who married your father but who is not your mother. \_\_\_\_\_



- 3 someone in your family who lived a long time ago. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 take a child into your family and make them your child legally. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 have the same appearance as someone. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 be like an older member of your family. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 end a marriage legally. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 all the people in a family born at about the same time. \_\_\_\_\_

## 2 Complete the text.

John Lennon's ► ancestors were Irish (1) \_\_\_\_\_ who came to live in Liverpool. John was an (2) \_\_\_\_\_ child in a single (3) \_\_\_\_\_ family. When he was five, his mother gave John to her sister, Mimi, to look after, so he was (4) \_\_\_\_\_ up by his aunt. Lennon got married in 1962 to Cynthia, and had a son, Julian. Sadly, the marriage went wrong. The Lennons got (5) \_\_\_\_\_ in 1968, and Julian was brought (6) \_\_\_\_\_ by his mother. Lennon remarried in 1969, this time marrying Yoko Ono, who already had a daughter, Kyoko, from a (7) \_\_\_\_\_ marriage which had ended in divorce. John and Yoko had a son called Sean. Julian and Sean are (8) \_\_\_\_\_ -brothers, and Julian and Kyoko are (9) \_\_\_\_\_ brother and (10) \_\_\_\_\_ sister.

## Unit 10

### 1 Find 11 more words or phrases related to weddings in the word square.

D	R	I	N	K	A	T	O	A	S	T	P
C	E	R	M	W	P	D	O	C	S	A	M
E	D	D	U	E	S	J	R	O	R	C	A
R	I	N	G	D	S	H	R	U	E	X	K
E	P	I	G	D	X	O	Z	P	C	U	E
M	A	R	R	I	A	G	E	L	E	G	A
O	W	U	O	N	V	I	N	E	P	O	S
N	U	D	O	G	U	E	S	T	L	P	
Y	E	S	M	I	F	U	R	O	I	G	E
H	O	N	E	Y	M	O	O	N	O	D	E
K	L	I	S	H	M	E	X	O	N	I	C
D	B	R	I	D	E	S	M	A	I	D	H

## 2 Complete the texts.

When my neighbour Mr Patrick ► died recently, I went to his (1) \_\_\_\_\_. His wife died ten years ago, so he had been a (2) \_\_\_\_\_ for a long time. He always wanted to be (3) \_\_\_\_\_ in the cemetery next to his wife. There were a lot of (4) \_\_\_\_\_ at the funeral: mostly family and old friends. His son, Malcolm, (5) \_\_\_\_\_ his house, and I believe he's going to move back to live in it.

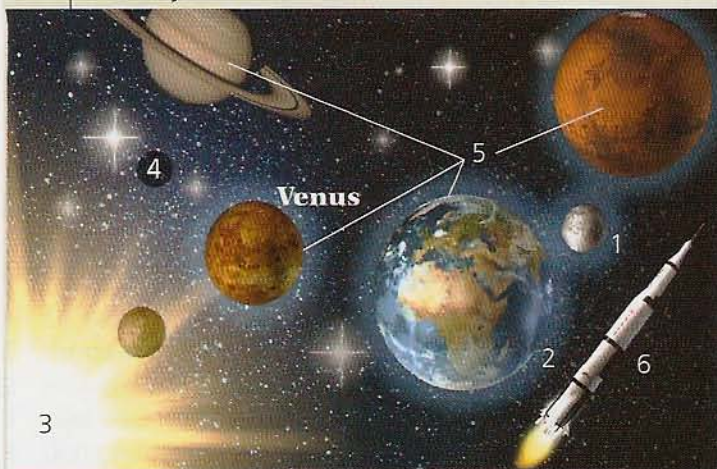
My cousin, Elizabeth, got married last year. She and her ► husband, Martin, had to (6) \_\_\_\_\_ whether to have a religious (7) \_\_\_\_\_ or a (8) \_\_\_\_\_ one. In the end, they (9) \_\_\_\_\_ a religious wedding. She was a beautiful (10) \_\_\_\_\_, and Martin looked fantastic. Martin's brother, Steve, was the (11) \_\_\_\_\_ man. It was a very traditional ceremony, and afterwards there was a (12) \_\_\_\_\_ at a hotel near the church. Next week it will be their first wedding (13) \_\_\_\_\_, so the family is going to get together to (14) \_\_\_\_\_ with a big party.



# 11 I can describe the universe

## A The universe

- The **moon**<sup>1</sup> is a **satellite** of the **earth**<sup>2</sup>; **in other words**, it **circles** around the earth. This takes **approximately** 28 days.
- The earth **revolves** around the sun every 365 days.
- The **sun**<sup>3</sup> is a star, but seems much larger than other **stars**<sup>4</sup> because it is so close to the earth. Light from the sun takes approximately eight minutes to **reach** the earth.
- Nine **planets**<sup>5</sup> revolve around the sun. We call the sun and all its planets the **solar system**.
- Seventy-five years ago, sending **rockets**<sup>6</sup> into **space** seemed **far-fetched**, but now it is a fact of life and we have **gained** considerable **knowledge** of the earth's satellite and our solar system.



### Glossary

**universe** the whole of space and everything in it, including the planets and stars.

**satellite** an object that moves round a bigger object in space.

**in other words** used for saying sth in a different way.

**circle sth** go round sth in a circle.  
SYN **revolve around sth**.

**approximately** about. SYN **roughly**.

**reach sth** arrive at a place.

**space** the area beyond the earth round the planets and stars.

**far-fetched** not easy to believe because it is very improbable.

**gain sth** get more and more of sth useful, such as knowledge or experience.

**knowledge** what you know and understand about sth.

### 1 One word is wrong in each sentence. Cross it out and write the correct word.

- The ~~sun~~ circles the earth. moon                      4 Man first walked on the sun in 1969. \_\_\_\_\_
- 1 The planets are in the solar space. \_\_\_\_\_                      5 Venus is a star. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 The earth revolves around the moon. \_\_\_\_\_                      6 We can send planes into space. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 The sun is a planet. \_\_\_\_\_                      7 The stars are part of the earth. \_\_\_\_\_

### 2 Complete the sentences.

- There are billions of stars in the universe .
- 1 Is it important to send rockets into \_\_\_\_\_ ?
- 2 The earth revolves around the sun: in other \_\_\_\_\_ , earth is a planet in our solar system.
- 3 The Venus Express rocket took \_\_\_\_\_ five months to \_\_\_\_\_ the planet Venus.
- 4 The idea of human life on Mars is far-\_\_\_\_\_ .
- 5 We have \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of knowledge about the solar system in recent years.
- 6 The earth \_\_\_\_\_ around the sun every 365 days.
- 7 My \_\_\_\_\_ of space is very limited. I'd like to learn more about it.
- 8 The moon is a \_\_\_\_\_ of the earth.

### 3 Test yourself. Cover the text and name everything in the picture.



## B Scientific exploration

### Why go to Mars?

Scientists have already sent **satellites** to **explore** the surface of Mars, and **carried out experiments** to see if they can **discover** any signs of life. So far, they haven't found any, but an **analysis** of rocks from Mars has **confirmed** that they were created by the presence of water and wind. In other words, life could have **existed** in the past.



### Glossary

<b>scientist</b>	• a person who studies the physical world.
	<b>science</b> N. <b>scientific</b> ADJ.
<b>satellite</b>	• a piece of electronic equipment that is sent into space and moves around.
<b>explore sth</b>	• travel round a place in order to learn about it.
	<b>exploration</b> N.
<b>carry out sth</b>	• do and complete a task.
<b>experiment</b>	• a scientific test done in order to learn sth.
<b>analysis</b>	• a careful study of sth in order to explain it. <b>analyse</b> V.
<b>confirm sth</b>	• say or show that sth is true or definite. <b>confirmation</b> N.
<b>exist</b>	• If sth <b>exists</b> , it is present in the real world. <b>existence</b> N.

### spotlight discover or invent?

If you **discover** something, you learn about or find something for the first time. **discovery** N. If you **invent** something, you create something that didn't exist before. **invention** N.

*They've **discovered** a new planet. Who **invented** the telescope?*

### 4 Circle the correct word.

- There was an experiment/exploration to test the levels of sugar in the blood.
- 1 These animals only explore/exist in South America – nowhere else.
  - 2 They're going to explore/analyse the area to see what they can find.
  - 3 The discovery/invention of the electric light bulb changed people's lives.
  - 4 Scientists have carried out/confirmed experiments on animals.
  - 5 Who invented/discovered the life-saving drug penicillin?
  - 6 We've got the data, so now we need to analyse/explore it.

### 5 Complete the sentences using the correct form of the word on the right.

- Television was an incredible invention.
- |  |          |
|--|----------|
| 1 There's a report from a group of _____.                    | INVENT   |
| 2 The _____ of penicillin was of major importance.           | SCIENCE  |
| 3 We're waiting for _____ of the results.                    | DISCOVER |
| 4 There will be an _____ of the findings in the laboratory.  | CONFIRM  |
| 5 The 60s and 70s were an exciting period for space _____.   | ANALYSE  |
| 6 Humans are always looking for the _____ of new life forms. | EXPLORE  |
|  | EXIST    |

### 6 Complete the sentences.

- The police discovered drugs inside his shoes.
- 1 At the moment there is no evidence that life \_\_\_\_\_ on Mars.
  - 2 They left camp and went to \_\_\_\_\_ the countryside to see what they could find.
  - 3 With the use of \_\_\_\_\_, TV can show news from anywhere in the world.
  - 4 Scientists believe they will have to \_\_\_\_\_ out further experiments.
  - 5 I don't know who first \_\_\_\_\_ the camera. Do you?
  - 6 We knew he was ill, but the doctors have now \_\_\_\_\_ that it's serious.

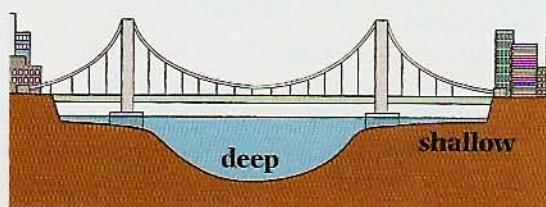
### 7 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. Can you remember the meanings?

## 12 I can talk about rivers and the sea

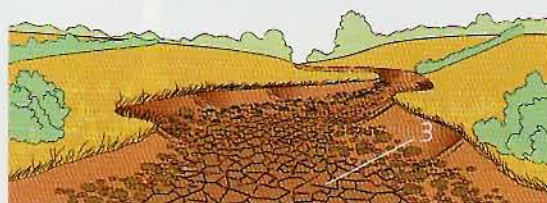
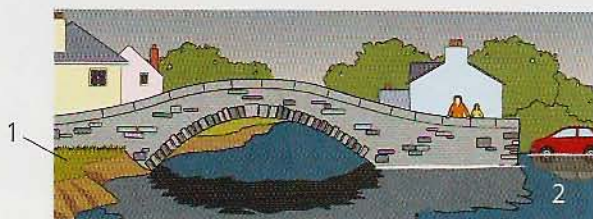
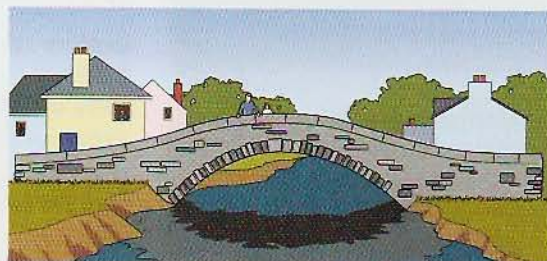
### A Water

#### RIVERS

wide river



narrow river

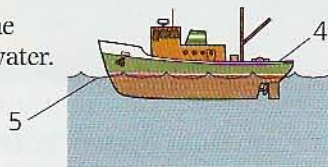


Rivers **flow** to the sea. A river can be **wide** (width N) and **deep** (depth N) or **narrow** and **shallow**. If it rains heavily, a river can **burst** its **banks**<sup>1</sup>, which **causes floods**<sup>2</sup>. If there is no rain for a long time, the river **dries up**<sup>3</sup>.

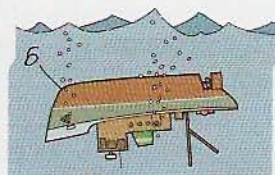
#### THE SEA and OCEANS

The **tide** comes in (**high tide**) and goes out (**low tide**) twice a day.

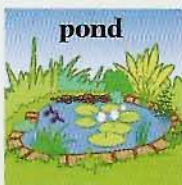
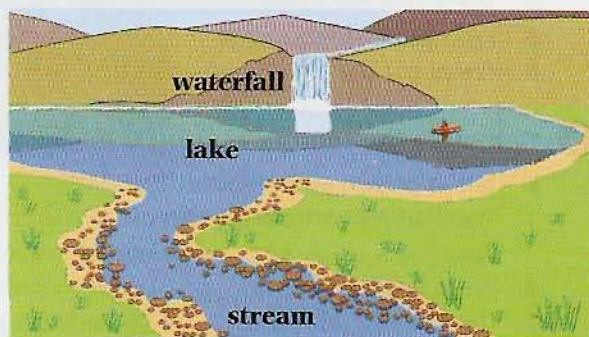
Boats **float**<sup>4</sup> on the **surface**<sup>5</sup> of the water.



In bad weather, a boat can **capsize** and **sink**<sup>6</sup>. People on the boat may be trapped **underwater** and may **drown**.



#### DIFFERENT AREAS OF WATER



#### Glossary

**flow** move smoothly (like water).

**burst** break open suddenly and violently.

**ocean** a very big sea, e.g. the Atlantic Ocean.

**tide** the regular change in the sea level caused by the moon and sun.

**capsize** (used of boats) turn over in the water.

**underwater** happening or existing below the surface of the water.

**drown** die in water because you can't breathe.

#### spotlight cause v, N

To **cause something** is to make something (often unpleasant) happen.

The wind **caused** problems for cyclists.

The **cause of something** is the person or thing that makes it happen.

The police don't know the **cause** of the accident.



# 1 One letter is missing. Write the words correctly.

- |                   |                  |
|-------------------|------------------|
| ▶ lak <u>lake</u> | 6 narro _____    |
| 1 flod _____      | 7 pudle _____    |
| 2 high tid _____  | 8 dron _____     |
| 3 shalow _____    | 9 waterfal _____ |
| 4 flot _____      | 10 ocen _____    |
| 5 suface _____    |                  |

# 2 Match 1–8 with a–i.

- |                     |                |
|---------------------|----------------|
| ▶ the tide <u>i</u> | a capsized     |
| 1 burst _____       | b to the sea   |
| 2 the river _____   | c its banks    |
| 3 low _____         | d dried up     |
| 4 the width _____   | e in the lake  |
| 5 it flows _____    | f river        |
| 6 drown _____       | g of the river |
| 7 a shallow _____   | h tide         |
| 8 the boat _____    | i went out ✓   |

# 3 Yes or No? Write Y or N.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| ▶ Do streams have a tide? <u>N</u>                     | 6 Can a pond dry up? _____                     |
| 1 Is the depth of a river the same as its width? _____ | 7 Can people swim up a waterfall? _____        |
| 2 Can you have a high tide and a low tide? _____       | 8 Can people sit on the bank of a river? _____ |
| 3 Do puddles form when it rains a lot? _____           | 9 Are canals deeper than seas? _____           |
| 4 Can people float in water? _____                     | 10 Does water flow in a pond? _____            |
| 5 Can people capsize? _____                            |  |

# 4 Circle the correct word.

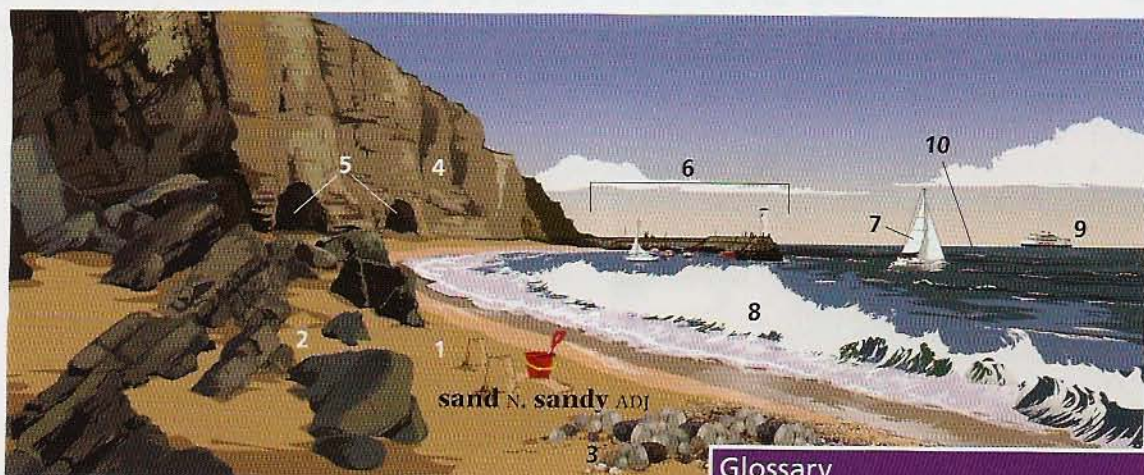
- ▶ The River Seine floats/flows through Paris.
- The leaves floated on the surface/underwater.
  - I went sailing on the pond/lake.
  - The ship capsized/drowned in the storm.
  - I swam across the whole depth/width of the river.
  - There's a little stream/tide at the end of our garden.
  - Sadly the dog drowned/sank when the ship capsized.
  - You can stand up in the river here; it's very narrow/shallow.
  - Our furniture got very wet during the floods/tides.

# 5 Complete the texts with a suitable word in the correct form.

We had some storms with very heavy rain last summer. The river which runs through the city (1) \_\_\_\_\_ its banks, and (2) \_\_\_\_\_ serious floods. The water was quite (3) \_\_\_\_\_ : it was two metres in some parts, and you could see people's possessions (4) \_\_\_\_\_ in the water.

We had a terrible day sailing on a (5) \_\_\_\_\_ in the mountains last weekend. The wind was very strong, and suddenly our little boat (6) \_\_\_\_\_ and we ended up in the water. We swam to safety, but watched the boat slowly (7) \_\_\_\_\_ to the bottom. Later we discovered it was very dangerous there, and last year someone (8) \_\_\_\_\_.

## B The coast



sand N. sandy ADJ

### Glossary

**coast** the area of land that is close to or next to the sea or an ocean.

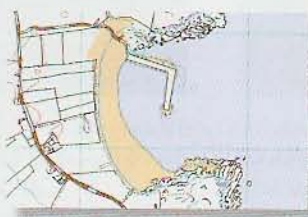
**shore** the land along the edge of the sea, a lake, etc.

**steep** A steep hill or cliff goes up quickly from a low place to a high one.

**protect sb/sth from sth** keep sb/sth safe from sth. **protection** N.

**rough** A rough sea has big waves. **OPP** calm.

Our local **beach**<sup>1</sup> is mainly **sandy**, with a few **rocks**<sup>2</sup> and **pebbles**<sup>3</sup> down by the **shore**. There's a **steep cliff**<sup>4</sup> rising above the beach, and children often play in the **caves**<sup>5</sup> there. At the end of the **bay** there's a small **harbour**<sup>6</sup>. When the weather's bad, the **sailing boats**<sup>7</sup> are **protected** from the **waves**<sup>8</sup> and the **rough** sea. We often see large **ships**<sup>9</sup> on the **horizon**<sup>10</sup>.



bay

### 6 Which words are being defined?

- a small stone you find on a beach pebble
- 1 the line between the land or the sea and the sky \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 a large piece of stone \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 *an area of sand or small stones beside the sea* \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 a high steep area of rock next to the sea \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 a large boat often used to carry passengers \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 the land at the edge of the sea where there is sand or rocks \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 a place where ships or boats are tied up and protected from the sea \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 a large hole in a cliff or under the ground \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 the area of land next to the sea \_\_\_\_\_
- 10 an area of the coast where the land goes in to form a curve \_\_\_\_\_

### 7 Complete the sentences.

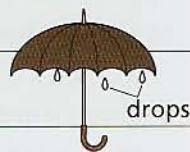
- It was a nice day, so we went to the beach.
- 1 When it's stormy, the sea gets very \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 A huge \_\_\_\_\_ hit the boat and we capsized.
- 3 The harbour \_\_\_\_\_ the little boats in bad weather.
- 4 At one end of the beach there are rocks and pebbles, but the other end is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 You can't climb the cliff; it's too \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 I could see a boat \_\_\_\_\_ the horizon.

### 8 Test yourself. Cover the text and look at the picture. What are the words?

# 13 I can describe the climate Do Units 11 and 12 first

## A The weather

Word/Phrase	Example	Meaning
<b>pour (with rain)</b>	It's <b>pouring</b> outside!	rain heavily.
<b>soaking wet</b> SYN <b>soaked</b>	It was pouring with rain and I got <b>soaking wet</b> .	extremely wet.
<b>drizzle</b> V, N	It was <b>drizzling</b> when I left the office.	rain lightly, with very small <b>drops</b> .
<b>rainbow</b>	Did you see the <b>rainbow</b> ?	
<b>bitterly cold</b>	It's <b>bitterly cold</b> today.	extremely cold.
<b>chilly</b>	It gets <b>chilly</b> in the evening.	a little too cold to be comfortable.
<b>mild</b>	It's been a very <b>mild</b> winter.	warmer than usual for the time of year.
<b>heatwave</b>	I hate this <b>heatwave</b> !	a period of unusually hot weather.
<b>muggy</b> SYN <b>humid</b>	It's really <b>muggy</b> today.	warm and damp in an unpleasant way.
<b>mist</b> N <b>misty</b> ADJ	You get a lot of <b>mist</b> in the mornings in autumn.	thin cloud near the ground which is difficult to see through (not as thick as fog).
<b>frost</b> N <b>frosty</b> ADJ	There was a <b>frost</b> last night; there's ice on the car.	the weather condition when the temperature is below 0°C and ice forms on windows, the ground, etc.
<b>breeze</b> N <b>breezy</b> ADJ	It's hot today, but there's a lovely <b>breeze</b> .	a light wind.
<b>gale</b>	There were <b>gales</b> last night.	a strong wind.



### 1 Tick (✓) the correct answer.

- |                                   |  |   |
|-----------------------------------|--|---|
| ► Which is colder?                | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> a chilly day | <input type="checkbox"/> a mild day               |
| 1 Which is stronger?              | <input type="checkbox"/> a gale                  | <input type="checkbox"/> a breeze                 |
| 2 Which is colder?                | <input type="checkbox"/> a breezy morning        | <input type="checkbox"/> a frosty morning         |
| 3 Which is warmer?                | <input type="checkbox"/> a muggy evening         | <input type="checkbox"/> a chilly evening         |
| 4 Which means more water?         | <input type="checkbox"/> It poured for an hour.  | <input type="checkbox"/> It drizzled for an hour. |
| 5 Which is harder to see through? | <input type="checkbox"/> fog                     | <input type="checkbox"/> mist                     |
| 6 Which means more water?         | <input type="checkbox"/> I got wet.              | <input type="checkbox"/> I got soaked.            |

### 2 Complete the words in the texts.

While we were out, it suddenly started to ► pour with rain. We didn't have an umbrella, so we got (1) s wet. When the rain stopped, the sun came out and we could see a (2) r. It wasn't cold; in fact, it was quite a (3) m day for November.

She woke up. It was (4) b cold, and she noticed the (5) f on the windows. By midday, though, the temperature had gone up. As she left the house, she felt a few (6) d of rain on her head, then it (7) d for the rest of the day.

Last summer was unusually hot; we had a (8) h which lasted for several weeks, and it was incredibly (9) m and unpleasant at night.

### 3 Test yourself. Cover the words/phrases and examples in the table and look at the meanings. What are the words?



## B Climate change

### OUR ENVIRONMENT

Global warming is the **gradual** increase in the average temperature of **the earth's<sup>1</sup> atmosphere**, and is caused by **harmful gases**. Many **environmentalists** believe that most of this **pollution** is the result of **human** activities. Here are some of the **effects**:

- As the ice at the **poles<sup>2</sup>** **melts**, sea levels could **rise** by almost a metre in the next century.
- There will be more **extreme** and **unpredictable** weather, e.g. heatwaves or floods.
- The earth will become even warmer because the **rainforests<sup>3</sup>** are **disappearing**.
- **Famine** and **disease** will **spread**, and this will especially **affect** people in poor countries.

#### spotlight **effect** N, **affect** V

An **effect** is a change which is caused by something.

What are the **effects** of global warming?

To **affect** something means to make it change in a particular way.

Climate change will **affect** all our lives (= will make our lives change).



### Glossary

<b>climate</b>	• the normal weather conditions of a particular region.	<b>human</b>	• connected with people.
<b>(the) environment</b>	• the natural world; the air, land, and water in which people, plants, and animals live (an <b>environmentalist</b> is sb who studies the environment).	<b>melt</b>	• If you heat ice, it <b>melts</b> : it changes from a <b>solid</b> to a <b>liquid</b> .
<b>gradual</b>	• happening slowly over a long period of time. <b>gradually</b> ADV.	<b>rise</b>	• increase; go higher. <b>rise</b> N. OPP <b>fall</b> V, N.
<b>the atmosphere</b>	• the gases around the earth, planets, etc.	<b>extreme</b>	• much hotter, colder, or more violent than usual.
<b>harmful</b>	• causing damage, injury, or illness. <b>harm sth/sb</b> V.	<b>unpredictable</b>	• If sth is <b>unpredictable</b> , you can't say how it will change in the future. OPP <b>predictable</b> . <b>predict</b> V.
<b>gas</b>	• a substance like air, e.g. oxygen and hydrogen.	<b>disappear</b>	• stop existing. SYN <b>vanish</b> .
<b>pollution</b>	• dirty and dangerous gases, chemicals, etc. that harm the environment. <b>pollute</b> V.	<b>famine</b>	• A <b>famine</b> is when there is not enough food in a country.
		<b>disease</b>	• illness in people, animals, or plants.
		<b>spread</b>	• affect more and more people or things.

**4 Complete the words.**

- |                               |                               |                        |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------|
| ▶ h _ u _ m _ a _ n           | 4 h _ _ r m f _ _ l           | 8 l _ _ q u _ _ d      |
| 1 p r _ _ d _ _ c t _ _ b l e | 5 a t m o _ _ _ _ e r e       | 9 d _ _ s _ _ s e      |
| 2 d i s _ _ _ _ e a r         | 6 e n v _ _ r o _ _ m _ _ n t | 10 c l _ _ m _ _ t _ _ |
| 3 f _ _ m _ _ n e             | 7 p _ _ l l _ _ t _ _ n       |                        |

**5 Good or bad? Write G or B.**

- ▶ This gas won't harm anyone. G
- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 Some kinds of animals are vanishing. _____ | 5 The weather is less extreme. _____               |
| 2 The flood water is falling. _____          | 6 The earth's temperature is rising. _____         |
| 3 Famine is spreading. _____                 | 7 The ice at the poles is gradually melting. _____ |
| 4 This liquid is harmful. _____              | 8 The river is polluted. _____                     |

**6 Circle the correct word.**

- ▶ Ice is a solid/liquid.
- How does the situation effect/affect you?
  - It's all very predictable/unpredictable: you never know what's going to happen.
  - My brother studies the environment/an environmentalist.
  - Global warming is caused by people/human activity.
  - Eat your ice cream quickly – it's spreading/melting.
  - Water is a liquid/gas.
  - The rainforest is gradually disappearing/melting.
  - There are harmful gases in the atmosphere/effect.

**7 Complete the sentences.**

- ▶ The earth is gradually getting warmer.
- We had a lot of e \_\_\_\_\_ weather last year: a long heatwave and gales in the autumn. I think it's all part of c \_\_\_\_\_ change.
  - If you freeze water, it changes from a l \_\_\_\_\_ to a s \_\_\_\_\_.
  - The beach was p \_\_\_\_\_ with oil, which seriously a \_\_\_\_\_ the sea birds and animals.
  - Environmentalists p \_\_\_\_\_ that there will be a r \_\_\_\_\_ in sea levels in the future.
  - With g \_\_\_\_\_ warming, some kinds of plants and animals are d \_\_\_\_\_ very fast.
  - Certain diseases s \_\_\_\_\_ from person to person very quickly.
  - P \_\_\_\_\_ has a very h \_\_\_\_\_ effect on the environment.
  - After many months without rain, there is a real danger of f \_\_\_\_\_ in this part of Africa.

**8 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.**

- How worried are you about global warming?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Do you have rainforests in your country? If so, what is happening to them?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Has the climate changed in recent years in your country? If so, how?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Which human activities do you think are harming the environment most?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- What kind of pollution is common in your country?  
\_\_\_\_\_

**9 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?**

## 14 I can describe natural disasters

### A Types of disaster



**Hurricane<sup>1</sup>:** this word is used especially of storms in the western Atlantic. It is a **violent** storm with very strong winds. In other parts of the world, especially Asia, it is called a **typhoon**.

**Earthquake<sup>2</sup>:** a **sudden** violent movement of the **ground** causing **damage**.

**Tidal wave<sup>3</sup>:** a very large ocean wave that is caused by a storm or

earthquake, and which **destroys** things when it reaches land.

**Volcanic eruption<sup>4</sup>:** a **volcano** is a mountain with a hole in the top, and when it **erupts**, hot gases and **lava** are forced out into the air and onto the **surrounding** land.

**Drought<sup>5</sup>:** a long period with no rain. **Crops** die, and people may **starve to death**.

#### Glossary

**disaster** a very bad event, causing harm or death.

**violent** very strong and usually causing damage. **violence** N.

**sudden** happening very quickly. **suddenly** ADV.

**ground** the top part of the earth's surface that people walk on.

**damage** harm or injury caused when sth is broken. **damage** V.

**destroy sth** break sth completely so it can't be used again. **destruction** N.

**erupt** explode and throw out fire, burning rocks, etc.

**lava** hot liquid rock (*see picture*).

**surrounding** that is near or around sth. **surroundings** N.

**crops** plants that are grown for food, e.g. rice and potatoes.

**starve (to death)** suffer (or die) because you don't have enough food.

#### 1 Combine five more pairs of words from the box to form compound words or phrases.

earth ✓ volcanic tidal surrounding starve land  
eruption violent wave quake ✓ to death storm

► earthquake

#### 2 What nouns are formed from these adjectives and verbs?

► volcanic volcano 2 violent 4 surrounding  
1 destroy 3 erupt 5 damage

#### 3 Complete the words in the sentences.

- When the tidal wave reached land, it was over ten metres high.
- During the h\_\_\_\_\_, winds reached over 150 kph, and many homes were either completely d\_\_\_\_\_ or badly d\_\_\_\_\_. It was a terrible d\_\_\_\_\_ for the island.
  - They expect a period of d\_\_\_\_\_: the c\_\_\_\_\_ will die and people could s\_\_\_\_\_.
  - The volcano e\_\_\_\_\_ without warning and the g\_\_\_\_\_ was covered in red, hot l\_\_\_\_\_.
  - There was a s\_\_\_\_\_ and v\_\_\_\_\_ storm. It was the beginning of the t\_\_\_\_\_.

#### 4 Test yourself. Cover the texts and look at the pictures. Can you name each disaster and what happens?

## B Effects

# EARTHQUAKE HITS KASHMIR

**L**ate last night a sudden earthquake **struck** the region of Kashmir on the borders of India and Pakistan, and hundreds of people are thought to have lost their lives as buildings **collapsed** while they slept.

Thousands have now been **evacuated**, but there are **fears** that many are still **trapped** inside their homes, so the **death toll** could rise. The damage has already been

**considerable** and the next 48 hours will be **crucial**, not only to **rescue** more people but also to try to **maintain supplies** of water and electricity.

### Glossary

<b>hit sth/sb</b>	• make sudden violent contact with sth/sb. <b>SYN strike sth/sb.</b>
<b>collapse</b>	• If a building <b>collapses</b> , it falls to the ground. <b>collapse N.</b>
<b>evacuate sb</b>	• move sb away from a dangerous place. <b>evacuation N.</b>
<b>fear</b>	• a feeling that sth bad might happen. <b>fear v.</b>
<b>trap sb</b>	• If sb is <b>trapped</b> , they are inside sth and cannot get out.
<b>death toll</b>	• the number of people killed in a disaster, accident, etc.
<b>considerable</b>	• very large in size or amount.
<b>crucial</b>	• very important.
<b>rescue sb</b>	• take sb from a dangerous place to safety. <b>SYN save sb.</b>
<b>maintain sth</b>	• make sth continue at a certain level.
<b>supply (Pl. supplies)</b>	• an amount of sth that you need.

## 5 Complete the text with words from the box in the correct form.

supply trap earthquake ✓ maintain strike/hit fear collapse evacuate rescue

When an ► earthquake (1) \_\_\_\_\_ a city, there is always a danger that buildings will (2) \_\_\_\_\_ and people will be (3) \_\_\_\_\_ inside. As soon as the immediate danger has passed, the first job is to (4) \_\_\_\_\_ people from the area, and (5) \_\_\_\_\_ those in danger. At the same time, the government will send in (6) \_\_\_\_\_ of food, water, and blankets to the disaster area. One of the hardest things of all is to (7) \_\_\_\_\_ a supply of clean drinking water, and there is always the (8) \_\_\_\_\_ that more people could die.

## 6 Replace the underlined words with a different word that has the same meaning.

- Many people are afraid that there will be more earthquakes. fear \_\_\_\_\_
- Many buildings fell to the ground. \_\_\_\_\_
  - It could be a very important decision. \_\_\_\_\_
  - The villagers have all been moved from the village. \_\_\_\_\_
  - There are people who are inside their homes and cannot get out. \_\_\_\_\_
  - Scientists believe the hurricane will reach and attack Florida within 24 hours. \_\_\_\_\_
  - The number of people killed could be as high as 2,000. \_\_\_\_\_
  - The storm has done a great deal of damage. \_\_\_\_\_
  - He was injured while trying to take his son to safety from the fire. \_\_\_\_\_

## 7 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

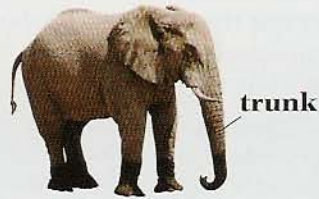


# 15 I can describe animals and insects

## A Creatures great and small: wild animals and insects



lion



elephant



gorilla



shark



tiger



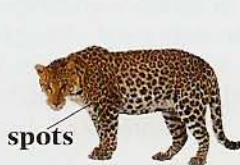
camel



bear



whale



leopard



monkey



snake



eagle



spider



fly



bee



mosquito

### Glossary

**creature** a living thing such as an animal, bird, fish, or insect.

**wild** living in natural conditions; not looked after by people.

**insect** a small animal with six legs, one or two pairs of wings, and a body in three parts.

### 1 One letter is missing. Write the words correctly.

► tier tiger

1 lepard \_\_\_\_\_

2 elepant \_\_\_\_\_

3 eale \_\_\_\_\_

4 grilla \_\_\_\_\_

5 wale \_\_\_\_\_

6 sider \_\_\_\_\_

7 nake \_\_\_\_\_

8 sark \_\_\_\_\_

9 money \_\_\_\_\_

### 2 Which creature:

► has wings? fly \_\_\_\_\_, e \_\_\_\_\_,  
b \_\_\_\_\_, m \_\_\_\_\_

1 has a tail? l \_\_\_\_\_, e \_\_\_\_\_, l \_\_\_\_\_,  
t \_\_\_\_\_, c \_\_\_\_\_, m \_\_\_\_\_

2 is an insect? f \_\_\_\_\_, b \_\_\_\_\_, m \_\_\_\_\_

3 has thick fur? g \_\_\_\_\_, b \_\_\_\_\_

4 has a trunk? e \_\_\_\_\_

5 has stripes? t \_\_\_\_\_

6 has spots? l \_\_\_\_\_

7 has a beak and feathers? e \_\_\_\_\_

### 3 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Name the creatures.



## B Unusual facts about animals



### Snakes

There are about 2,600 different kinds of snake.

About 400 are **poisonous**, but more are **harmless**. In size, they

**vary** enormously: the smallest are 12 centimetres long, the biggest are **up to** 10 metres and **weigh** 250 kilos. Snakes don't need energy from food (the sun heats their bodies), so they can **survive** for months without eating.



### Sharks

The **average lifespan** of a shark is about 25 years but some can live to be 100. They are unusual in that they have no **bones** in their body, and large sharks may have up to 4,000 teeth. They are very dangerous when they **hunt**, but only a few **attack** humans: more people die from bee **stings** than from shark attacks.

### Glossary

**poisonous** producing a dangerous substance (**poison**) that can kill or harm you.

**harmless** not causing damage, injury, or illness. **OPP harmful. harm** N, V.

**vary** (of a group) be different from each other.

**up to** used when saying the most an amount can be.

**weigh** have a certain **weight** N, which is how heavy sth is.

**survive** continue to live in a difficult situation. **survival** N.

**average** normal or typical.

**lifespan** the time that sth is likely to live (for people, we say **life expectancy**).

**bone**



**hunt** sth go after sth to catch and kill it.

**attack** sb/sth try to hurt sb/sth by using physical force. **attack** N.

**sting** a sudden pain caused by poison sent into the skin. **sting** V.

#### 4 True or false? Write T or F.

- The average lifespan of a snake is 25 years. F
- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 Most snakes are poisonous. _____              | 4 Snakes can be as heavy as 250 kilos. _____ |
| 2 Most sharks are harmless to humans. _____     | 5 Sharks have bones in their body. _____     |
| 3 Some snakes are longer than ten metres. _____ | 6 Sharks sting when they attack. _____       |

#### 5 Answer the questions.

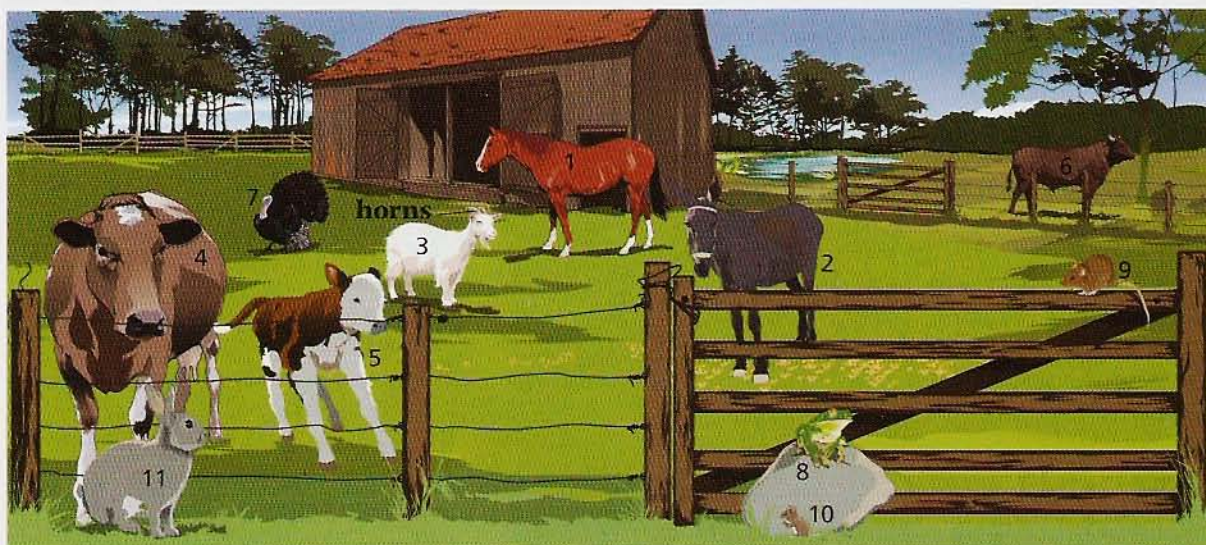
- Is **attack** a noun or a verb, or can it be both? both
- What is the noun from the verb **survive**? \_\_\_\_\_
  - If animals have a **lifespan**, what do people have? Life \_\_\_\_\_
  - What is the noun from the verb **weigh**? \_\_\_\_\_
  - What is the adjective from **poison**? \_\_\_\_\_
  - What are the two adjectives from the noun **harm**? \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_

#### 6 Complete the words in these animal facts.

- The average **lifespan** \_\_\_\_\_ of most bees is 30 to 35 days.
- Some snakes can s \_\_\_\_\_ for almost a year without food.
  - Nobody knows the a \_\_\_\_\_ lifespan of a snake, but in zoos they can reach 30.
  - People h \_\_\_\_\_ sharks for their meat and skin, but also for sport.
  - Over 100 people a year die from a bee or wasp s \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Snakes can grow u \_\_\_\_\_ to ten metres long.
  - The size of sharks can v \_\_\_\_\_ from the size of your hand to the size of a bus.



## C Farm and small animals



- 1 horse      3 goat      5 calf      7 turkey      9 rat      11 rabbit  
2 donkey      4 cow      6 bull      8 frog      10 mouse (PL mice)

### 7 Complete the sentences.

- A goat often has two horns on its head.  
1 A young cow is a .....  
2 The plural of mouse is .....  
3 Cows, sheep, and ..... produce milk that people drink.  
4 A ..... is like a small horse with long ears.  
5 A ..... is like a mouse, but is larger.  
6 A ..... lives in or near water, and can jump.  
7 A bull is the adult ..... of the cow family.  
8 A ..... is a group of cows.  
9 A ..... is a large bird, similar to a chicken, that can be eaten.  
10 The general word for bulls and cows on a farm is .....

#### spotlight cows and cattle

A **cow** is the **female** animal that is kept on farms to produce milk. The **male** is a **bull**. Cows and bulls kept as farm animals can be called **cattle**. A group of cows is called a **herd**.

### 8 Complete these animals' names.

- r a t      3 b ..... l      6 m ..... e  
1 h ..... e      4 c ..... f      7 d ..... y  
2 g ..... t      5 f ..... g      8 t ..... y

### 9 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Answer the questions or ask another student.

- 1 Which of the animals on this page do people eat? .....  
2 Do people keep these animals in your country? If so, why?  
horses? .....  
goats? .....  
bulls? .....  
donkeys? .....  
mice? .....

### 10 Test yourself. Look at the picture and cover the words. Say the words.

# Review: The world around us

## Unit 11

### 1 Complete the questions and answers.

#### Space Quiz

- Q How long would a ► rocket take to (1) r \_\_\_\_\_ Mars?  
 A It would take (2) a \_\_\_\_\_ 260 days.  
 Q Is the (3) e \_\_\_\_\_ the only (4) p \_\_\_\_\_ in the solar (5) s \_\_\_\_\_ where life (6) e \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 A Yes, most (7) s \_\_\_\_\_ believe that to be true.  
 Q Who (8) d \_\_\_\_\_ the planet Venus?  
 A Most people think it was the ancient Greeks.  
 Q Who (9) i \_\_\_\_\_ the first American rocket to go into (10) s \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 A Robert Goddard, in the early twentieth century.  
 Q What are 'Phobos' and 'Deimos'?  
 A They are two small moons or (11) s \_\_\_\_\_ which (12) c \_\_\_\_\_ the planet Mars.  
 Q How many stars are there in the (13) u \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 A Nobody knows for sure, but some say (14) r \_\_\_\_\_ ten thousand billion billion!

### 2 Complete the definitions.

- sun = the star that shines during the day \_\_\_\_\_  
 1 explore = \_\_\_\_\_ round a place in order to learn about it  
 2 far-fetched = \_\_\_\_\_ easy to believe  
 3 revolve around something = go round something in a \_\_\_\_\_  
 4 experiment = a scientific \_\_\_\_\_ in order to learn or find out about something  
 5 scientist = a person who \_\_\_\_\_ or teaches science  
 6 confirm = say or show that something is \_\_\_\_\_ or definite  
 7 in other words: used for saying something in a \_\_\_\_\_ way  
 8 invent = create something that didn't \_\_\_\_\_ before

## Unit 12

### 1 Circle the odd one out.

- boat (harbour) ship  
 1 rock wave pebble      3 float sink drown      5 pond flood lake  
 2 stream river puddle      4 bank ocean shore      6 steep shallow deep

### 2 Complete the sentences.

- This river flows \_\_\_\_\_ out to the sea.  
 1 The river is wide in some places but very \_\_\_\_\_ in others.  
 2 Look! There's something floating on the \_\_\_\_\_ of the water.  
 3 They're building a harbour to provide \_\_\_\_\_ for the boats in bad weather.  
 4 The boat \_\_\_\_\_ in bad weather and one person nearly drowned.  
 5 Looking out to sea, there were a couple of large ships on the \_\_\_\_\_.  
 6 It wasn't very nice on the boat because the sea was so \_\_\_\_\_.  
 7 The canal is ten metres wide and the water is about two metres \_\_\_\_\_.  
 8 We had to climb a \_\_\_\_\_ cliff, which was very difficult.



3 One letter is wrong in each line. Cross out the word that is wrong and write the correct word at the end.

- When does the ~~time~~ come in this morning? tide
- 1 There are large socks on the beach. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 They travelled by chip. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 There's a sleep cliff by the shore. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 We have a number of fish in our pony. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 5 We saw some fishing boots. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 6 Look out! There's a big cave coming. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 7 It rained heavily and we had a floor. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 8 Why did the boat pink? \_\_\_\_\_
  - 9 The river blows down to the sea here. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 10 It's a very sandy peach. \_\_\_\_\_

## Unit 13

1 Complete the sentences.

- Cars and factories are causing a lot of pollution.
- 1 It's \_\_\_\_\_ with rain outside. The children will get very wet.
  - 2 What are the main \_\_\_\_\_ of global warming?
  - 3 It's usually cold in January, but this winter it has been very \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 4 Unfortunately, it's very hard to \_\_\_\_\_ the future: anything could happen.
  - 5 It was very hot, but fortunately there was a lovely \_\_\_\_\_ coming off the sea.
  - 6 Global warming is causing more \_\_\_\_\_ weather conditions, which will \_\_\_\_\_ people in different parts of the world in different ways.

2 Replace the underlined words with a single word that has the same meaning.

- Pollution is damaging the air, land, and water in which we live. environment
- 1 Global warming will cause damage to the environment. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 If you heat ice, it changes from a solid to a liquid. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 With global warming, sea levels will get higher. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 Famine could affect more people in a larger area. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 5 These changes may happen slowly over a period of time. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 6 Some rainforests will no longer exist. \_\_\_\_\_

## Unit 14

1 Match two sentences below with each of the natural disasters in the box.

hurricane    earthquake ✓    tidal wave    volcanic eruption    drought

- Many buildings collapsed. earthquake
- 1 Hot gases came out of the top of the mountain. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 Winds reached 150 kph. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 There was a huge volume of water. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 We've had months without rain. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 5 There was a sudden violent movement of the ground. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 6 When it reached land, it destroyed everything along the beach. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 7 Lava covered the surrounding villages. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 8 People are starving to death. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 9 Many trees were destroyed in the storm. \_\_\_\_\_



## 2 Match 1–7 with a–h.

- There has been considerable f
- 1 The death \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 The school and several houses \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 They rescued \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 They need to maintain \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 People are trapped \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 The earthquake struck \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 People fear that \_\_\_\_\_

- a in the early morning.
- b more people.
- c inside buildings.
- d toll could rise.
- e more will die.
- f damage. ✓
- g collapsed.
- h supplies.

## Unit 15

## 1 Complete the table with words from the box.

tiger✓ calf lion fly whale bee donkey gorilla shark leopard goat mosquito

Wild animals	Farm animals	Insects	Sea creatures
► tiger			
			XXXXXXXXXXXX
	XXXXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXXXX

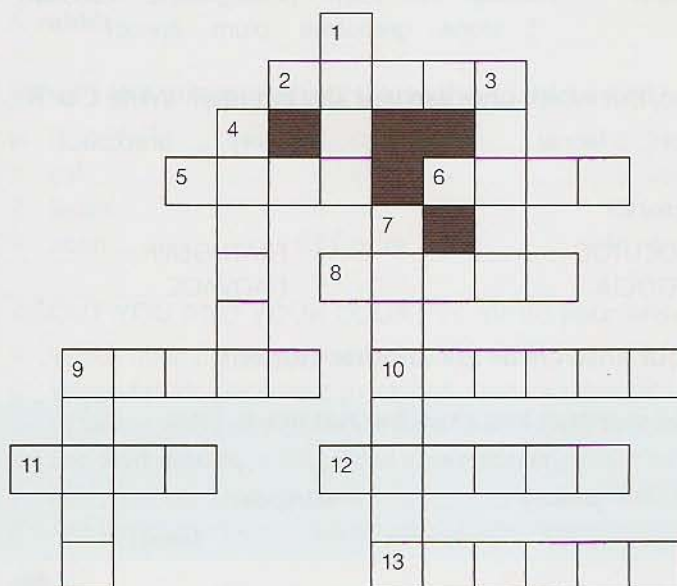
## 2 What is the connection between each creature on the left and a word on the right?

tigers✓ snakes leopards elephants  
eagles bears bees goats

beak stripes✓ trunk spots  
sting horns fur poisonous

- Tigers have stripes.

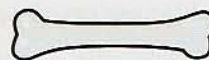
## 3 Complete the crossword.



## ACROSS

2 birds have these

5



6 differ from each other

8 large animal, lives in the desert

9 bees can do this

10 a very intelligent animal

11 a young cow

12 how heavy something is

13 small creature with eight legs

## DOWN

1 plural of *mouse*

3 long thin creature, moves along the ground





















4 you can die if you eat or drink this

7 not causing injury or danger






9 large sea creature, can be dangerous

# 16 I can describe a range of food

## A Fruit, vegetables, and herbs

1 <b>plums</b>	1 	2 	1 <b>spinach</b>	1 	2 
2 <b>apricots</b>			2 <b>leek</b>		
3 <b>raspberries</b>	3 	4 	3 <b>celery</b>	3 	4 
4 <b>grapefruits</b>			4 <b>broccoli</b>		
5 <b>avocado</b>	5 <b>stone</b>	6 	5 <b>chickpeas</b>	5 	6 
6 <b>figs</b>			6 <b>fennel</b>		
7 <b>coconut</b>	7 	8 	7 <b>artichoke</b>	7 	8 
8 <b>passion fruits</b>			8 <b>asparagus</b>		
9 <b>papaya</b>	9 	10 	9 <b>sweetcorn</b>	9 	10 
10 <b>pomegranates</b>			10 <b>beetroot</b>		

<b>herbs:</b>	3 <b>basil</b>	1 	2 	3 	4 	5 
1 <b>parsley</b>	4 <b>thyme</b>					
2 <b>mint</b>	5 <b>rosemary</b>					

### 1 Circle the odd one out in each group.

- fig coconut parsley raspberry  
 1 leek papaya artichoke asparagus  
 2 spinach basil mint rosemary  
 3 celery asparagus beetroot thyme  
 4 fig sweetcorn pomegranate coconut  
 5 stone grapefruit plum apricot

### 2 These vegetables are usually cooked, but which ones can you also eat raw? Write C or R.

- spinach R artichoke \_\_\_\_\_ beetroot \_\_\_\_\_ fennel \_\_\_\_\_ chickpeas \_\_\_\_\_ celery \_\_\_\_\_ broccoli \_\_\_\_\_

### 3 Find five more fruits from the letters.

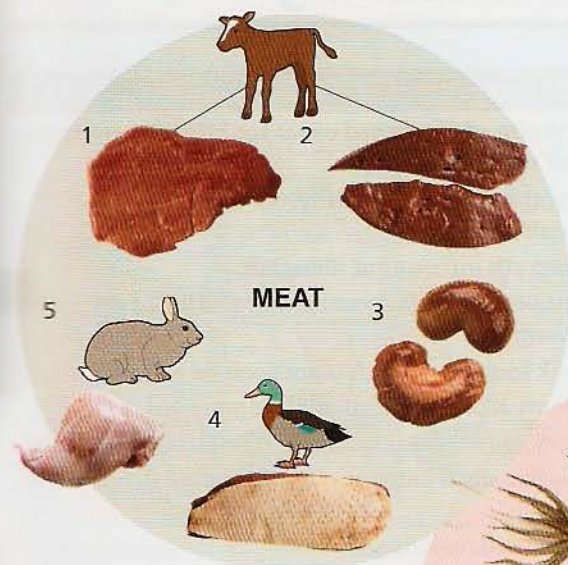
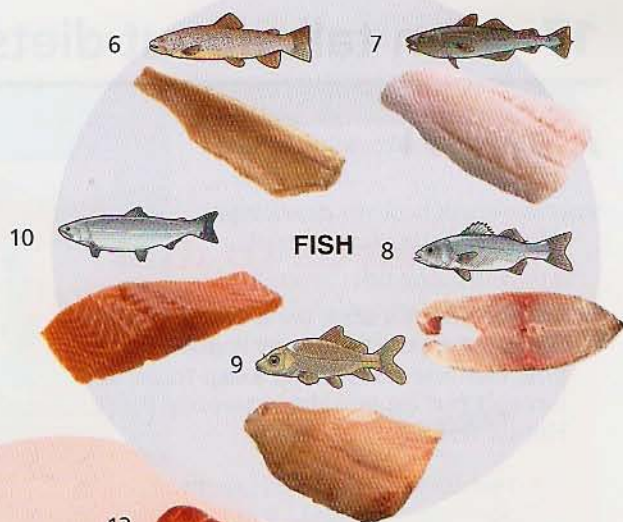
- BARSERPY raspberry 2 NOCUTOC \_\_\_\_\_ 4 FRATUGERIP \_\_\_\_\_  
 1 MULP \_\_\_\_\_ 3 PRTOCIA \_\_\_\_\_ 5 DAOVAOC \_\_\_\_\_

### 4 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.

**Do people eat these things in your country? Yes. / Yes, but not much. / No.**

papaya \_\_\_\_\_ coconut \_\_\_\_\_ raspberries \_\_\_\_\_ passion fruit \_\_\_\_\_  
 plums \_\_\_\_\_ basil \_\_\_\_\_ parsley \_\_\_\_\_ chickpeas \_\_\_\_\_  
 asparagus \_\_\_\_\_ artichoke \_\_\_\_\_ sweetcorn \_\_\_\_\_ fennel \_\_\_\_\_

### 5 Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.

**B Meat, fish, and seafood****MEAT****FISH****SEAFOOD****shell**

- 1 **veal** (meat from a **calf**, which is a young cow)  
 2 **calf's liver**  
 3 **kidney**  
 4 **duck**  
 5 **rabbit**

- 6 **trout**  
 7 **cod**  
 8 **sea bass**  
 9 **carp**  
 10 **salmon**

- 11 **oyster**  
 12 **squid**  
 13 **lobster**  
 14 **crab**  
 15 **clams**  
 16 **mussels**

**6** What's the missing letter? Write the correct word.

- dck duck      4 squd \_\_\_\_\_      8 live \_\_\_\_\_      12 samon \_\_\_\_\_  
 1 caf \_\_\_\_\_      5 kiney \_\_\_\_\_      9 val \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 loster \_\_\_\_\_      6 trot \_\_\_\_\_      10 sea bas \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 abbit \_\_\_\_\_      7 oster \_\_\_\_\_      11 musels \_\_\_\_\_

**7** ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Which meat do people eat most: veal, rabbit, or duck? \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 Which fish do people eat most: cod, carp, or salmon? \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 Which seafood do people eat most: crab, clams, or mussels? \_\_\_\_\_  
 4 Are there any kinds of seafood above that you never eat? Why? \_\_\_\_\_  
 5 Are there any kinds of meat above that you never eat? Why? \_\_\_\_\_  
 6 Are there any kinds of fish above that you never eat? Why? \_\_\_\_\_

**8** Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Can you name the different types of meat, fish, and seafood?



# 17 I can talk about diets and cooking

## A Diets

### Who needs to diet?

I never **go on a diet**: it's a **waste of time**. Diets list all the food that is **good for you**, but few people can **keep them up**. I haven't **put on weight** in twenty years. Here's why:

- I eat almost anything I like, but I don't eat a lot. And I don't eat **junk food**.
- I drink **plenty of** water. It's better for you than **fizzy drinks**, and cheaper too.
- I avoid **snacks** between meals because most of them are **fattening**.
- I've **cut down on** the amount of food I eat in the evening.
- I get plenty of **exercise**.

### Glossary

**a waste of time** a bad use of your time (also **a waste of money**).

**good for you** SYN **healthy**. OPP **bad for you** / **unhealthy**.

**keep sth up** continue doing sth.

**put on weight** become heavier and fatter. OPP **lose weight**.

**junk food** food which is not good for you (e.g. crisps).

**plenty of sth** as much of sth as you need.

**fizzy drink** a drink containing small bubbles of gas.

**snack** a small amount of food usually eaten between meals.

**fattening** making you fatter.

**cut down on sth** have less of sth.

**exercise** physical activity that keeps you healthy.

### spotlight **diet**

A person's **diet** is the food they eat. It can be a **balanced diet** (all the right food the body needs), or a **bad diet** (too much of the wrong food). Some people **diet** / **go on a diet**, which means eating less to lose weight.

### 1 Good for you or bad for you? Write G or B.

► healthy food G

1 junk food \_\_\_\_\_

2 fizzy drinks \_\_\_\_\_

3 plenty of water \_\_\_\_\_

4 fattening food \_\_\_\_\_

5 snacks between meals \_\_\_\_\_

6 a balanced diet \_\_\_\_\_

7 plenty of exercise \_\_\_\_\_

### 2 Complete the sentences.

► Eat it – it's good for you.

1 They're both going \_\_\_\_\_ a diet.

2 She's cut down \_\_\_\_\_ chocolate.

3 I tried to diet but couldn't keep it \_\_\_\_\_.

4 That diet was a waste \_\_\_\_\_ time.

5 He's put \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of weight.

6 We've got plenty \_\_\_\_\_ orange juice.

### 3 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

► You shouldn't eat much cream and cheese: they're fattening.

1 You should drink \_\_\_\_\_ of water: about 6 to 8 glasses a day.

2 You should get plenty of \_\_\_\_\_. One good way is going to the gym.

3 It's difficult to \_\_\_\_\_ down on the amount of salt you eat.

4 Doing lots of exercise is better than going on a \_\_\_\_\_.

5 I think diets are a \_\_\_\_\_ of time and money.

6 The problem with diets is that most people can't \_\_\_\_\_ them up.

### ABOUT YOU

### 4 ABOUT YOU Do you agree with the sentences in Exercise 3? Write Yes or No.

## B Cooking

### Recipe for Cottage Pie



#### Ingredients

300 g **minced**<sup>1</sup> beef  
300 g potatoes  
1 large onion  
1 carrot  
2–3 chopped tomatoes  
300 ml beef **stock**  
1 tablespoon of **flour**<sup>2</sup>  
butter, salt, and pepper

**Peel**<sup>3</sup> the potatoes and **boil** until just cooked. Then **mash**<sup>4</sup> them with butter. **Chop**<sup>5</sup> the onion and carrot. **Fry**<sup>6</sup> the meat and vegetables quickly, then **stir**<sup>7</sup> in the flour and cook for one minute. **Add** the stock, tomatoes, salt and pepper, and let it all cook slowly for 20 minutes. Then put it in a large **dish**, cover with the mashed potato and some butter, and **bake** in a hot **oven**<sup>8</sup> for 30 minutes.

### Glossary

**recipe** a set of instructions for cooking sth.

**ingredients** the food items you need to have to make sth to eat.

**stock** water with added flavour of meat, fish, or vegetables.

**boil sth** cook sth in water, usually in a **saucepan**.



**fry sth** cook sth in oil, usually in a **frying pan**.



**add sth** put sth together with sth else.

**dish** a container for serving food at the table (it is larger than a plate).

**bake sth** cook sth in the oven without oil or fat (with oil or fat = **roast**).

### 5 Which word is being defined?

- Use a special machine to cut meat into very small pieces mince
- 1 Remove the skin \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Cut into many pieces \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Put something with another thing \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Press and mix until soft and smooth \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Cook in water \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Cook in oil \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 Cook in the oven without oil or fat \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 Cook in the oven with oil or fat \_\_\_\_\_

### 6 Complete the words in each sentence.

- Boil the carrots in that saucepan.
- 1 I've got a good r\_\_\_\_\_ for spaghetti Bolognese, so we just need to buy the i\_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 A\_\_\_\_\_ the meat to the vegetables and fry it for about 10 minutes.
- 3 The frying p\_\_\_\_\_ is fine, but I need a larger d\_\_\_\_\_ to serve the meat on.
- 4 You have to b\_\_\_\_\_ the cake in the o\_\_\_\_\_ for about 40 minutes.
- 5 If you add some f\_\_\_\_\_, it will make the sauce thicker.
- 6 Add the s\_\_\_\_\_, then s\_\_\_\_\_ the rice continuously while it cooks.

### 7 Test yourself. Cover the text and say what you can see in the pictures. Then look at the food but cover the cooking instructions. How do you make Cottage Pie?

# 18 I can talk about money

## A Buying things



### 1 Complete the sentences.

- If something costs €10 less than usual, it has €10 off.
- 1 If you don't have enough money to buy something, then you **can't** afford it.
- 2 If you ask to pay less than the normal price, you are asking for a discount.
- 3 If the normal price is €60 and the shop sells it for €50, then it has been reduced by €10.
- 4 The time when shops sell goods more cheaply than normal is called the sales.
- 5 If you buy something which is a good price for the product, you can say it's a bargain.
- 6 If you pay with €50 for something that costs €30, you should get €20 change.
- 7 When you have paid, the shop assistant should give you a receipt.
- 8 If you want your money back on a product, you can ask for a refund.

### Glossary

- afford sth** If you **can afford sth** you have enough money to pay for it.
- scratch** a mark on the surface of sth made by a sharp object (*see picture*).
- discount** a cut in the usual price of something. **SYN reduction.**
- off** If sth has €20 **off**, it costs €20 less than usual.
- receipt** a piece of paper that shows that sth has been paid for.
- refund** an amount of money paid back to you when you return sth to a shop.
- the sales** a time when shops sell things at a lower price.
- reduce sth** make sth less in size, quantity, or price. **reduction** *n.*
- bargain** sth that is a good price or is cheaper than usual.
- change** If sth costs €2 and you give the assistant €5, you get €3 **change**.

### 2 Complete the questions in the questionnaire.

- Do you keep the receipt when you've bought something?
- 1 When you go shopping, do you always look for a bargain?
- 2 If you saw a product in a shop that had a scratch on it, would you ask the shop assistant to take money back?
- 3 Do you always check your change when you pay?
- 4 Do you often wait and buy things in the sales? If so, what things?
- 5 Do you often take things back and ask for a refund?

### ABOUT YOU

I often lose it.

\_\_\_\_\_.

\_\_\_\_\_.

\_\_\_\_\_.

\_\_\_\_\_.

\_\_\_\_\_.

### 3 ABOUT YOU Answer the questions in Exercise 2, or ask another student.



## B I'm not very good with money

### LOTTERY WINNER LOSES EVERYTHING!

Maria Costas was an ordinary working mum without much **income** until she won over €3m on the lottery and became a very **wealthy** woman. She immediately bought a house **worth** €1m, a car that **cost a fortune**, and jewellery **valued** at €250,000. Unfortunately, the house was a **waste of money**. She **owned** it for six months, never lived there, then had to sell it for much less than she paid for it. Maria also wasted **huge amounts** of money on designer clothes and foreign holidays, and within eighteen months she was completely **broke**. Now she **owes** the bank over €5,000, and has credit card **debts** as well.

#### Glossary

<b>income</b>	• the money you earn from work, plus any other money you receive.
<b>wealthy</b>	• rich. SYN <b>well off</b> .
<b>worth</b>	• If a flat is <b>worth</b> €3m, you could sell it for €3m (that is the <b>value</b> ).
<b>cost a fortune</b>	• be very expensive.
<b>value sth at sth</b>	• decide what sth is worth, or what you could sell it for.
<b>waste of money</b>	• a bad use of money.
<b>own sth</b>	• If you <b>own sth</b> , it is yours; it <b>belongs to</b> you.
<b>huge</b>	• very large. SYN <b>massive</b> .
<b>amount</b>	• a quantity of sth; a sum of money.
<b>broke</b>	• INF having no money.
<b>owe sb sth</b>	• have to pay money to sb for sth they have done or given.
<b>debt</b>	• an amount of money that you owe sb.

#### 4 Cover the text. Answer the questions.

► How did Maria become wealthy?

She won the lottery.

1 How much was her new house worth?

2 What was her jewellery valued at?

3 How long did she own her new house?

4 Why was the house a waste of money?

5 How much does she owe the bank?

6 Does she have any other debts?

#### 5 Rewrite the sentences using the words in capitals.

► My boss has a lot of money. **WEALTHY** My boss is very wealthy.

1 It's a very large house. **HUGE**

2 The house is worth £2,000,000. **VALUE**

3 Rani hasn't got any money. **BROKE**

4 The flat doesn't belong to me. **OWN**

5 Her shoes were very expensive. **FORTUNE**

6 Gisela has debts of €5,000. **OWE**

#### 6 Complete the sentences.

► The watch went wrong after two months; it was a waste of money.

1 My uncle won a huge \_\_\_\_\_ of money, so he's very \_\_\_\_\_ off now.

2 I haven't got any money; I'm completely \_\_\_\_\_.

3 It's a nice flat, but it isn't \_\_\_\_\_ half a million euros.

4 It's an absolutely \_\_\_\_\_ school: there are about 2,500 students.

5 He's got a day job and an evening job, so he has a good \_\_\_\_\_.

#### 7 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?



# 19 I can talk about sleep

## A Before, during, and after sleep

**BEFORE:** You feel **sleepy**, start **yawning**<sup>1</sup>, and decide to go to bed. You might put on **pyjamas**<sup>2</sup> or a **nightie**<sup>3</sup>, perhaps **set the alarm**<sup>4</sup>, and then get into bed. Soon, if you're lucky, you **fall asleep**.

**DURING:** When you're **asleep**, you have **dreams**<sup>5</sup> and possibly **nightmares**. Some people **snore**<sup>6</sup>; at this point they're **fast asleep**.

**AFTER:** 7.30 a.m. The alarm **goes off**. It might **wake you up**, or you might be **wide awake** already. People without an alarm might **oversleep**, others might decide to **have a lie-in**.

### Glossary

**sleepy** tired and ready to go to sleep.

**fall asleep** start sleeping. **SYN** go to sleep.

**asleep** sleeping.

**nightmare** a bad dream.

**fast asleep** sleeping deeply. **SYN** in a deep sleep.

**OPP** wide awake.

**go off** ring or make a noise.

**wake sb up** make sb stop sleeping.

**oversleep** sleep longer than you should or want.

**have a lie-in** **INF** stay in bed later than usual.



### 1 Replace the underlined word or phrase with words or phrases with the same meaning.

I felt tired, so I went to bed quite early last night. I went to sleep without a problem and very soon I was in a deep sleep. Unfortunately, in the middle of the night, I had a bad dream which woke me up. After that, I was awake for ages and didn't fall asleep again until about half past four, so when the alarm rang just after seven, I didn't hear it and I carried on sleeping. When I finally woke up, I felt terrible.

► sleepy

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_

### 2 Complete the sentences.

- 1 Barry's still in bed and he's fast ► asleep. Do you want me to \_\_\_\_\_ him up?
- 2 I felt really \_\_\_\_\_, so I went to bed.
- 3 I forgot to \_\_\_\_\_ my alarm last night, and I'm afraid I \_\_\_\_\_ this morning.
- 4 I don't have to get up early tomorrow, so I think I'll have a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 It was after midnight but I still felt wide \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 I felt really tired – I couldn't stop \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 My husband wears red \_\_\_\_\_ in bed and \_\_\_\_\_ so loudly that he keeps me awake.

### 3 Test yourself. Cover the text above. Say what you can see in the pictures.



## B Sleep habits

### ABOUT YOU

Antonio: 'I **sleep like a log** wherever I am.'

Ella: 'If I eat late, I often **have a restless night**.'

Hiroko: 'I need a good night's sleep, otherwise I can't **concentrate** the next day.'

Raul: '**Lack of sleep** makes me really **irritable**.'

Suzanna: 'I often have **nightmares** and wake up feeling **exhausted**.'

Carla: 'I've always **been a heavy sleeper** – nothing **disturbs me**.'

Nick: 'I **suffer from insomnia**, so I never get much sleep.'

Agnieszka: 'During the day, I often **have a nap**.'

Omar: 'When there are things **on my mind** – like exams – I sleep really badly.'

### Glossary

**habit** a thing you do often, almost without thinking.

**sleep like a log** sleep very well. **OPP sleep badly**.

**have a restless night** be unable to sleep well and often wake up.

**concentrate (on sth)** give all your attention to sth.

**lack of sth** a situation in which you don't have enough of sth (e.g. money, food, or sleep).

**irritable** becoming angry easily.

**exhausted** extremely tired, physically or mentally.

**a heavy sleeper** a person who doesn't wake up easily. **OPP a light sleeper**.

**disturb sb** do sth to stop sb who is trying to sleep, work, etc.

**suffer from sth** have the experience of sth unpleasant.

**insomnia** If you suffer from **insomnia**, you are often unable to sleep.

**have a nap** have a short sleep, e.g. for half an hour.

**on my mind** If sth is **on your mind**, you're thinking or worrying about it.

#### 4 Find six more phrases in the box.

concentrate ✓ have like a log insomnia have a restless sleep a nap  
a heavy on something ✓ on night suffer from sleeper my mind

► concentrate on something

#### 5 Complete the sentences with suitable words or phrases.

► I get very irritable if I don't sleep well.

1 These days I often have a \_\_\_\_\_ after lunch; it's almost become a \_\_\_\_\_.

2 After a relaxing bath and a hot drink, I always sleep \_\_\_\_\_.

3 I never sleep more than three hours a night – I \_\_\_\_\_ insomnia.

4 I had too much to eat and drink last night, and I had a very \_\_\_\_\_ night.

5 I didn't sleep well last night because I've got a lot of things on my \_\_\_\_\_.

6 Nothing \_\_\_\_\_ me at night – I'm a very \_\_\_\_\_ sleeper.

7 I was absolutely \_\_\_\_\_ last night and I slept for ten hours.

8 I'm afraid I'm a bit irritable at the moment. I'm suffering from a \_\_\_\_\_ of sleep.

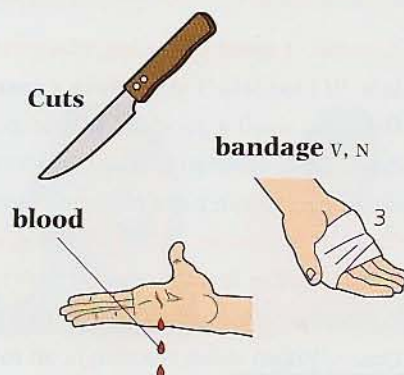
#### 6 ABOUT YOU Read the statements at the top of the page again. Are they true for you? Write your answers or ask another student.

## 20 I can talk about injuries

### A Burns and cuts



Hold the affected area under **running water**<sup>1</sup> for 15 minutes. **Cover** it with a dry, clean **dressing**<sup>2</sup> to **prevent infection**. If **symptoms** of infection **develop**, see your doctor.



Wash and dry your hands **thoroughly**. Clean the **wound** under running water. Dry the area, and put a dressing over it **temporarily** while you clean the skin around the wound. Cover the cut completely with a dressing, or **bandage**<sup>3</sup> it. It should **heal up** in a few days.

#### Glossary

<b>cover sth</b>	• put sth over sth, especially to protect it.
<b>prevent sth</b>	• stop sth from happening. <b>prevention</b> N.
<b>infection</b>	• an illness caused by bacteria or a virus.
<b>symptom</b>	• a change in your body which is a sign of illness.
<b>develop</b>	• grow or increase.
<b>thoroughly</b>	• in a very careful and complete way.
<b>wound</b>	• an area of damage to part of your body (especially a <b>cut</b> ).
<b>temporarily</b>	• for a short time only.
<b>heal OR heal up</b>	• become healthy again.

#### 1 Complete the words.

- |  |                           |                             |
|--|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| ► <u>p</u> <u>r</u> <u>e</u> <u>v</u> <u>e</u> <u>n</u> <u>t</u> | 3 t h _ _ r _ _ g h l _ _ | 6 s _ _ m p t _ _ m         |
| 1 i n f _ _ _ _ _ i o n  | 4 w _ _ _ n d             | 7 t _ _ p o r _ _ r _ _ l y |
| 2 b _ _ n d _ _ g e  | 5 b l _ _ _ d             | 8 d _ _ v _ _ l _ _ p       |

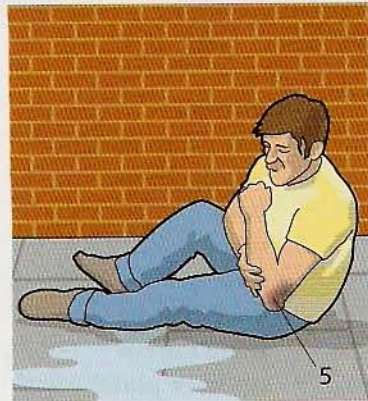
#### 2 Complete the texts.

I was cooking last weekend and picked up a hot pan and ► burnt myself. It was really painful. I held the (1) b \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ under (2) r \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ water for fifteen minutes, then I (3) c \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ it with a dressing. I made sure it was clean because you have to (4) p \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ infection. Since then, it's got a lot better and I haven't had any (5) s \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ of infection.

I cut my hand yesterday. I cleaned the (6) w \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ under running water, then covered it (7) t \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ with a (8) d \_ \_ \_ \_ \_, and washed the skin around it. I couldn't find a (9) b \_ \_ \_ \_ \_, so I went to the chemist's for one. I probably didn't clean the wound (10) t \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ enough, as it hasn't (11) h \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ very well, and I think I've got an (12) i \_ \_ \_ \_ \_.

#### 3 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

## B A nasty injury



The other day I **slipped**<sup>1</sup> and fell **backwards** and **banged** my **elbow**<sup>2</sup> on the ground.

I started to feel **dizzy**<sup>3</sup> and then I **fainted**<sup>4</sup>. I was **unconscious** for a minute or so.

When I **came round**, my arm was very painful. It was quite **swollen** and **bruised**<sup>5</sup>, but it wasn't **bleeding**. I realized it was a serious **injury**, so I went to hospital.

### Glossary

**nasty** very bad or unpleasant.

**injury** an area of damage done to sb's body, especially in an accident. **injure** v.

**backward(s)** in the direction behind you. **opp forward(s)**.

**bang** sth hit a part of your body against sth when you are moving.

**dizzy** feeling as if everything is turning around and you might fall.

**unconscious** in a state like sleep, often caused by an injury. **opp conscious**.

**come round** become conscious again. **OPPS faint, pass out**.

**swollen** larger than usual because of an injury.

**bleed** lose blood from your body.

### 4 True or false? Write T or F.

- If you come round, you are conscious. T
- 1 If you bang your head, it always bleeds.
- 2 If you faint, you become unconscious.
- 3 If you lose blood, you always faint.
- 4 A bruised knee looks blue.
- 5 A nasty burn is a serious burn.
- 6 If you slip, you can easily fall.
- 7 Your elbow is at the end of your arm.
- 8 A swollen finger is bigger than usual.
- 9 Feeling dizzy is very painful.
- 10 Backwards is the opposite of forwards.

### 5 A word is missing. Where from? Write it at the end.

- The ball hit him next to his eye; his eye was quite bruised the next day.
- 1 I on the ice and fell over.
- 2 I know he slipped, but did he fall or forwards?
- 3 He fainted, and when he came he didn't know where he was.
- 4 Nobody was killed, but three people were in the accident.
- 5 She her head on the door and fell to the floor.
- 6 My finger was so I put a dressing on it.

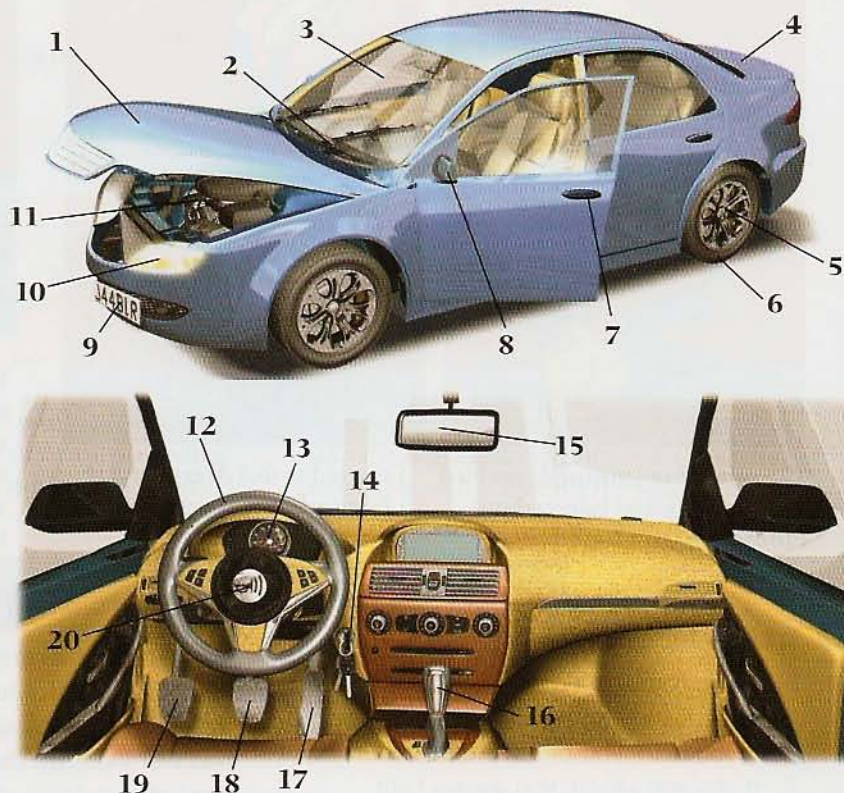
### 6 ABOUT YOU Which of the following have you done or experienced? Tick them.

- 1 had a swollen eye.
- 2 fainted in a public place.
- 3 had a serious injury.
- 4 slipped and fallen into a river.
- 5 had a nasty burn on your arm.
- 6 lost quite a lot of blood in an accident.

## 21 I can talk about cars and driving

### A The car

- 1 bonnet
- 2 windscreen wiper
- 3 windscreen
- 4 boot
- 5 wheel
- 6 tyre
- 7 door handle
- 8 wing mirror
- 9 number plate
- 10 headlights
- 11 engine
- 12 steering wheel
- 13 speedometer
- 14 ignition
- 15 rear-view mirror
- 16 gear stick/lever
- 17 accelerator
- 18 brake
- 19 clutch
- 20 horn



1 Combine words from the box to form six more compound words.

rear-view ✓ steering door windscreen lever mirror number  
wing gear wheel mirror ✓ wiper handle plate

► rear-view mirror


2 Outside the car or inside the car?  
Write O or I.

- clutch I
- 1 tyre \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 speedometer \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 steering wheel \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 headlight \_\_\_\_\_
  - 5 brake \_\_\_\_\_
  - 6 rear-view mirror \_\_\_\_\_
  - 7 wheel \_\_\_\_\_
  - 8 horn \_\_\_\_\_
  - 9 windscreen wiper \_\_\_\_\_

3 Complete the sentences.

If you want to ...

- start the car, turn on the ignition
- 1 stop, put your foot on the \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 change gear, put your foot on the \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 go faster, put your foot on the \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 store luggage, open the \_\_\_\_\_
  - 5 look at the engine, open the \_\_\_\_\_
  - 6 see at night, turn on the \_\_\_\_\_
  - 7 turn a corner, look in your \_\_\_\_\_
  - 8 drive in the rain, turn on the \_\_\_\_\_
  - 9 warn someone, press your \_\_\_\_\_

4  Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. How many things can you name?



## B Driving tips

### TIPS FOR SAFER DRIVING

- Always **be prepared for** bad road conditions and bad drivers.
- On wet roads, **brake, steer,** and **accelerate** gently to avoid **skidding**.
- **Watch out** for motorcyclists and cyclists; give them plenty of space when **overtaking**.
- In car parks, **reverse** into a parking space **rather than** drive into it.
- **Keep** to the **speed limit** and don't drive too **close to** the vehicle in front.

### Glossary

<b>tip</b>	• a piece of practical advice.
<b>be prepared for sth</b>	• be ready and able to deal with any problems.
	<b>prepare v.</b>
<b>brake</b>	• go more slowly or stop a vehicle by using the brakes.
<b>steer</b>	• control the direction a vehicle is moving in.
<b>accelerate</b>	• go faster. <b>OPP slow down.</b>
<b>skid</b>	• suddenly move sideways without control.
<b>watch out</b>	• be careful because there is a possible danger.
<b>overtake sb/sth</b>	• go past sb/sth that is going more slowly.
<b>reverse</b>	• go backwards in a car.
<b>rather than</b>	• instead of; in place of.
<b>speed limit</b>	• the highest legal speed at which you can drive on a road.
<b>close to sth</b>	• near sth.

### spotlight **keep**

**Keep** often means 'continue or stay in a particular place or condition'.

**Keep** to the speed limit. (Stay below the speed limit.)

**Keep** left. (Stay on the left.)

### 5 Cover the glossary, then complete the meanings.

▶ brake = stop a vehicle

1 overtake = go \_\_\_\_\_ another car

2 accelerate = go \_\_\_\_\_

3 reverse = go \_\_\_\_\_

4 tip = a piece of \_\_\_\_\_

5 steer = control the \_\_\_\_\_ of the vehicle

6 rather than = \_\_\_\_\_ of

### 6 Complete the sentences.

▶ You shouldn't overtake on a bridge.

1 The weather was awful and I wasn't really \_\_\_\_\_ for it.

2 I never go over the speed \_\_\_\_\_, or drive too \_\_\_\_\_ to the cars in front.

3 He crashed into the tree after he \_\_\_\_\_ on the wet road.

4 There's a school on the corner, so \_\_\_\_\_ out for small children.

5 Do you always \_\_\_\_\_ to the speed limit?

6 I parked in the street \_\_\_\_\_ than the car park because it's free.

### 7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 Are these useful tips, or did you know them already? \_\_\_\_\_

2 Do you usually brake and accelerate gently? \_\_\_\_\_

3 Do you usually reverse into parking spaces in a car park? Why/Why not? \_\_\_\_\_

4 Are there times when you don't keep to the speed limit? \_\_\_\_\_

5 Do you know what to do if your car skids? \_\_\_\_\_

6 What do you do to prepare for bad winter weather? \_\_\_\_\_

### 8 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

## 22 I can describe travel problems and accidents

### A Trains and planes

'We had **trouble** getting to the airport because we **got held up** in traffic.'

'I wanted to leave at 8.30, but my **day return** was only **valid** after 9.30.'

'The train was **due** at 9.42 but it didn't **get in** until 10.25.'

'I was late because they **cancelled** my train without **warning**.'

'The flight from Heathrow was delayed, so I missed my **connecting flight** to Palermo.'

'My brother was **meant to pick me up** at the airport, but he didn't **turn up**.'

### Glossary

**trouble** (doing sth/with sth) a situation that causes a problem.

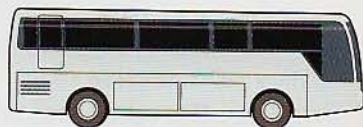
**get/be held up** If you **get held up** or **are held up**, sth has caused you to be late. **SYN** **be delayed**.

**day return** a ticket to travel to a place and back again on the same day.

**valid** acceptable and able to be used.

**due** expected to arrive or happen.

**get in** (usually of a train or **coach** see picture) arrive.



**cancel sth** decide that sth that has been planned will not happen.

**warning** information that sth bad may happen.

**connecting flight** a flight that leaves soon after another one arrives.

**meant to do sth** If sb is or was **meant to do sth**, they have been asked to do it.

**pick sb/sth up** go to a place and collect sb/sth (usually in a car).

**turn up** arrive or appear (often used in the negative).

### 1 Good news or bad news? Write G or B.

- I got my connecting flight. G
- The train was cancelled. ....
  - The train's due in a minute. ....
  - They didn't turn up. ....

- This ticket is still valid. ....
- I couldn't get a day return. ....
- They didn't get held up. ....
- We were delayed. ....

### 2 Complete the sentences.

- My husband was meant to meet me, but he didn't turn up.
- They've just said the train is ..... in five minutes, so that's good.
  - The plane to Madrid was late, so I missed my ..... flight to Malaga.
  - We had a lot of ..... at the border: we were ..... for two hours.
  - Passengers arrived late because the train company ..... two trains this morning.
  - I was ..... to meet them at the station, but I got ..... up in the traffic.
  - What time does your train ..... in?
  - He's gone to the airport to ..... them up.
  - There was no ..... that trains might be cancelled.

### 3 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.

- Do most trains get in on time, or are they often delayed? If delayed, why?  
.....
- When did you last miss a train or plane? Why, and what happened?  
.....



## B On the roads

Hi Sammy

We've just got back from a little **trip** to Spain. We stayed **overnight** in Malaga, then **hired a car** and drove up to Seville, **stopping off** at Osuna **on the way**. We loved Seville – you really must go there. We also went down to Cadiz, **via** Jerez, but the journey was a **nightmare**! We **got stuck** in a **traffic jam** for hours, and when we finally **ended up on the outskirts** of Cadiz, there was more **heavy traffic** because of **the rush hour**. Still, it was nice when we got there. We went to ...

### spotlight way

The **way** is the route or direction that you need to take to get somewhere.

*Is this the **way** to the bank? I went **the wrong way** and got lost. We stopped **on the way** to Scotland. I saw him **on my way** to school.*

### Glossary

**trip** a journey to a place and back again, for business or pleasure, often for a short period of time (e.g. a **day trip**, a **business trip**).

**overnight** for one night.

**hire a car** pay to use a car for a short time. **syn rent a car.**

**stop off** stop during a journey to do sth.

**via** going through a place (to get to another place).

**nightmare** **inf** an experience that is very unpleasant.

**get/be stuck** be unable to move easily.

**traffic jam** a long line of cars moving very slowly.

**end up** find yourself in a place or situation you didn't plan.

**the outskirts** (**pl n**) The outer part of a town or city is called **the outskirts**.

**heavy traffic** a lot of cars on the road at a particular time.

**the rush hour** the time when a lot of people are travelling to and from work.

#### 4 Match words on the left with words on the right to make eight more words or phrases.

heavy ✓ rush hire traffic

the wrong stop get end on

off way traffic ✓ stuck up

a car hour the way jam

► heavy traffic \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

#### 5 Complete the definitions.

- The outer part of a town or city is the outskirts.
- 1 A journey to a place and then back again is a \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 2 A long line of cars moving slowly is a \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 3 If you stay somewhere for one night, you stay \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 4 To pay to use a car for a short time is to \_\_\_\_\_ it.
  - 5 A very unpleasant experience is a \_\_\_\_\_. It also means 'a bad dream'.
  - 6 If you go through Birmingham to get to London, you go \_\_\_\_\_ Birmingham.

#### 6 Complete the questions.

ABOUT YOU

- 1 Have you or your family ever \_\_\_\_\_ a car? If so, when and why? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 On long journeys, do you want to get from A to B as quickly as possible, or do you like to \_\_\_\_\_ off somewhere on the \_\_\_\_\_? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Do you often get \_\_\_\_\_ in \_\_\_\_\_ traffic? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Do you ever go on day \_\_\_\_\_? If so, where to? \_\_\_\_\_

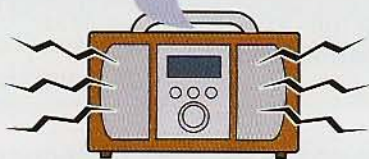
#### 7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 6, or ask another student.

## C A road accident

Here is the latest travel news...

There's been a **serious accident** on the M3 outside Winchester. It **occurred** just after 7.00 a.m., when a **van skidded** on the wet road and **collided with** other **vehicles**. The accident has **blocked** two **lanes** of the motorway. **Emergency services** are at the scene of the accident, and motorists are being advised to **avoid** the area.

And on the M23 at Junction 9 near Gatwick, an **ambulance** has **broken down** while taking an **injured** driver to hospital. This is causing delays for traffic on the way to the airport...



### Glossary

**serious accident**

• a bad or dangerous accident.

**occur** FML

• happen, especially in a way that has not been planned.

**van**



**skid**

• suddenly move forwards or sideways without any control.

**collide with sth**

• hit sth very hard while moving.

SYN **crash into sth.**

**vehicle**

• FML e.g. a car, bike, bus, or lorry.

**block a road, etc.**

• make it difficult for anything to pass.

**lane**

• a part of a wide road marked by painted white lines.

**emergency services**

• the police, ambulance, and fire services.

**avoid sb/sth**

• stay away from sb/sth.

**ambulance**



**break down**

• (of a vehicle) stop working.

**injured**

• hurt physically.

### 8 One letter is missing. Write the words correctly.

- |                         |                  |                |
|-------------------------|------------------|----------------|
| ► injurd <u>injured</u> | 3 serius _____   | 6 bloc _____   |
| 1 ambulance _____       | 4 emegency _____ | 7 avid _____   |
| 2 veicle _____          | 5 ocur _____     | 8 colide _____ |

### 9 Replace the underlined word or phrase with a word or phrase that has the same meaning.

- Was it a bad accident? serious
- 1 Fortunately the driver wasn't hurt. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 There are too many cars, vans, and lorries on the road. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 The van crashed into another car. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 The car went sideways out of control on the icy road. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 5 The police and an ambulance arrived within minutes. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 6 The accident happened late last night. \_\_\_\_\_

### 10 Complete the sentences.

- The car was hit by a big van.
- 1 We couldn't get by because there was a fallen tree \_\_\_\_\_ the road.
  - 2 I think the driver must have \_\_\_\_\_ on the ice.
  - 3 There was a \_\_\_\_\_ accident last week when a woman was nearly killed.
  - 4 You should move into the outside \_\_\_\_\_ to overtake another car.
  - 5 The car \_\_\_\_\_ on the way to the airport and I had to ring for help.
  - 6 Several people were \_\_\_\_\_, and they were taken to hospital.

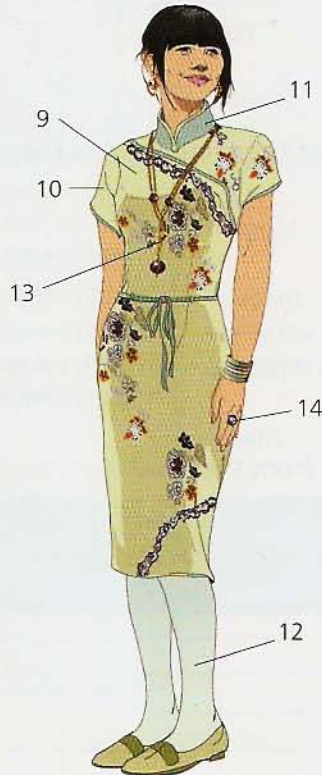
### 11 Test yourself. Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. Say the words.

## 23 I can talk about clothes and fashion

### A Clothes



Amy



Beth



Gavin

- 1 cap
- 2 cotton blouse/shirt
- 3 belt
- 4 waistcoat
- 5 denim skirt
- 6 high-heeled leather boots
- 7 earrings
- 8 bracelet

- 9 silk dress
- 10 short sleeves
- 11 collar
- 12 tights
- 13 necklace
- 14 ring

- 15 V-neck sweater
- 16 button
- 17 suede shoes
- 18 pocket

#### spotlight jewellery and material

Necklace, bracelet, ring, and earrings are all examples of **jewellery**. Cotton and silk are types of **material**. SYN fabric.

Leather and suede are **materials** made from animal skin.



1 bra



2 knickers



3 slip



4 underpants



5 vest

Underwear:



# 1 Complete the words.

► kn i c k e r s

1 \_ n d \_ r w \_ \_ r

2 m \_ t \_ r \_ \_ l

3 s l \_ \_ v \_ \_

4 t i \_ \_ \_ t s

5 s \_ \_ \_ d e

6 n \_ c k l \_ \_ \_ e

7 b l \_ \_ \_ s e

8 e a \_ \_ \_ i n \_ \_ s

9 v \_ \_ \_ t

10 b \_ \_ t t \_ \_ n

# 2 Cover the words and look at the pictures. Are these statements true or false? Write T or F.

► Amy's wearing a necklace. F

1 Amy's wearing a belt. \_\_\_\_\_

2 Gavin's wearing a ring. \_\_\_\_\_

3 Beth's wearing tights. \_\_\_\_\_

4 Beth's dress has got two buttons on it. \_\_\_\_\_

5 Gavin's wearing denim jeans. \_\_\_\_\_

6 Amy's blouse has got short sleeves. \_\_\_\_\_

7 Beth's dress has got two pockets. \_\_\_\_\_

8 Beth's wearing high-heeled shoes. \_\_\_\_\_

9 Amy's wearing earrings. \_\_\_\_\_

10 Amy's wearing a denim skirt. \_\_\_\_\_

# 3 Complete the table with words from the box.

cotton skirt waistcoat vest bracelet leather cap  
underpants ✓ ring necklace slip bra blouse  
suede earrings silk

Underwear	► underpants			
Jewellery				
Material(s)				
Clothes				

# 4 Complete the questions with words from the box.

belts leather cap ✓ denim ring neck sleeves silk bracelet material

## ABOUT YOU

► Do you ever wear a cap \_\_\_\_\_? If so, when and why?

1 Do you wear a \_\_\_\_\_? If so, on which finger(s)?

2 Do you wear a \_\_\_\_\_? If so, on which wrist?

3 How many leather \_\_\_\_\_ have you got?

4 How many pairs of \_\_\_\_\_ jeans have you got?

5 What have you got that is made of \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_?

6 Have you got any V-\_\_\_\_\_ sweaters? If so, what colour?

7 In summer, do you wear short \_\_\_\_\_ a lot?

8 Do you have a favourite \_\_\_\_\_? If so, what?

# 5 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 4, or ask another student.

# 6 Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Can you name the items?

B Fashion 

## Three golden rules for fashion

**F**ashion expert **Allyson Walsh** says that every **stylish** woman should have a 'capsule wardrobe' – a timeless collection of clothes for every occasion. This includes: a little black dress, the perfect jeans, leather handbag, a fine wool jumper, white shirt, knee-length skirt, etc. Being stylish is about what **suits** you and your **figure**. Here are three golden rules:

- Spend as much as possible on the basics (your capsule wardrobe) and don't worry too much about **fashionable** clothes – you probably won't wear them after one season.
- Choose **neutral** colours: black, cream, white, and dark blue. Neutrals look **elegant**, and are **versatile** and easy to **match**. Just think of Armani fashions, year after year.
- A simple **outfit** can be **transformed** with the **latest** fashion **accessory**, e.g. a belt.

### Glossary

<b>stylish</b>	• attractive and fashionable. <b>style</b> N.
<b>suit</b>	• If something <b>suits</b> you, it looks good on you.
<b>figure</b>	• the shape of the body, especially that of a woman.
<b>fashionable</b>	• popular at the present time. OPP <b>unfashionable</b> .
<b>neutral</b>	• (of a colour) not strong or bright. <b>neutral</b> N.
<b>elegant</b>	• attractive and well designed.
<b>versatile</b>	• having many different uses.
<b>match</b>	• look good with something else. <b>matching</b> ADJ.
<b>outfit</b>	• a set of clothes that you wear together.
<b>transform sth</b>	• change sth completely, usually in a positive way.
<b>latest</b>	• new or very recent.
<b>accessory</b>	• sth you wear or carry that goes with your clothes, e.g. a bag.

### 7 Circle the correct answer.

- It's a very versatile/fashionable jacket – I can wear it on different occasions.
- 1 You should buy that blouse; it suits/matches your skirt.
  - 2 She wore a very unfashionable/stylish jacket – it looked awful.
  - 3 I need to get a new figure/outfit for my brother's wedding.
  - 4 This coat is the latest/neutral fashion, but I don't particularly like the style/figure.
  - 5 I think that dress really matches/suits you.
  - 6 My mother's got a versatile/very good figure.
  - 7 You can make a simple dress look great with the right outfits/accessories.
  - 8 I always wear neutral/bright colours, but they can be a bit boring.

### 8 Complete the sentences.

- She can wear tight jeans because she has such a good figure.
- 1 I bought some pink shoes and a \_\_\_\_\_ handbag; they look great together.
  - 2 I'd love to be like Mary; she looks so \_\_\_\_\_ whatever she wears.
  - 3 I want a pair of those trousers; they're the \_\_\_\_\_ fashion.
  - 4 She never wears red – it doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ her.
  - 5 Black is very \_\_\_\_\_ because you can wear it with almost anything.
  - 6 She's got a new hairstyle and it completely \_\_\_\_\_ the way she looks.
  - 7 Expensive \_\_\_\_\_ such as bags and belts can have a big effect on how you look.
  - 8 I really like her new \_\_\_\_\_ because it all works well together.

### 9 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?



## Review: Daily life

### Unit 16

1 Complete the table with the words from the box.

fig beetroot basil ✓ cod veal sweetcorn rabbit oysters  
pomegranate salmon clams parsley broccoli raspberry carp  
thyme mussels mint sea bass liver crab kidney leeks apricot

Herbs	Fruit	Vegetables	Fish	Seafood	Meat
► basil					

### Unit 17

1 Complete the definitions.

► boil = cook in water

1 junk food = food which is \_\_\_\_\_ good for you

2 cut down on food = eat \_\_\_\_\_ food

3 healthy food = food which is \_\_\_\_\_ for you

4 a waste of money = a \_\_\_\_\_ use of your money

5 put on weight = become \_\_\_\_\_

6 fry = cook in \_\_\_\_\_

7 bake = cook in the oven \_\_\_\_\_ oil or fat

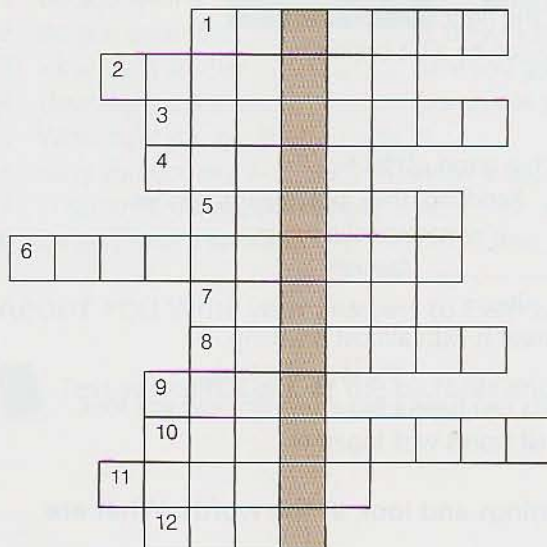
8 chop = \_\_\_\_\_ into small pieces

9 fattening = making you put on \_\_\_\_\_

10 recipe = a set of instructions for \_\_\_\_\_ something

### Unit 18

1 Complete the crossword, using the clues at the top of the next page. The letters in the grey squares spell out another phrase related to money. What is it?





- 1 a piece of paper that shows that something has been paid for
- 2 informal phrase meaning 'wealthy' (two words)
- 3 a time when shops sell things at a lower price (two words)
- 4 a bad use of something, e.g. money or time
- 5 If something costs €15, you give the shop assistant €20 and you get €5 .....
- 6 haven't got enough money to do something (two words)
- 7 informal word for having no money
- 8 a very good price for something you are buying
- 9 the amount of money that you owe someone
- 10 a lower price than before
- 11 the total sum of money
- 12 massive

The letters in the grey squares make the phrase .....

## Unit 19

### 1 Complete the text with suitable words.

#### Insomnia: how to get a good night's sleep

Many people suffer from insomnia. They may not be able to (1) ..... asleep. Others may wake up during the night and not (2) ..... back to sleep again; or they may wake up too early in the morning.

##### Is it a serious problem?

No, not really, but if you suffer from a (3) ..... of sleep, it can make you feel tired, depressed, and (4) ..... It can also make it hard to (5) ..... on your work during the day.

##### How much sleep do I need?

Adults need 7–8 hours a night. If you feel (6) ..... during the day, you aren't getting enough sleep at night. However, sleep (7) ..... may change with age. For example, older people may sleep less at night but have a (8) ..... during the day.

##### What is a sleep diary?

A sleep diary can help you understand your sleeping patterns. You have to keep a record of when you go to sleep and wake up, how often you have a restless (9) ....., etc. And if you sleep badly, you can write down whether you have things on your (10) ....., for example, family problems, or worries at work.

## Unit 20

### 1 Read the definitions and complete the words.

- bandage ..... thin white cloth you tie around a cut or wound
- 1 bl ..... lose blood from the body
  - 2 di ..... feeling as if everything is turning round and you might fall
  - 3 pre ..... stop something from happening
  - 4 sym ..... a change in your body which is a sign of illness
  - 5 inf ..... an illness caused by bacteria or a virus
  - 6 inj ..... an area of damage in the body, often caused by an accident
  - 7 dev ..... grow, increase, or change into something
  - 8 tho ..... in a very careful and complete way



## Unit 21

### 1 Match 1–7 with a–h to make compound words.

- |                       |          |
|-----------------------|----------|
| ► wing <u>g</u>       | a stick  |
| 1 steering <u>h</u>   | b wiper  |
| 2 gear <u>a</u>       | c handle |
| 3 speed <u>d</u>      | d mirror |
| 4 rear-view <u>e</u>  | e plate  |
| 5 door <u>f</u>       | f wheel  |
| 6 number <u>c</u>     | g mirror |
| 7 windscreen <u>b</u> | h limit  |

## Unit 22

### 1 Tick (✓) the words that are possible in the sentence.

► We were *stuck* ☒ *delayed* ☒ *stopped off* ☐ in a traffic jam.

- The train was *cancelled* ☐ *held up* ☐ *collided* ☐.
- We stopped on the *outskirts* ☐ *the rush hour* ☐ *the way* ☐.
- He turned up in *a lane* ☐ *a vehicle* ☐ *an ambulance* ☐.
- They crashed into *a coach* ☐ *a van* ☐ *an accident* ☐.
- The car *broke down* ☐ *hired* ☐ *crashed* ☐.
- The passengers were *turned up* ☐ *injured* ☐ *delayed* ☐.
- I've got a *valid ticket* ☐ *a day return* ☐ *a traffic jam* ☐.
- The train *gets in* ☐ *is due* ☐ *ends up* ☐ at two o'clock.

### 2 Complete the phrases with a suitable verb.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| ► crash <u>into</u> another vehicle                | 4 g <u>held up</u> in traffic                  |
| 1 h <u>held up</u> a car                           | 5 s <u>slipped</u> on the ice                  |
| 2 p <u>picked up</u> your friend up at the station | 6 s <u>stopped off</u> on the way for a coffee |
| 3 t <u>turned up</u> late for a flight             | 7 e <u>ended up</u> in the wrong place         |

## Unit 23

### 1 Circle the one which is different.

- |  |                                       |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| ► blouse waistcoat sweater <u>outfit</u> | 4 cotton denim silk vest              |
| 1 cap style boot sweater                 | 5 earrings button necklace ring       |
| 2 leather bracelet suede cotton          | 6 suede fashionable elegant versatile |
| 3 collar pocket dress sleeve             | 7 bra knickers underpants underwear   |

### 2 Complete the sentence so that it means the same as the sentence on the left.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| ► I don't like strong colours.                   | I like <u>neutral</u> colours.             |
| 1 You can wear this blouse with anything.        | This blouse is very <u>versatile</u> .     |
| 2 Her bag's the same colour as her shoes.        | Her bag <u>matches</u> her shoes.          |
| 3 Her new hairstyle looks really good on her.    | Her new hairstyle <u>suits</u> her.        |
| 4 I need a new skirt and jacket for work.        | I need a new <u>outfit</u> for work.       |
| 5 I'm going to get a necklace and some earrings. | I'm going to get some <u>accessories</u> . |
| 6 I don't like cotton or silk.                   | I don't like these <u>fabrics</u> .        |

## 24 I can describe a visit to the dentist

I'd **had toothache** for a couple of weeks. When I tried to **bite** or **chew** on one of my back teeth, it was very **painful**. I needed to have a **check-up** anyway, so I rang the **dental surgery** and **made an appointment** for Friday. The dentist **examined** my teeth and told me I needed two **fillings**, and said he would have to **take out** the tooth which was **causing** the pain. I've got to go back for **treatment** on Tuesday, and I'm **dreading** it.

### spotlight *dread, look forward to*

If you are **dreading** something, you are afraid of something that is going to happen. If you are **looking forward to** something, you are happy or excited about something that is going to happen.

*I **dread** going to the dentist.*

*My treatment finishes tomorrow; I'm really **looking forward to** that.*

### Glossary

<b>have toothache</b>	• have a pain in your tooth.
<b>bite sth</b> PT <b>bit</b> PP <b>bitten</b>	• cut sth with your teeth.
<b>chew</b>	• use your teeth to break up food in your mouth.
<b>painful</b>	• If something is <b>painful</b> , it hurts.
<b>check-up</b>	• a medical or dental examination to see if you are healthy.
<b>dental surgery</b>	• a place where a dentist sees you (also <b>doctor's surgery</b> ).
<b>make an appointment</b>	• arrange a time to go to a dentist, doctor, etc.
<b>examine sb/sth</b>	• look at sb/sth very carefully.
<b>filling</b>	• a mixture that a dentist puts in your tooth to fill a hole.
<b>take out a tooth</b>	• remove a tooth from your mouth.
<b>cause sth</b>	• be the reason that sth happens, often sth bad.
<b>treatment</b>	• the things a doctor or dentist does to make you better. <b>treat sb</b> v.

### 1 Complete the sentences with *I*, *The tooth*, or *The dentist*.

- |  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| ► I _____ needed a check-up.               | 6 _____ gave me a filling.           |
| 1 _____ took the tooth out.                | 7 _____ had to have some treatment.  |
| 2 _____ was causing me pain.               | 8 _____ was treated at the surgery.  |
| 3 _____ made an appointment.               | 9 _____ was painful.                 |
| 4 _____ examined my teeth.                 | 10 _____ bit on an apple and hurt my |
| 5 _____ was dreading going to the surgery. | tooth.                               |

### 2 Complete the questions.

- How often do you have a check-up ?
- Do you \_\_\_\_\_ forward to going to the dentist? Why/Why not?
  - What's your dental \_\_\_\_\_ like?
  - When did you last \_\_\_\_\_ toothache?
  - When did the dentist last give you a \_\_\_\_\_?
  - Is it ever \_\_\_\_\_ when you bite or \_\_\_\_\_ your food?
  - When did a dentist last \_\_\_\_\_ out one of your teeth?

### ABOUT YOU

---



---



---



---



---



---

### 3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 2, or ask another student.

### 4 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?

## 25 I can describe hospital procedures 🎧

### GOING INTO HOSPITAL

- Your doctor is **concerned** about you.

**go into hospital** go for treatment and stay there for a night or more.  
**go to hospital** go there for treatment, but not stay in.

**concerned about sb** worried about sb.

- He sends you to see a **specialist**.

**specialist** a person who knows a lot about a particular subject, e.g. a heart specialist. In a hospital, this person is often called a **consultant**.

- You may have **tests, X-rays<sup>1</sup>, or scans<sup>2</sup>**.

**test** a medical examination of part of your body, e.g. an eye test, a blood test.



- The specialist decides how to **treat** you.

**treat sb** give medical help to sb to make them better. **treatment** n.

- You may **have an operation immediately** if it is **urgent**.

**operation** In an **operation**, the doctor cuts open the body (**operates**) to treat the person.  
**immediately** with no delay. SYN **straightaway**.  
**urgent** needing to be done quickly.

- The **surgeon** explains the **benefits and risks** to you, the **patient**.

**surgeon** a doctor who does medical operations.  
**benefit** a thing that has a good or helpful result.  
**risk** a danger that sth bad may happen.  
**patient** a person who is having treatment.

- After the operation you return to the **ward**, where the nurses **care for** you.

**care for sb** look after sb. SYN **take care of sb**.  
**ward** (see picture)

- The operation is **successful**. When you are **well enough**, you can go home to **recover**.

**successful** If sth is **successful**, it has gone well.  
**recover (from sth)** become well after you have been ill.  
 SYN **get over sth**.



operating theatre



ward

### spotlight **enough**

You can use **enough** after adjectives and adverbs. It means 'as good, well, old, long, etc. as is necessary'.

*She's not **well enough** to go out.* (She needs to feel better before she can go out.)

*He's **strong enough** to get up.* (He has the strength he needs to get up.)

You can also use **enough** before plural and uncountable nouns.

*There aren't **enough** doctors.* (We need more doctors.)

*I haven't got **enough** money.* (I need more money.)

**1** Correct the spelling mistakes.► spezialist specialist

1 consultant \_\_\_\_\_

2 immediately \_\_\_\_\_

3 recouer \_\_\_\_\_

4 pacient \_\_\_\_\_

5 straightway \_\_\_\_\_

6 urgente \_\_\_\_\_

7 well enough \_\_\_\_\_

8 succesful \_\_\_\_\_

9 benifit \_\_\_\_\_

10 sirgeon \_\_\_\_\_

**2** Circle the correct answer.► The patient/surgeon has the operation.

1 The consultant/patient goes into hospital.

2 The specialist/patient orders the scans.

3 The consultant/patient may have to have an X-ray.

4 The specialist/patient may need treatment urgently.

5 The surgeon/patient explains the benefits of the treatment.

6 The patient/nurse cares for the person after the operation.

7 The specialist/patient gets over the illness.

8 The nurse/patient works on the ward.

**3** Complete the conversation with suitable words.

A Hi, Mary, how are you?

B Oh, not too bad, but I'm a bit concerned about my eye.

A I'm sorry to hear that. What's the matter?

B Well, I've just been to hospital to see a (1) c\_\_\_\_\_ and I had some (2) t\_\_\_\_\_ too, to see what was wrong. I've got a problem at the back of my eye, and I need to have an (3) o\_\_\_\_\_.

A Oh, dear. Is it (4) u\_\_\_\_\_?

B Yes, I have to have it done (5) s\_\_\_\_\_ – I've got to go (6) i\_\_\_\_\_ hospital tomorrow.

A And are there any (7) r\_\_\_\_\_ with the treatment?

B I don't think so; it's a very simple operation, and it's usually very (8) s\_\_\_\_\_ : 98 per cent of people can see better afterwards.

A And when will you be well (9) e\_\_\_\_\_ to start work again?

B He said I'll need a week to (10) g\_\_\_\_\_ o\_\_\_\_\_ the operation. My sister is going to (11) t\_\_\_\_\_ c\_\_\_\_\_ of me at home.

A Well, good luck – I hope it goes well.

**4** ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 Have you ever been into hospital for a few days or longer? When? \_\_\_\_\_

2 Have you ever visited a patient in hospital? If so, when, and who was it? \_\_\_\_\_

3 When patients are on a ward, do the nurses take care of them, or does the family look after them too? \_\_\_\_\_

4 Can you see a specialist straightaway in your country, or do you have to wait? If so, how long? \_\_\_\_\_

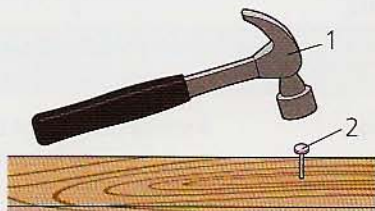
5 Do you have to see your doctor first before you go and see a specialist? \_\_\_\_\_

6 Where do patients usually go to recover after an operation? \_\_\_\_\_

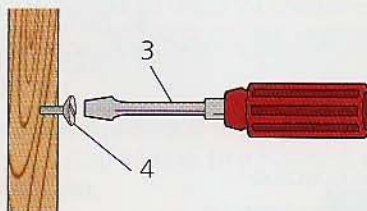
**5** Test yourself. Cover the meanings in the table and look at the procedures. Can you remember the meanings of the new words?

## 26 I can explain household tasks

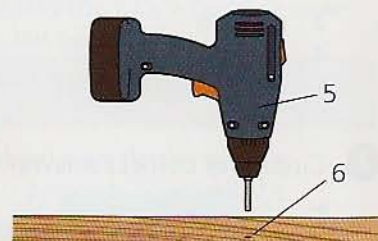
### A Using tools and household objects



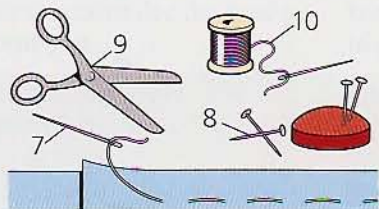
You use a **hammer**<sup>1</sup> to **bang** a **nail**<sup>2</sup> into a piece of wood.



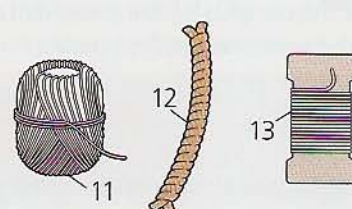
You use a **screwdriver**<sup>3</sup> to **tighten** or **loosen** a **screw**<sup>4</sup>.



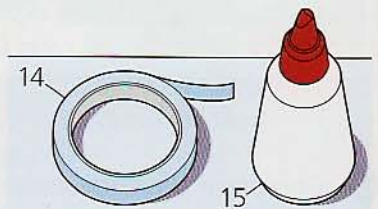
You use a **drill**<sup>5</sup> to make a **hole**<sup>6</sup>. A hammer, a screwdriver, and a drill are **tools**.



You use a **needle**<sup>7</sup>, **pins**<sup>8</sup>, **scissors**<sup>9</sup>, and **cotton/thread**<sup>10</sup> when you're **sewing**.



You use **string**<sup>11</sup>, **rope**<sup>12</sup>, or **wire**<sup>13</sup> to **tie** things together.



You use <sup>TM</sup>**Sellotape**<sup>14</sup> or **glue**<sup>15</sup> to **stick** things **together**.

#### 1 Circle the correct word.

- Stick it together with glue/cotton.
- 1 Sew it with a pin/needle.
- 2 Cut it with scissors/a drill.
- 3 Tighten it with a hammer/screwdriver.
- 4 Tie it together with rope/nails.
- 5 Bang it in with string/a hammer.
- 6 Make a hole with thread/a drill.
- 7 Stick it together with Sellotape/wire.
- 8 Loosen the screw/cotton.

#### spotlight Nouns

Cotton, thread, string, rope, wire, Sellotape, and glue are all uncountable nouns. Scissors is a plural noun.

Where's the **string**? I need some **glue**.  
Where **are** the **scissors**?

#### 2 Complete the sentences.

- She didn't have any string, so she stuck the parcel together with Sellotape.
- 1 I've got a hammer and a screwdriver, but I haven't got any other .....
- 2 When you make a skirt, you cut the fabric with ....., you hold the pieces together with pins, and then you ..... it with a needle and .....
- 3 If you break the handle off a cup, you can ..... it on with .....
- 4 I tied all the keys together with a piece of .....
- 5 If the screws on your door handle are loose, use a ..... to ..... them.
- 6 A drill is very useful if you need to make a ..... in a wall.
- 7 Pass the hammer and I can bang in this .....
- 8 We ..... a long rope to the tree for the children to play on.

#### 3 Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Can you remember the sentences?

## B Common problems

Our flat: things to do

- The lamp isn't working. Try changing the light bulb.
- The radiator's leaking. We'll have to repair it.
- The window's cracked. It needs replacing.
- The TV isn't working properly.
- The radio is faulty.
- The bedroom needs decorating.
- There's something wrong with the door. It keeps sticking.
- The lift's out of order. I hope they fix it soon.
- There's a stain on the carpet which we need to remove.

### MEANING

If sth **isn't working**, it isn't functioning or it's broken.

**leak** allow liquid or gas to go through a hole or crack. **leak** N.

**cracked** (see picture)

**replace** sth exchange sth for sth that is better or newer.

**properly** correctly or well.

**faulty** not working well; only working sometimes.

**decorate** a room put paint or paper on the walls.

**wrong** causing problems or difficulties.

**stick** be in one position and difficult to move.

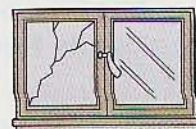
**out of order** If a machine or piece of equipment in a public place is **out of order**, it isn't working.

**stain** N, v (see picture)

**remove** sth take sth away.



light bulb



cracked window



stain

### Spotlight **repair, fix, or mend sth**

**Repair sth, fix sth, and mend sth** all mean 'put sth right that is broken or damaged'.

Can you **repair/fix** the fridge? It took ages to **repair/mend** the roof.

We use **mend** and **repair**, rather than **fix**, to talk about repairing clothes.

I **mended** the hole in my pocket. I must get my shoes **repaired**.

### 4 Tick (✓) the words which are possible.

- My shoe has a hole in it. Can you **repair** ☒ **mend** ☒ **remove** ☐ it for me?
- 1 This table's broken. We need to **decorate** ☐ **fix** ☐ **repair** ☐ it.
- 2 Is the bedroom lamp OK? ~ No, it's **faulty** ☐ **out of order** ☐ **not working** ☐.
- 3 We're going to **remove** ☐ **replace** ☐ **decorate** ☐ the fridge.
- 4 We need a new **lamp** ☐ **stain** ☐ **light bulb** ☐.
- 5 The public phone **is out of order** ☐ **is wrong** ☐ **isn't working properly** ☐.
- 6 The radiator is **leaking** ☐ **faulty** ☐ **sticking** ☐.

### 5 Complete the text.

The house was in a terrible condition. The rain had come into all the bedrooms because the roof was ► leaking, and there were (1) s\_\_\_\_\_ on the walls and carpets. A builder (2) f\_\_\_\_\_ the roof for us, and after that, we had to (3) d\_\_\_\_\_ all the bedrooms. We also had to (4) r\_\_\_\_\_ several windows that were (5) c\_\_\_\_\_. Then we realized that the central heating wasn't (6) w\_\_\_\_\_, and it cost a lot to have it (7) r\_\_\_\_\_. The bathroom was a problem too: the shower didn't work (8) p\_\_\_\_\_ – some days the water was hot, others it was freezing, and the taps were (9) l\_\_\_\_\_ too. The previous owners had left two old cars in the garden and we had to pay someone to (10) r\_\_\_\_\_ them. It was all so expensive.

### 6 Test yourself. Look at the text, and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

## 27 I can describe housework

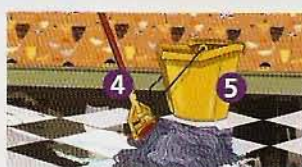
### Mrs Bristow's Handy Housework Routine

#### Daily tasks

Make the beds and **do the washing up**. Clean the bathroom and kitchen. **Wipe** all surfaces with a soapy **cloth**<sup>1</sup> to remove **grease**. **Tidy up** and **throw away**<sup>2</sup> any rubbish.

#### Weekly tasks

Using a **broom**<sup>3</sup>, **sweep** the area outside your front door to remove **mud** and general **dirt**. Wash the floors with a **mop**<sup>4</sup> and **bucket**<sup>5</sup> and warm, soapy water. **Vacuum**<sup>6</sup> the carpets, and then **dust** or **polish** the furniture. Wipe the inside of the fridge.



### 1 Write the missing parts of speech.

- dirty ADJ dirt N
- 1 dusty ADJ \_\_\_\_\_ N
- 2 mud N \_\_\_\_\_ ADJ
- 3 greasy ADJ \_\_\_\_\_ N
- 4 vacuum cleaner N \_\_\_\_\_ V

### 2 Complete the phrases.

- Do the daily tasks .
- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ the floor to remove mud and dirt.
- 2 Use a \_\_\_\_\_ to Hoover the carpet.
- 3 Tidy \_\_\_\_\_ the kitchen every day.
- 4 Remove grease with a soapy \_\_\_\_\_ .
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ the washing up.
- 6 Use a \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ to wash the floor.
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ the furniture once a week.
- 8 Use a cloth to \_\_\_\_\_ the kitchen surfaces.
- 9 Use a broom to \_\_\_\_\_ the floor.
- 10 \_\_\_\_\_ away any rubbish.

### 3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Look again at Mrs Bristow's tasks. In your home, which do you do?
- 2 Which tasks does someone else do in your home?

### Glossary

**task** a piece of work you must do.

**do the washing up** wash dishes, plates, glasses, etc. after a meal.

**wipe sth** clean or dry sth with a cloth.

**grease** oil or fat that comes from cooking.  
**greasy** ADJ.

**tidy (up)** make a place look better by putting things in the correct place.

**sweep sth** remove dirt from the floor or ground with a **broom**<sup>3</sup>.

**mud** soft, wet earth. (If you walk in a field after rain, your shoes will be **muddy** ADJ.)

**dirt** a substance that isn't clean (e.g. mud).  
**dirty** ADJ.

**vacuum sth** clean a carpet or floor using a **vacuum cleaner**<sup>6</sup>. SYN **hoover** V.

**dust sth** remove very small pieces of dry dirt (**dust** N) from sth. **dusty** ADJ.

**polish sth** make sth shine by rubbing it with a cream or liquid (**polish** N).

## 28 I can talk to a hairdresser 🎧

I'd like to **have** my hair **cut** / **have a haircut**.

I'm **letting** it grow long, so just **trim** it / **give it a trim**, please. I'd like to **keep** the **fringe**<sup>1</sup> and the **parting**<sup>2</sup> on the left.



What would you like?

I want to keep the same **hairstyle**, please. I'd like a **cut and blow-dry** (= dry with a **hairdryer**).

**hairdryer**



I want to have it **permed** / I'd like a **perm**, please.



Could you **colour** it for me, please?



### spotlight have/get sth done

If you **have sth done** or **get sth done**, you pay sb to do sth for you. Compare:

*I have my hair cut every month. (I go to the hairdresser's.)*

*I colour my hair every month. (I do it myself.)*

### Glossary

**let** allow sth to happen without trying to stop it.

**trim sth** cut sth a little so that it is shorter and tidier. SYN **give sth a trim**. trim N.

**keep sth** make sth stay in a particular state or condition and not change.

**hairstyle** the way your hair is cut and arranged.

### 1 Complete the words.

▶ h a i r c u t

3 h \_ \_ \_ r s t \_ \_ \_ e

6 t \_ \_ \_ m

1 f r \_ \_ \_ e

4 h \_ \_ \_ r d \_ \_ \_ r

7 c \_ \_ l \_ \_ \_ r

2 s \_ \_ \_ s s \_ \_ r \_ \_

5 p \_ \_ \_ t \_ \_ n g

8 b l \_ \_ w - d r \_ \_

### 2 Put the words in order, and add one more word.

▶ going / I'm / hair / to / cut / have I'm going to have my hair cut.

1 could / colour / you / me / for / please? \_\_\_\_\_

2 Sasha / her / letting / is / hair \_\_\_\_\_

3 fringe / like / a / parting / I'd / and / a / right / the \_\_\_\_\_

4 please / blow-dry / like / a / and / I'd \_\_\_\_\_

5 want / please / hairstyle / same / I / to / the \_\_\_\_\_

6 to / she's / her / trimmed / going / hair \_\_\_\_\_

### 3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 Are you letting your hair grow at the moment? \_\_\_\_\_

2 When did you last have your hair cut? \_\_\_\_\_

3 Have you got a fringe or a parting? \_\_\_\_\_

4 Where do you get your hair cut? \_\_\_\_\_

5 In your family, who has their hair permed or coloured? \_\_\_\_\_

### 4 Look at the pictures and cover the words. Can you remember the requests?



## Review: Getting things done

### Unit 24

1 Read the dentist's questions and statements. One word is missing in each one. Where from? Write it at the end.

- How long have you /toothache? had
- 1 Is it when you bite? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 I will probably have to the tooth out. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 This is the tooth which is the pain. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 When did you last a check-up? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Can you come back to the tomorrow? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Just ask the receptionist to make an for you. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 There's a hole in this tooth – you need a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 I'm going to your teeth and then decide what you need. \_\_\_\_\_

### Unit 25

1 Which words are being defined?

- a person who knows a lot about a subject specialist
- 1 give someone medical help to make them better \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 worried about someone or something \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 a doctor who operates on you \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 another word for 'immediately' \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 something that has a good or helpful result \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 look after someone, especially if they are ill \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 become well after you have been ill \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 a person who is ill and having medical treatment \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 the place in a hospital where sick people stay \_\_\_\_\_
- 10 a danger that something bad could happen \_\_\_\_\_

### Unit 26

1 Complete the sentences with suitable words.

- I'm going to decorate the bedroom. Sandro doesn't like the colour of the walls.
- 1 There's a \_\_\_\_\_ on the carpet. Do you know how to \_\_\_\_\_ it?
- 2 Did you know the lift was \_\_\_\_\_ order? ~ Yes, but someone is going to \_\_\_\_\_ it later today.
- 3 I'm afraid this radiator is \_\_\_\_\_; there's water on the carpet.
- 4 I've got a hole in my pocket. Could you \_\_\_\_\_ it for me, please?
- 5 This lamp isn't \_\_\_\_\_. Have we got any light \_\_\_\_\_?
- 6 I'm afraid there's something \_\_\_\_\_ the front door. We may have to get someone to \_\_\_\_\_ it.



## 2 Which word is being described? Write it at the end.

- You use one when you're sewing. needle
- 1 You use one to bang a nail in the wall. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 You use one to make a hole in the wall. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 You use one to tighten a screw. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 You use them to cut things. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 5 You use it to tie a boat to a wall. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 6 You use it to tie some sticks together. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 7 You use it to stick a broken bowl together. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 8 You use it to wrap a parcel. \_\_\_\_\_

## Unit 27

### 1 Complete the sentences.

#### Mr Bristow's Handy Housework excuses

- I couldn't do the washing up because there was no hot water.
- 1 I couldn't sweep the floor because I couldn't find the \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 2 I couldn't wash the floor because there was a mop but no \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 3 I couldn't Hoover the carpets because the \_\_\_\_\_ wasn't working.
  - 4 I couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ away the rubbish because the bins were all full.
  - 5 I couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ the furniture because the cloth was dirty.
  - 6 And I didn't \_\_\_\_\_ the surfaces because they all looked clean to me, anyway.

## Unit 28

### 1 There is a mistake in each sentence. Write the correct sentence at the end.

- I like your new style of hair. I like your new hairstyle.
- 1 I made my hair cut last week. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 I just want trim, please. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 I'd like a cutting and blow-dry, please. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 Are you leaving your hair grow? \_\_\_\_\_
  - 5 Can you pass me the scissor? \_\_\_\_\_
  - 6 She's got a parted on the left. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 7 I'm having my hair colour tomorrow. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 8 Can I borrow your hairdry? \_\_\_\_\_

## 29 I can describe urban life

### A The inner city

I parked in the **multi-storey car park** and went the rest of the way on foot. The street lights had just come on, and I could see the **pavements** were **filthy**. At the entrance to the **subway**, there was an old guy **begging** for money. I gave him something and **hurried** on down. There was the usual **graffiti** all over the walls, and **litter** everywhere. I came up the other side and passed a man who was **whistling** quite cheerfully, but I found this part of the **inner city** so **depressing** that I **wondered** if my decision to walk had been a good idea.

#### Glossary

<b>multi-storey car park</b>	• a large car park with several floors.
<b>pavement</b>	• the part of the road where people walk.
<b>filthy</b>	• very dirty.
<b>subway</b>	• a tunnel that goes under a road or railway so people can walk to the other side.
<b>beg</b>	• ask for food or money.
<b>hurry</b>	• move or do sth quickly. SYN <b>rush</b> .
<b>graffiti</b>	• pictures or writing on a wall in a public place (often humorous or political).
<b>litter</b>	• paper and rubbish that is dropped and left on the ground in a public place.
<b>whistle</b>	• make a musical sound with your lips nearly closed.
<b>inner city</b>	• the part of a large city which is near the centre and often poor.
<b>depressing</b>	• making you feel sad and without hope.
<b>wonder</b>	• ask yourself questions about sth.

#### 1 Correct the spelling mistakes.

► hurry hurry

1 filthy \_\_\_\_\_

2 liter \_\_\_\_\_

3 pavment \_\_\_\_\_

4 whisle \_\_\_\_\_

5 grafiti \_\_\_\_\_

6 deppresing \_\_\_\_\_

#### 2 Complete the definitions.

► inner city = poor parts of a city, near the centre

1 filthy = very \_\_\_\_\_

2 rush = move or do something \_\_\_\_\_

3 pavement = place where people \_\_\_\_\_

4 litter = paper dropped on the \_\_\_\_\_

5 multi-storey = with several \_\_\_\_\_

6 beg = ask for \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_

7 whistle = make a sound with your \_\_\_\_\_ nearly closed

8 graffiti = \_\_\_\_\_ on a wall in a public place

#### 3 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

► My dog comes back to me when I whistle.

1 I hate people who drop \_\_\_\_\_ in the street. Why can't they put it in a bin?

2 It's a dangerous road, so use the \_\_\_\_\_ to get to the other side.

3 Leila says that someone in our class is getting married. I \_\_\_\_\_ who it is.

4 You've got lots of time – you don't need to \_\_\_\_\_ to get the train.

5 Two men were cleaning the \_\_\_\_\_ off the walls in the subway.

6 The street was filthy and it was pouring with rain. It was very \_\_\_\_\_.

#### 4 Test yourself. Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. Can you remember the words?



## B In a suburb

The **area** where I live is **ideal**. It's a **suburb** not far from the centre and it's quite **lively**, but there's still a feeling of **space**, and my block of flats is **surrounded by** trees. It's also a **handy** place to live because there are good **local** shops, and a bus service that gets me into the centre in 15 to 20 minutes. The only **disadvantage** is that with the **growth** in the population, it's gradually becoming more **built-up** than it used to be, which is **a shame**.



### spotlight **area, region, district, part**

The word **area** can be used for part of a town, country, or the world. A **region** is part of a country or the world, e.g. *a desert region*. A **district** is part of a town or country, often with special qualities, e.g. *the financial district*. A **part** is often used when we are talking about a town, e.g. *a lovely part of the city*.

### Glossary

**suburb** an area outside the centre of a town, where a lot of people live.

**ideal** perfect; the best possible.

**lively** full of interest, and with things to do.

**space** a place or area that is empty and not used.

**surrounded by sth** If a building is **surrounded by sth**, that thing is all around it.

**handy** INF located near to things you need. SYN **convenient**.

**local** located in the area where you live.

**disadvantage** a situation or thing that is not good or causes problems. SYN **drawback**.

OPP **advantage**.

**growth** an increase in size or number.

**built-up** with a lot of buildings.

**a shame** a fact or situation that makes you feel disappointed. SYN **a pity**.

### 5 Same or different? Write S or D.

► One of the **suburbs/areas** outside the centre. S

1 The **ideal/perfect** place to live. \_\_\_\_\_

2 A mountainous **area/region**. \_\_\_\_\_

3 We need more **growth/space**. \_\_\_\_\_

4 It was a **pity/shame**. \_\_\_\_\_

5 A **handy/lively** area. \_\_\_\_\_

6 It's a commercial **district/area**. \_\_\_\_\_

7 It's a real **disadvantage/drawback**. \_\_\_\_\_

8 It's a large **space/suburb**. \_\_\_\_\_

### 6 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

► There used to be lots of space, but now it's a really **built-up** area.

1 I live in a \_\_\_\_\_ about two kilometres from the centre.

2 Unfortunately, the whole area is \_\_\_\_\_ by factories, which is a \_\_\_\_\_.

3 There are a few \_\_\_\_\_ shops just round the corner.

4 It's very \_\_\_\_\_ because it's close to my children's school and the place where I work.

5 It's a nice area with great shops; the only \_\_\_\_\_ is that the bus service is terrible.

6 We've found our \_\_\_\_\_ house: it has absolutely everything we want.

### 7 ABOUT YOUR AREA Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 Is your area built-up, or is there a feeling of space? \_\_\_\_\_

2 What is your home surrounded by? \_\_\_\_\_

3 What local shops do you have? \_\_\_\_\_

4 Is it a handy place to live for you? \_\_\_\_\_

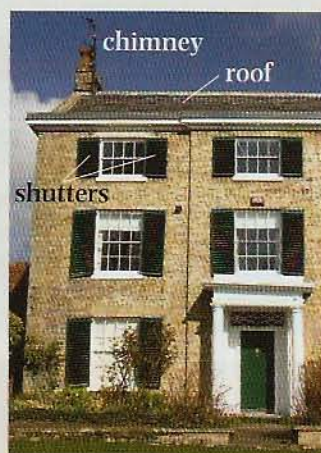
5 What are the disadvantages? \_\_\_\_\_

## 30 I can describe parts of a building 🎧

A **substantial** and **impressive** **semi-detached** house full of **original features**, and just a short walk from the town centre.

Inside, the **hall** **leads** to two **spacious** reception rooms and an **enormous** kitchen. Upstairs there are four bedrooms and two bathrooms on the first and second floors, with a narrow **staircase** to a further bedroom in the **attic**. There is also a **basement** which could be **converted** into a **separate** one-bedroom flat, and a **cellar** **currently** used to **store** things.

Outside, the house has pretty **shutters** either side of the front windows. There is a **lawn** at the front, and a **drive** provides plenty of parking. There is also a small **walled** garden at the back.



### Glossary

<b>substantial</b>	• large and/or strong.
<b>impressive</b>	• (of a building) large and very good to look at.
<b>semi-detached</b>	• joined to one other house, forming a pair of houses.
<b>original</b>	• existing from the time when sth was first made or done.
<b>feature</b>	• an important part of sth, and often a part that you notice.
<b>lead</b>	• If sth <b>leads</b> to a place, you can go along it to that place.
<b>spacious</b>	• large, and having a lot of space.
<b>enormous</b>	• very large. SYN <b>huge</b> . OPP <b>tiny</b> .
<b>staircase</b>	• a set of stairs.
<b>attic</b>	• the space or room under the roof of a house.
<b>basement</b>	• a room or part of a building that is partly or completely below ground level.
<b>convert sth into sth</b>	• change sth from one form or use to another.
<b>separate</b>	• not connected or together.
<b>cellar</b>	• an underground room without windows, where things are often kept.
<b>currently</b>	• at the moment (NOT <b>actually</b> ).
<b>store sth</b>	• keep sth in a place for future use. <b>storage</b> N.
<b>lawn</b>	• an area of grass in a park or garden.
<b>drive</b>	• a wide path for cars that leads to the front door of a house.
<b>walled</b>	• If a garden or other area is <b>walled</b> , it has a <b>wall</b> around it (a wall is usually made of <b>brick</b> <sup>1</sup> or <b>stone</b> <sup>2</sup> ).

### spotlight *passage, corridor, hall*

A **passage** is a long, narrow way with walls on both sides that leads somewhere, e.g. *an underground passage*.

A **corridor** is a passage in a large building or on a train. A **hall** is a room or small passage just inside the entrance to a house.



### 1 Correct the spelling mistakes.

- |                             |                  |                   |
|-----------------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| ▶ starcase <u>staircase</u> | 3 seperate _____ | 6 spaceious _____ |
| 1 impresive _____           | 4 attick _____   | 7 currantly _____ |
| 2 kellar _____              | 5 basemant _____ | 8 featur _____    |

**2 Circle the correct word.**

- The flat is substantial / impressive, but not very attractive.
- I'm on the ground floor and my sister lives downstairs in the cellar / basement.
  - There were no seats on the train, so I had to stand in the hall / corridor.
  - There's a very wide hall / corridor in our flat.
  - He parked his car in the attic / drive.
  - Just after the newsagent's, there's a little passage / hall that leads to the High Street.
  - We've got a small field / lawn in the garden where we sit in the summer.

**3 Replace the underlined word or phrase with a word or phrase that has the same meaning.**

- There's a large living room. spacious
- The living room is absolutely huge.
  - Where do you keep your garden furniture in the winter?
  - They've got a very small garden.
  - There's a very elegant set of stairs up to the first floor.
  - The back door goes into the garden.
  - We could change that room into a bathroom.

**4 Complete the words in the text.**

My brother has just bought a very ► substantial six-bedroom house. It's a 1930s semi-  
 (1) d \_\_\_\_\_ house, and (2) c \_\_\_\_\_ it is in terrible condition, but it will be very nice  
 when he has done some work on it. As you approach it, there's a long (3) d \_\_\_\_\_ up to the  
 front door, with enough space for about three cars. Inside, the hall (4) l \_\_\_\_\_ to the living  
 room, dining room, and kitchen, and from the kitchen there are stairs down to a (5) c \_\_\_\_\_  
 where they plan to (6) s \_\_\_\_\_ wine and other things. At the back there's a (7) h \_\_\_\_\_  
 garden, big enough for a football pitch, and around the garden there's a high stone  
 (8) w \_\_\_\_\_. There are two garages, and they might (9) \_\_\_\_\_ one into a study.

**5 Complete the sentences.**

- At the back, there's a garden with a huge lawn.
- One of the main \_\_\_\_\_ of the building is the beautiful windows.
  - Can you see the smoke coming out of the \_\_\_\_\_?
  - It's an old house and it still has the \_\_\_\_\_ windows and fireplaces.
  - There's a big cupboard in the hall which is useful for \_\_\_\_\_.
  - I need about 100 \_\_\_\_\_ to finish the low wall at the front.
  - I'll have to go up on the \_\_\_\_\_ to repair the chimney.

**6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.**

- Have you got shutters at your windows? If so, are they on the outside or inside? \_\_\_\_\_
- Have you got a garden with a lawn? If so, what do you use it for? \_\_\_\_\_
- Is there an attic in your building? If so, what's in it? \_\_\_\_\_
- Have you got a basement or cellar? If so, what are they used for? \_\_\_\_\_
- Is there a drive outside your building? \_\_\_\_\_
- Would you describe any rooms in your home as spacious or tiny? \_\_\_\_\_

**7 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?**

## 31 I can describe objects

### A What's it made of? 🎧



a **rubber** tyre



a **woollen** blanket /  
a blanket made of **wool**



**plastic** toys



a **metal** ladder



a **wax** candle



a **silver** candlestick



a **gold** medal



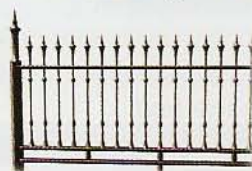
a **cardboard** box



a **steel** pipe



a **concrete** bridge



**iron** railings



a **wooden** fence /  
a fence made of **wood**

#### 1 Circle the most logical word.

- a table made of wood/wool
- 1 a rubber boot/book
- 2 a concrete/cardboard wall
- 3 a rubber ladder/tyre
- 4 a wooden/woollen sweater
- 5 a wooden/silver fence
- 6 a silver/woollen medal
- 7 a wax/wooden candlestick
- 8 a plastic/concrete toy
- 9 wax/gold earrings
- 10 a plastic blanket/pipe
- 11 concrete/metal railings

#### spotlight Noun + noun













Sometimes we use a noun with another noun to say what things are made of, what they are for, etc. A **rubber tyre** is a tyre made of rubber; a **letter box** is a box for letters.

#### 2 Complete the sentences.

- A sweater is often made of wool.
- 1 Jewellery is usually made of s\_\_\_\_\_ or g\_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 Toys are usually made of w\_\_\_\_\_ or p\_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Bathroom and kitchen pipes are usually made of p\_\_\_\_\_ or m\_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 A ladder is usually made of w\_\_\_\_\_ or m\_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 A box can be made of p\_\_\_\_\_, w\_\_\_\_\_, or c\_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 A bridge can be made of i\_\_\_\_\_, s\_\_\_\_\_, or c\_\_\_\_\_.

#### 3 Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Can you remember the words?

## B Shapes and lines

Shapes	Noun	Adjective	Lines	Adjective
	circle	round, circular		straight
	square	square		curved
	rectangle	rectangular		parallel
	triangle	triangular		vertical
	oval	oval		horizontal
	point	pointed		diagonal

### 4 Complete the words.

- straight
- |               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| 1 poin_____   | 8 cir_____        |
| 2 L-sha_____  | 9 trian_____      |
| 3 cur_____    | 10 horizon_____   |
| 4 rectan_____ | 11 squ_____       |
| 5 verti_____  | 12 paral_____     |
| 6 circu_____  | 13 diam_____      |
| 7 ro_____     | 14 s_____ -shaped |

### spotlight shape, -shaped

You can describe the shape of things using **shape** or **-shaped**:

a card **in the shape of** a heart

a swimming pool **in the shape of** a leaf

an **L-shaped** room = a room **in the shape of** the letter L

a **diamond-shaped** buckle

a **star-shaped** button



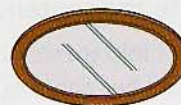
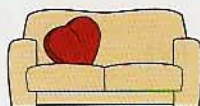
### 5 Complete the sentences below with words from the box.

square round oval triangular curved diagonal ✓ rectangular straight pointed

- |   |                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| ► A <u>diagonal</u> line connects opposite corners in a square. | 4 The box your CD comes in is _____. |
| 1 An egg is _____.  | 5 A shape with three sides is _____. |
| 2 A computer screen is usually _____.                           | 6 A knife is _____ at the end.       |
| 3 A DVD is _____.   | 7 A ball has a _____ surface.        |
|   | 8 A ruler is _____, not curved.      |

### 6 What can you see in the pictures?

- a heart-shaped cushion /  
a cushion in the shape of a heart



1 \_\_\_\_\_

3 \_\_\_\_\_

5 \_\_\_\_\_



2 \_\_\_\_\_

4 \_\_\_\_\_

6 \_\_\_\_\_

Test yourself. Look at the pictures and lines in the table and cover the words.  
Say the words.



## 32 I can describe the senses

### A Seeing and hearing

Example	Meaning
Look <sup>1</sup> carefully, and you <b>can see</b> the bridge over the river. From here it <b>looks</b> <sup>2</sup> very small.	<b>look</b> <sup>1</sup> turn your eyes to sth and pay attention to it. <b>see</b> know or notice sth using your eyes. <b>look</b> <sup>2</sup> seem from what you can see.
We <b>watched</b> TV for an hour.	<b>watch sth</b> look at sth for some time to see what happens.
He <b>appears</b> <sup>1</sup> to be very happy. A dog <b>appeared</b> <sup>2</sup> from behind a tree.	<b>appear</b> <sup>1</sup> seem. <b>appear</b> <sup>2</sup> If sth <b>appears</b> , you suddenly begin to see it. OPP <b>disappear</b> .
The children <b>stared at</b> the man with the long red hair.	<b>stare at sb/sth</b> look at sb/sth for a long time without moving your eyes.
Jay always <b>notices</b> what I'm wearing. He's very <b>observant</b> .	<b>notice sth</b> see sth and be aware of it. <b>observant</b> good at noticing things.
He <b>glanced at</b> me and smiled.	<b>glance at sb/sth</b> look quickly at sb/sth.
A I <b>can hear</b> something. B It <b>sounds like</b> a child crying.	<b>hear sth</b> receive sounds with your ears without trying. <b>sound like sth</b> make a noise that is like sth.
She <b>listens</b> to the radio a lot.	<b>listen</b> pay attention to sth you hear, often for a long time.
I <b>overheard</b> them in the bank.	<b>overhear sb</b> hear other people's conversation by accident.
I'm sorry, I didn't quite <b>catch</b> what you said.	<b>catch sth</b> hear or understand what sb is saying; usually used when you <i>don't</i> hear or understand sth.

#### spotlight **can + sense verbs**

We don't use **see, hear, smell, or taste** in the continuous tenses; we often use **can** (as in the examples above).  
*I can see two boats in this photo. (NOT ~~I see~~ or ~~I'm seeing~~ two boats.)*

#### 1 Circle the correct answer.

- Can you hear/listen to that noise?                      5 I glanced at/stared Julia.
- 1 Did you notice/watch the colour of her eyes?            6 I see/can see something in your eye.
- 2 I can't see/look at anything from here.                    7 I overheard/caught a funny story on the bus.
- 3 Don't look/watch behind you.                                8 What can you listen/hear?
- 4 How long did you see/watch TV for?


#### 2 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- When I told them, I noticed that they both looked very surprised.
- 1 She said her name but I'm afraid I didn't \_\_\_\_\_ what it was.
- 2 I \_\_\_\_\_ hear a bird singing. It \_\_\_\_\_ like a blackbird.
- 3 Why is that man \_\_\_\_\_ at me? Have I done something wrong?
- 4 I spoke to him about the exam. He doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ to be nervous.
- 5 Did you see Nadia last night? I thought she \_\_\_\_\_ ill.
- 6 I \_\_\_\_\_ at my watch and realized it was time to go.
- 7 Sally always notices if I change my hairstyle. She's very \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 A minute ago she was here, then she \_\_\_\_\_. I don't know where she is now.

#### 3 Test yourself. Look at the examples and cover the meanings. What do the words in bold mean?



## B Smelling, tasting, and touching

Word	Example	Meaning
smell sth	I can <b>smell</b> lunch ...	notice or recognize sth using your nose.
smell like sth	... it <b>smells like</b> fish.	have a smell like the smell of sth / sth else.
stink <small>INF</small>	This towel <b>stinks</b> . I must wash it.	have a horrible smell.
flavour	They sell 30 <b>flavours</b> of ice cream.	the sensation of sth in your mouth (e.g. a chocolate/strawberry <b>flavour</b> ).
taste	Try this wine. It <b>tastes</b> very strange.	have a particular flavour.
salty	The soup is very <b>salty</b> .	having the taste of or containing a lot of salt.
bland	This cheese is quite <b>bland</b> .	without much flavour.
touch sth	When I <b>touched</b> the back wall ...	put your fingers on sth.
feel feel like sth	... it <b>felt</b> a bit <b>damp</b> (= a little wet).	give a sensation of or like sth when touched (e.g. <i>it feels hot, it feels like wood</i> ).
press sth	If you <b>press</b> that button, you get a ticket.	put your hand or finger on sth firmly. 
grab sth	He <b>grabbed</b> my mobile and ran off.	take sth with a sudden movement.
tap sb/sth	Someone <b>tapped</b> me on the arm.	touch sb/sth quickly with your hands or feet.
rub sth	I <b>rubbed</b> the book with a soft cloth to get the dirt off.	move your hand firmly backwards and forwards over the surface of sth.

### 4 Replace the underlined phrase with a single word that has the same meaning.

- Most cities such as London have a traffic problem. like
- This blanket has a horrible smell.
  - My towel still feels a little wet.
  - The soup is without much flavour.
  - The film was similar to his others.
  - I put my hand on the radiator and it felt cold.
  - She moved her hand firmly over her leg.

### spotlight like

**Like** can mean 'similar to' and it can mean 'such as':

*This flower smells **like** honey.*  
(The flower has a smell similar to that of honey.)

*Some people **like** Maggie live alone.* (Maggie is one example.)

### 5 Complete the sentences.

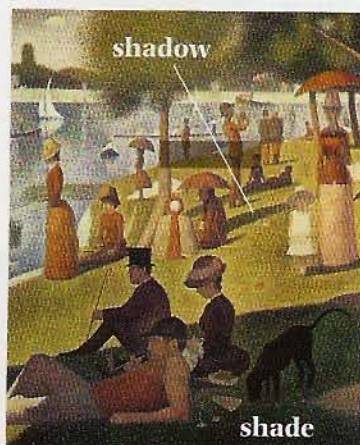
- You don't need salt. It's already very salty.
- The persimmon is a strange fruit. It looks \_\_\_\_\_ a tomato but doesn't taste \_\_\_\_\_ one.
  - They were both \_\_\_\_\_ their feet to the music.
  - \_\_\_\_\_ the button if you want the receptionist to come.
  - Be careful – don't \_\_\_\_\_ the door. The paint is still wet.
  - He \_\_\_\_\_ me on the shoulder and asked me to move my head.
  - The policeman \_\_\_\_\_ the thief's arm and pushed him to the ground.
  - When I came downstairs, I could \_\_\_\_\_ the steak frying; it was wonderful.
  - You had ice cream, didn't you? What \_\_\_\_\_ did you have? ~ Strawberry, but it didn't \_\_\_\_\_ like strawberry.

### 6 Test yourself. Cover the examples and meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?

## 33 I can describe a painting 🎧

This **painting**, *Bathers at Asnières* by Georges Seurat, **illustrates** a typical **scene** of 19th-century **leisure** and the developing **industry** in this suburb of Paris.

**In the foreground**<sup>1</sup> a group of workmen are relaxing by the river; **in the distance** you can **just** see the factory where they probably work. Everyone is looking out at the river and **ignoring** each other, **even** the little dog in the **bottom left-hand corner**<sup>2</sup>. We can **sense** the **warmth** of the summer's day in the **bright** sunlight, light colours, and **shadows**.



- 1 (in) the foreground **OPP** background
- 2 (in) the bottom left-hand corner
- 3 (in) the top right-hand corner

- 4 (on) the left-hand side
- 5 (on) the right-hand side
- 6 (in) the centre/middle (of) the picture

### Glossary

<b>illustrate sth</b>	• explain sth in a picture or diagram. <b>illustration</b> N.
<b>scene</b>	• a view you can see in a picture or from the place where you are.
<b>leisure</b>	• time when you do not have to work.
<b>industry</b>	• the production of goods in factories. <b>industrial</b> ADJ.
<b>in the distance</b>	• far away from you.
<b>just</b>	• If you can <b>just</b> see sth, you can only see it with difficulty.
<b>ignore sb/sth</b>	• pay no attention to sb/sth.
<b>even</b>	• used for emphasizing sth that is surprising.
<b>sense sth</b>	• get a feeling about sth that you can't directly see or hear.
<b>warmth</b>	• a pleasant heat.
<b>bright</b>	• having a lot of light. <b>OPP</b> dark. <b>brightness</b> N.

### spotlight **painting and drawing**

*Bathers at Asnières* is a **painting**. Seurat was a **painter** or **artist** (**artist** is a more general word).  
**paint** v.

A **drawing** is a picture made with a pencil or pen, but not paint.  
**draw** v.

*I **paint** a lot of portraits.*

*I can't **draw** faces very well.*

**1** Look at the big picture on page 90. Write your answers to the questions.

- Where is the man in the red swimming costume sitting? In the middle of the picture.
- How many people are there in the foreground? \_\_\_\_\_
  - Are the boats in the foreground or the background? \_\_\_\_\_
  - Are the men sitting in the shade? \_\_\_\_\_
  - Is the dog in the bottom left-hand corner? \_\_\_\_\_
  - Can you see the dog's shadow? \_\_\_\_\_
  - Is the picture a drawing or a painting? \_\_\_\_\_
  - Where are the factories? \_\_\_\_\_
  - On which side of the picture is the boy in the river? \_\_\_\_\_
  - Are the colours dark or bright? \_\_\_\_\_
  - On which side is the man wearing the light-coloured hat? \_\_\_\_\_

**2** Cover the glossary on page 90. Complete the definitions.

- even = used to emphasize something that is surprising
- ignore = pay \_\_\_\_\_ attention to someone or something
  - leisure = time when you don't have to \_\_\_\_\_
  - sense = have a \_\_\_\_\_ about something that you can't see or hear
  - shade = a place which is \_\_\_\_\_ and cool because the sun doesn't shine there
  - scene = a view you can \_\_\_\_\_ in a picture or from the place where you are
  - bright = having a lot of \_\_\_\_\_

**3** Put the words in order. Use contractions, e.g. it's, they're.

- dog / foreground / the / in / is / the The dog's in the foreground.
- the / it / you / see / in / can / distance \_\_\_\_\_
  - bottom / the / corner / he / is / in / lying / left-hand \_\_\_\_\_
  - of / right-hand / is / on / the / it / side / the / painting? \_\_\_\_\_
  - they / the / centre / drawing / of / are / in / sitting / the \_\_\_\_\_
  - in / left-hand / some / there / corner / are / trees / top / the \_\_\_\_\_

**4** Complete the sentences with one word from each pair.

warm/warmth    bright/brightness ✓    just/even    illustrate/illustration  
industry/industrial    painter/painting    shade/shadow

- This painter often uses dark colours, not bright ones.
- He painted many \_\_\_\_\_ scenes of factories and factory workers.
  - The paintings \_\_\_\_\_ the friendship between the three women.
  - You can feel the \_\_\_\_\_ of the sun shining down on you.
  - You can see the \_\_\_\_\_ on the wall in the art gallery.
  - People go swimming in the river, \_\_\_\_\_ in winter when it is cold.
  - It's so hot! Shall we go and sit in the \_\_\_\_\_ ?

**5** ABOUT YOU Think about a painting you know and like. Write your answers, or ask another student.

- What's the name of the artist who painted it? \_\_\_\_\_
- Do you know when it was painted? \_\_\_\_\_
- What does the painting illustrate? \_\_\_\_\_
- What do you like about the painting? \_\_\_\_\_
- Do you do any painting or drawing yourself? If so, what do you do? \_\_\_\_\_



## 34 I can describe actions

### A Using your hands



Don't **squeeze** the **tube** in the middle!



She's **tearing** the letter **up**.



He **dragged** the **cabinet** across the floor.



He **knocked** on the door.



He **scratched** the **lid** of the box.



**Shake** the bottle before opening it.



The thief **smashed** the window.



She **folded** the paper **in half / in two**.



She **sprayed** the **leaves** with water.

### 1 Can you do these things? Write Yes or No.

- smash a tube of toothpaste No
- 1 fold a sheet in half \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 scratch coffee \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 drag a suitcase along a path \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 spray perfume on yourself \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 squeeze a wet jumper to get water out \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 knock on water \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 tear up a cabinet \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 shake a tin of paint \_\_\_\_\_

### 2 Complete the sentences with verbs from the box in the correct form.

spray knock ✓ scratch drag smash fold tear up shake squeeze

- I was woken up by someone knocking on my window.
- 1 The boat was incredibly heavy so we had to \_\_\_\_\_ it down the beach to the sea.
- 2 I \_\_\_\_\_ all my old bank documents and threw them away.
- 3 He \_\_\_\_\_ his scarf and put it on the table.
- 4 Don't \_\_\_\_\_ that bottle of sparkling water before you open it.
- 5 He kicked the ball hard and unfortunately \_\_\_\_\_ the neighbour's window.
- 6 You'll need to \_\_\_\_\_ about six oranges to make a glass of juice.
- 7 My little brother took a nail and \_\_\_\_\_ the side of the car. My dad was furious.
- 8 She put on her make-up and \_\_\_\_\_ perfume behind her ears.

### 3 Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Can you remember the sentences?



## B Making noises 🎧

Word	Example	Meaning
shout	Don't <b>shout</b> ! I can hear you.	speak in a loud voice.
whisper	He <b>whispered</b> 'I love you' in her ear.	speak very quietly so that other people can't hear you.
cry	The baby next door <b>cried</b> all night.	 <b>tears</b> drops of liquid that come out from your eyes when you cry.
scream	The plane dropped suddenly and we <b>screamed</b> .	cry out in a high voice because you are in pain, upset, frightened, etc.
burst into tears	He sat down and <b>burst into tears</b> .	start crying suddenly.
burst out laughing	I walked into the room and they all <b>burst out laughing</b> .	start laughing suddenly.
breathe (in/out)	<b>Breathe in</b> , count to ten, and then <b>breathe out</b> .	take air into your lungs and let it out again. <b>breath</b> N.
sigh	He sat down and <b>sighed</b> : it had been a hard decision.	let out a long deep breath that shows you are sad, bored, relieved, etc.
sneeze	I've got a terrible cold; I've been <b>sneezing</b> all day.	 <b>sneezing</b>

### spotlight **loud, out loud / aloud, silent, silence**

**Loud** means 'making a lot of noise'. OPP **silent**. **silence** N.

*The radio's too **loud**. We worked **in silence**.*

If you speak **out loud** (SYN **aloud**) you speak so that people can hear you.

*I read the letter **out loud** / **aloud** to my father.*

## 4 Complete the sentences with a suitable word or phrase.

- If you shout angrily at a child, they might cry.
- When you have a cold, you might \_\_\_\_\_ a lot.
  - If you eat onions, your \_\_\_\_\_ might smell.
  - If something is incredibly funny, you might \_\_\_\_\_.
  - If your nose is blocked, you have to \_\_\_\_\_ and out through your mouth.
  - If you don't want to be heard when you're speaking to someone, you should \_\_\_\_\_.
  - If you are very relieved that something has gone well, you might \_\_\_\_\_.
  - If you suddenly get some very sad news, you might \_\_\_\_\_.
  - If your friend isn't looking and a car is coming, you would \_\_\_\_\_ to him.
  - If all the class wanted to hear a short story you've written, you could read it \_\_\_\_\_.
  - The room was completely \_\_\_\_\_; no one said a word.
  - If you upset her, she will burst into \_\_\_\_\_.
  - You can't speak in an exam; you must work in \_\_\_\_\_.

## 5 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student. When did you last ...

- hear someone screaming? Who was it, and why? \_\_\_\_\_
- burst out laughing? Why? \_\_\_\_\_
- whisper to someone? Why? \_\_\_\_\_
- read something out loud? What was it? \_\_\_\_\_



## Review: Describing things

### Unit 29

#### 1 True or false? Write T or F.

- You have to pay to go through a subway. F
- 1 The suburbs of a city are the areas where people with very little money live. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 It's depressing if your home is surrounded by litter. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 A multi-storey car park has only one floor. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 The pavement is where people walk. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 The inner city is often quite built-up. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Having local shops near your home isn't very convenient. \_\_\_\_\_

#### 2 Complete the text.

- The district where I live now is very clean – not like the area I used to live in, which was (1) f . It's also quite (2) l because there are several cafés and restaurants round the corner, but there isn't a supermarket nearby, which is a (3) p . Not far away, there's plenty of open (4) s to go for walks, and it's also very (5) h because I'm close to the station, so I can get to work easily. Where I lived before, you used to see lots of (6) g on the subway walls, and people sitting on the pavement (7) b for money. But there is one (8) d to where I live now: my friends live in the older part of town, so I see them less often.

### Unit 30

#### 1 Write a sentence linking a word on the left with a word on the right.

windows ✓	front door
semi-detached	storage
chimney	house
cellar	garden
lawn	shutters ✓
drive	roof

- Windows may have shutters on the inside or outside.
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_

### Unit 31

#### 1 Complete the phrases with words from the box.

iron woollen wax rubber wooden gold steel ✓ concrete cardboard

- |                       |                   |                  |
|-----------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| ► a <u>steel</u> pipe | 3 a _____ candle  | 6 a _____ box    |
| 1 a _____ fence       | 4 a _____ medal   | 7 _____ railings |
| 2 a _____ tyre        | 5 a _____ blanket | 8 a _____ bridge |



## 2 Answer the questions.

- What shape is a triangle? triangular
- 1 What shape is a tyre? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 How many sides does a rectangle have? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 When people sleep are they vertical or horizontal? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 What shape has four equal sides? a \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 What kinds of lines always have the same distance between them? \_\_\_\_\_ lines
- 6 What kind of line doesn't have curves? a \_\_\_\_\_ line

## Unit 32

### 1 Match 1–8 with a–i.

- |   |               |
|---|---------------|
| ► pay attention to something you hear <u>c</u>          | a touch       |
| 1 look at something or someone quickly _____            | b stare at    |
| 2 notice something using your nose _____                | c listen to ✓ |
| 3 put your hands or fingers on something _____          | d tap         |
| 4 touch something quickly with your hands or feet _____ | e overhear    |
| 5 have a particular flavour _____                       | f smell       |
| 6 look at something or someone for a long time _____    | g taste       |
| 7 become impossible to see or find _____                | h glance at   |
| 8 hear someone's conversation by accident _____         | i disappear   |

## Unit 33

### 1 Complete the text with the words from the box in the correct form.

distance scene painting ✓ shade artist ignore hand foreground just

The ► painting by a French (1) \_\_\_\_\_ illustrates a (2) \_\_\_\_\_ of peace and happiness. There is a mother playing with her small daughter in the (3) \_\_\_\_\_, and in the background an older woman is watching them. Behind her, you can (4) \_\_\_\_\_ see one side of a garden gate, and in the (5) \_\_\_\_\_ an old house, perhaps where they all live. It's obviously a warm day, but they are playing in the (6) \_\_\_\_\_, to protect the small child from the hot sun. Finally, in the bottom (7) right-\_\_\_\_\_ corner of the painting, there is a man. He's (8) \_\_\_\_\_ the mother and daughter, and seems much more interested in what is happening on his right – but that is outside the picture, so we'll never know what fascinates him.

## Unit 34

### 1 One word is wrong in each line. Cross it out and write the correct one at the end.

- Did you hear someone ~~stream~~? scream
- 1 The police had to stash the door open. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Don't bear up that paper – we can use it again. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 If you sold that in two, you can put it in this envelope. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 He strayed us with water. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 The little girl was frying because her dog had disappeared. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 He burnt into tears for no reason at all. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 She signed noisily and left the room. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 Don't snake that – it might explode! \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 I saw her bragging an enormous box along the street. \_\_\_\_\_



## 35 I can talk about crime

### A What is crime?

**Crime** is activity which is **against the law**: for example, if you **steal** someone's **property**, you are **committing a crime** and **breaking the law**. Some offences are only **minor**, e.g. **illegal** parking; but for more **serious** and especially **violent** crimes, e.g. **killing** or **attacking** someone, a person could **go to prison** for a long time.

#### spotlight **crime**

The noun **crime** can be countable and uncountable.

*There are many victims of violent **crime** (U).*

*It is a **crime** (C) to avoid paying tax.*

#### Glossary

<b>against the law</b>	• against the rules of a country. <b>SYN illegal</b> . <b>OPP legal</b>
<b>steal sth</b> <small>PT stole</small> <small>PP stolen</small>	• take sth belonging to sb else without permission.
<b>property</b>	• sth that belongs to you (e.g. a computer, jewellery).
<b>commit a crime</b>	• do sth illegal.
<b>break the law</b>	• do sth illegal/against the law. <b>OPP obey the law</b> .
<b>offence</b>	• an illegal activity. <b>SYN crime</b> . (The person is an <b>offender</b> / a <b>criminal</b> .)
<b>minor</b>	• not important. <b>OPP serious</b> .
<b>violent</b>	• using force to hurt sb physically. <b>violence</b> <small>N</small> .
<b>kill sb</b>	• make sb die.
<b>attack sb</b>	• start fighting or hurting sb.
<b>go to prison</b>	• go to a place where criminals have to stay after committing a crime. <b>SYN go to jail</b> .

- 1 Circle the verbs below. Don't circle the other words.

**offence** **minor** **kill** **violent** **law** **steal** **crime** **prison** **commit** **illegal**  
**serious** **attack** **criminal** **offend** **obey**


- 2 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

- steal | take something belonging to someone without permission S
- |                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 1 illegal   against the law .....     | 5 criminal   offender .....            |
| 2 an offence   a crime .....          | 6 commit a crime   break the law ..... |
| 3 legal   illegal .....               | 7 prison   jail .....                  |
| 4 kill someone   attack someone ..... | 8 minor crime   serious crime .....    |

- 3 Complete the sentences using a word from the box. Put the verbs in the correct form.

violent serious against break property steal jail minor violence go ✓ attack

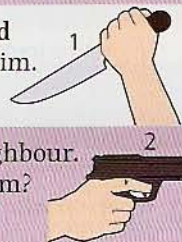
- She did something terrible, and I heard that she went to prison.
- There is a lot of ..... in the centre of town at night.
  - A group of boys ..... the man, but fortunately he wasn't badly hurt.
  - The young man ..... my bike and sold it in the market.
  - ..... was stolen from several houses in the street last night.
  - It was a very ..... crime; several people had to go to hospital.
  - He committed a ..... crime, and he'll probably go to ..... for a long time.
  - I've never ..... the law.
  - He parked in the wrong place; it was only a ..... offence, but it's still ..... the law.

- 4  Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?



## B Types of crime

Crime	The crime of ...	Verb	Criminal
<b>theft</b>	... taking something which belongs to someone else without permission.	He <b>steals</b> cars and sells them.	<b>thief</b>
<b>robbery</b>	... stealing from a person or place, often using violence.	They were planning to <b>rob</b> the bank.	<b>robber</b>
<b>burglary</b>	... entering a building illegally and stealing things from it.	They <b>broke into</b> the house and stole some jewellery.	<b>burglar</b>
<b>shoplifting</b>	... stealing things from a shop.	She <b>stole</b> a skirt from the supermarket.	<b>shoplifter</b>
<b>mugging</b>	... attacking someone in a public place in order to steal from them.	He <b>mugged</b> people for their money late at night.	<b>mugger</b>
<b>assault</b>	... hurting someone physically.	He <b>assaulted/attacked</b> a man. He <b>stabbed</b> <sup>1</sup> him.	<b>attacker</b>
<b>murder</b>	... killing someone <b>deliberately</b> (= you wanted or planned to do it)	He <b>murdered</b> his neighbour. Why did he <b>shoot</b> <sup>2</sup> him?	<b>murderer</b>



### spotlight **steal and rob**

You **steal** money or things, but you **rob** a person or place.

Someone has **stolen** my bike. Thieves **stole** €2000 from the shop.

I was **robbed** at the football match. They **robbed** the museum last night.

### 5 One word in each sentence is wrong. Cross it out.

- Thieves, robbers, ~~murderers~~, and burglars all steal property.
- 1 Rob, steal, murder, and attacker are all verbs.
- 2 Theft, mug, robbery, and assault are all crimes.
- 3 Shooting, assaulting, stabbing, and breaking into are all ways of attacking people physically.
- 4 Mugging, assault, shoplifting, and murder are all acts of violence.
- 5 Mugger, shoplifter, thief, and burglar are all criminals.

### 6 Complete the sentences.

- The thief stole \$1000.
- 1 Two robbers \_\_\_\_\_ into the museum and \_\_\_\_\_ three paintings. A guard tried to stop them, but one robber had a knife and \_\_\_\_\_ him in the chest.
- 2 The driver killed a man, but it wasn't murder, because he didn't do it \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Someone \_\_\_\_\_ me on the way home last night. He had a gun and said he would \_\_\_\_\_ me if I didn't give him money and my mobile phone. It was horrible.
- 4 He will be in prison for the rest of his life for \_\_\_\_\_ his wife. He bought a gun and \_\_\_\_\_ her while she was asleep.
- 5 A \_\_\_\_\_ broke into our house and took our jewellery and cameras.
- 6 The three men \_\_\_\_\_ that bank because it was in a very quiet area.

### 7 Test yourself. Look at the crimes, and cover the other three columns. Can you remember the meanings and the verbs?



## 36 I can describe the justice system Do unit 35 first

### A A police investigation

A crime is **reported** to the police, usually by the **victim**.

The police **investigate** it. The victim and **witnesses** tell the police what they know.



The police **may** take **fingerprints**<sup>1</sup>, or take photos where the crime took place.



If possible, they **catch** the **suspect** and **arrest**<sup>2</sup> him.



If there is enough **evidence**, they will **charge** the suspect and he will **go to court**<sup>3</sup>.

#### Glossary

**report sth**

- give information that sth has happened.

**victim**

- a person who has been robbed, injured, etc.

**investigate sth**

- try to find out about sth.

**witness**

- a person who sees sth happen (e.g. a crime or an accident).

**may**

- we use **may** to say that sth is possible. SYN **might**.

**take place**

- happen.

**catch sb** PT caught

- find and hold sb.

PP caught

**suspect**

- a person who the police think has committed a crime.

**evidence**

- facts, signs, or objects that make you believe sth is true.

**charge sb**

- (of the police) say officially that they believe sb has done sth illegal.

#### 1 Circle the correct word.

When a robbery has ► taken place/reported, someone will (1) investigate/report it to the police. (2) Victims/Suspects and witnesses will tell the police what they saw. After that, the police will begin to (3) investigate/charge the crime. They may take photos and take (4) fingerprints/suspects where the robbery (5) took place/caught. They (6) will/may catch the (7) suspect/victim; if they do, they will (8) report/arrest him. If they have enough (9) evidence/victims, they will (10) catch/charge the suspect, and he will have to go to (11) court/the police station.

#### 2 Answer the questions. One question has more than one answer.

- Who has to find the evidence? The police      5 Who is caught? \_\_\_\_\_
- 1 Who takes fingerprints? \_\_\_\_\_      6 Who usually reports the crime? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Who is charged? \_\_\_\_\_      7 Who is arrested? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Who investigates the crime? \_\_\_\_\_      8 Who sees the crime take place? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Who is hurt by the crime? \_\_\_\_\_

#### 3

Test yourself. Cover the words in the glossary and look at the meanings. Can you remember the words?

## B In court

In Britain, serious crimes such as robbery and murder are **tried** by a **judge**<sup>1</sup> and **jury**<sup>2</sup>. At the **trial**, the **prosecution** aims to **prove** that the **accused**<sup>3</sup> (or **defendant**) has committed the crime; the **defence** aims to prove he is **innocent**. At the end, the jury decides whether the defendant is **guilty** or not guilty. If he is guilty, he is **sentenced** by the judge. He may **get a fine** or a **prison sentence**.



### 4 True or false? Write T or F.

- ▶ In serious crimes, the judge decides whether the accused is guilty or not. F
- 1 The prosecution defends the accused.
- 2 The defendant is sentenced by the judge.
- 3 If the jury decides the defendant is innocent, he may go to prison.
- 4 With serious crimes, the jury decides what the sentence will be.
- 5 The defence aims to prove that the accused did not commit the crime.
- 6 If the accused is guilty, he may get a fine.
- 7 The judge has to prove whether the defendant is guilty or not.
- 8 Trials take place in a court.

### 5 Complete the sentences using the words on the right in the correct form.

- ▶ He may get a prison sentence.
- 1 The accused is        by the judge and jury.
- 2 The defence must        that the accused is innocent.
- 3 The        has to show that the accused committed the crime.
- 4 If the        is guilty, he may go to prison.
- 5 The guilty person is        by the judge.
- 6 A        takes place in court.
- 7 A person who is guilty may be        a sum of money.

SENTENCE  
TRY  
PROOF  
PROSECUTE  
DEFEND  
SENTENCE  
TRY  
FINE

### 6 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. Can you remember the meanings?

#### Glossary

- try sb** • ask questions and listen to evidence in court to decide if sb has done sth illegal.
- trial** • an examination of evidence in court to decide if sb has done sth illegal.
- the prosecution** • the lawyers who try to prove that the accused person has committed a crime. **prosecute sb** v.
- prove sth** • give evidence to show that sth is true. **proof** n.
- the defence** • the lawyers who try to prove that the accused person has not committed the crime. **defend sb** v.
- innocent** • If you are **innocent**, you have done nothing wrong. **opp** **guilty**.
- sentence sb** • tell sb who is guilty what they will have to do, e.g. go to prison. **sentence** n.
- fine** • a sum of money you have to pay if you break a law. **fine sb** v.



## 37 I can discuss health issues

### A Diseases common among younger people

Nowadays fewer children **suffer from infectious diseases**, but the number of children around the world with **asthma** has **increased**. Doctors believe that the **breathing** difficulties of asthma sufferers are often caused by **allergies** to smoke, food, or pollution. There has also been a **dramatic** increase in **obesity** in young people in the last 20 years. Amongst other things, it can **lead to heart attacks, diabetes, and depression**.

#### Glossary

**suffer from sth** have the experience of sth bad.

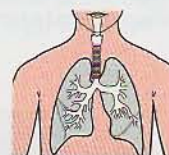
**infectious** An **infectious** disease passes easily from person to person. **infection** N.

**disease** an illness (e.g. skin disease, kidney disease).

**asthma** a medical condition which makes it difficult to breathe.

**increase** get larger in number or amount. **increase** N. OPP **decrease** V, N.

**breathe (in/out)** take air into your **lungs** (see picture) and let it out again.



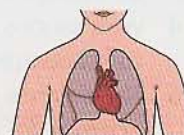
**allergy** a medical condition that makes you ill when you touch, eat, or breathe sth that doesn't normally make other people ill. **allergic** ADJ.

**dramatic** sudden and surprising.

**obesity** the state of being so fat that you are unhealthy. **obese** ADJ.

**lead to sth** cause or have sth as a result, often sth bad.

**heart attack** When sb has a **heart attack**, their **heart** (see picture) suddenly stops working normally.



**diabetes** a disease in which your body can't control the level of sugar in the blood. **diabetic** ADJ.

**depression** a feeling of being very unhappy (this can also be an illness). **depressed** ADJ.

#### 1 Write the related adjective.

- infection infectious
- 1 allergy allergic
- 2 obesity obese
- 3 depression depressed
- 4 diabetes diabetic

#### 2 Circle the correct word.


- Breathing problems can be caused by asthma/depression.
- 1 Diabetes/Asthma is related to sugar in the blood.
- 2 She has a food allergy/asthma.
- 3 Diseases/Asthma can be infectious.
- 4 Instances of asthma have increased/decreased.
- 5 The increase is dramatic/infectious.
- 6 He had a heart/lung attack.

#### 3 Complete the sentences.

- If you have breathing difficulties, you may be suffering from asthma.
- 1 I can eat most things, but I'm allergic to seafood. It makes me really ill.
- 2 So many children eat junk food; we have a big problem with obesity in our country.
- 3 My uncle had a heart attack last year, but he's fine now.
- 4 He lost his job and became very depressed, but he's happier now.
- 5 More people suffer from asthma than in the past.
- 6 He's diabetic, so he has to test his blood sugar levels regularly.
- 7 When you breathe in, your lungs fill with air.
- 8 Obesity can lead to a number of serious diseases.
- 9 Fortunately there has been a small increase in numbers of children suffering from infectious diseases.



## B Diseases common among older people 🎧

Word	Example	Meaning
<b>disabled</b> disability N	My sister is <b>disabled</b> ; she can't walk.	not able to use a part of your body properly.
<b>blind</b> go or be blind SYN lose your sight	My uncle is <b>going blind</b> .	not able to see.
<b>deaf</b> go or be deaf	I'm a bit <b>deaf</b> , so please speak up.	not able to hear.
(have a) <b>stroke</b>	She <b>had a stroke</b> , but she's able to walk again now.	 a sudden illness which affects the <b>brain</b> (see picture) and can stop you walking, talking, etc.
<b>heart disease</b>	He suffers from <b>heart disease</b> .	
<b>cancer</b> e.g. skin cancer	He got lung <b>cancer</b> from smoking.	a very serious illness in which tumours often grow in the body.
<b>arthritis</b> arthritic ADJ	I can't walk very far because of my <b>arthritis</b> .	a disease which causes pain when you bend your arms, fingers, etc.
<b>memory loss</b>	She suffers from <b>memory loss</b> ; she forgets things easily.	a condition in which you lose your ability to remember things.

### 4 Complete the words.

- lung can\_c\_er      4 bl\_\_\_\_\_
- 1 m\_m\_r\_l\_ss      5 str\_e
- 2 ar\_r\_tic      6 h\_rt d\_s\_s\_e
- 3 br\_n      7 d\_s\_b\_l\_t\_y

### spotlight go + adjective

**Go + adjective** means 'become', e.g. **go blind, go deaf**. You can also use it to describe a change of colour: **His hair went white. She stopped breathing and her face went blue.**

### 5 True or false? Write T or F.

- If someone has heart disease, the problems started some time ago. T
- 1 Arthritis means your fingers, feet, etc. may be painful. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 If you are going deaf, you can't see very well. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 If you lose your sight completely, you go blind. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 People with cancer often have a tumour in their body. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Heart disease is the same as a heart attack. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 If you suffer from memory loss, you can remember things. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 A stroke attacks the lungs. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 Being deaf and blind are disabilities. \_\_\_\_\_

### 6 Complete the text.

Elderly people usually become more ► disabled as time goes by. My grandmother, for example, suffers from (1) a \_\_\_\_\_, and she can't walk very easily. Last year she started to go a bit (2) d \_\_\_\_\_, but fortunately she hasn't lost her (3) s \_\_\_\_\_, so she can still enjoy the TV. Sadly, she suffers from (4) m \_\_\_\_\_ loss, but that's very common with people of her age. No one in our family has suffered from either (5) c \_\_\_\_\_ or (6) h \_\_\_\_\_ disease, however.

### 7 Test yourself. Cover the words and examples, and look at the meanings. Can you remember the words?



## 38 I can talk about politics

### A The British political system

In the United Kingdom (the UK), **elections** are **held** about every five years. The UK is divided into 646 political areas, called **constituencies**, and in each constituency people **vote for** one person **representing** the **political party** they want to see **in power**. The **politician** with the most votes becomes the **Member of Parliament** (known as an **MP**) for that area. Parliament, therefore, **consists of** 646 MPs, and the party with the **majority** of MPs forms the **government**. The leader of that party also becomes **prime minister**.

#### Glossary

**election** the time when people choose individuals to speak for them and act for them. **elect** v.  
**hold sth** organize an event such as an election.  
**constituency** one of the areas into which the country is divided for voting in political elections.  
**vote for sb/sth** choose sb/sth in an election. **vote** n.  
**represent sb/sth** act officially for people or an organization.  
**political party** a group of people with the same ideas who want to win an election (e.g. the Labour Party, the Conservative Party).  
**in power** in political control of the country.  
**politician** a person with a job in politics.  
**parliament** the group of people elected to make the laws in a country.  
**consist of sth** be formed or made up of sth.  
**majority** the largest number or part of sth. **opp minority**.  
**government** the group of people in control of a country. **govern** v.  
**prime minister (or PM)** the leader of the government in some countries.

#### 1 True or false in Britain? Write T or F.

- The British parliament consists of 646 elected representatives. T
- 1 Elections must be held every four years. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 People can only vote for one person in this election. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Two or three people may be elected in each constituency. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 If you are a Member of Parliament, you are in the government. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 The leader of the largest political party in parliament becomes prime minister. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 The party with the minority of elected MPs forms the government. \_\_\_\_\_

#### 2 Complete the sentences.

- PM is an abbreviation of prime minister.
- 1 How often do you hold \_\_\_\_\_ for parliament?
- 2 Parliament \_\_\_\_\_ of people from a number of different political \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 In the UK, the Conservative Party was in \_\_\_\_\_ from 1979 to 1997.
- 4 Who did you \_\_\_\_\_ for in the last election?
- 5 Politicians \_\_\_\_\_ the people who elect them.
- 6 She had over 50 per cent of the votes, so a \_\_\_\_\_ of the people voted for her.

#### 3 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 How often does your country usually hold elections? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Which political party is in power at the moment? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 How long have they been in power? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 What is the title of the leader of the party? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 How many people are in parliament? \_\_\_\_\_



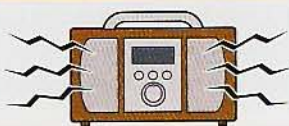
## B Political objectives

The government has **announced** that its first **priority** will be education, and today the prime minister will **focus** on the **need for** more young people to go to university.

A new transport **policy** will be announced today, which aims to **persuade** motorists to leave their cars at home.

The government will **face** strong **opposition** to their new **immigration** policy.

An Olympic athlete has been chosen to **launch** the government's new fitness **campaign**.



### spotlight *oppose, opposition*

To **oppose sth** means to disagree with something and try to change it. **opposition** N. The main political party in parliament, but not forming the government, is called **the Opposition** (used with a singular or plural verb).

### Glossary

<b>objective</b>	• a thing you are trying to do. <b>syns aim, goal.</b>
<b>announce sth</b>	• say sth officially and in public. <b>announcement</b> N.
<b>priority</b>	• a thing that is important or that you must do before anything else.
<b>focus on sth</b>	• give all your attention to sth. <b>focus</b> N.
<b>need for sth</b>	• a situation in which you must have or do sth.
<b>policy</b>	• a plan to do sth, agreed by a government, company, etc.
<b>persuade sb (to do sth)</b>	• give reasons to make sb agree (to do sth).
<b>face sth</b>	• have to deal with a difficult situation.
<b>immigration</b>	• the process of coming to live in a country that is not your own (the people are called <b>immigrants</b> ).
<b>launch sth</b>	• start sth new, especially a campaign or product.
<b>campaign</b>	• (often used in politics or business) a plan to do a number of things with a specific aim.

### 4 Circle the correct answer.

- If you persuade somebody to do something, they do/don't do it.
- 1 If you announce something, you say it in public/private.
  - 2 A priority is important/not important.
  - 3 If you face a problem, you avoid it/deal with it.
  - 4 If you launch something, you start it/finish it.
  - 5 Immigration is the process of coming/going to live in a foreign country.
  - 6 If you oppose something, you agree/disagree with it.

### 5 Complete the sentences.

- Helping poor people is a major priority for the government.
- 1 Do you agree with the government's economic \_\_\_\_\_?
  - 2 They've launched a \_\_\_\_\_ to educate people about the tax system.
  - 3 Some MPs already agree with the prime minister, but he still has to \_\_\_\_\_ others.
  - 4 The USA received a lot of European \_\_\_\_\_ in the early twentieth century.
  - 5 The main \_\_\_\_\_ of the education policy is to give parents more choice.
  - 6 It's clear that the \_\_\_\_\_ disagree strongly with the government's policy.
  - 7 In his speech, the prime minister will \_\_\_\_\_ on health issues.
  - 8 The government has expressed the \_\_\_\_\_ for change in their education policy.

### 6 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

## 39 I can talk about war and peace

### A Conflict

...The **bomb** exploded in the city centre killing at least a **dozen** people ...

... **Soldiers**<sup>1</sup> fought a two-hour **gun**<sup>2</sup> battle and captured a number of enemy fighters ...

...The **army** have captured the airport and are now **in control** of the situation. Most enemy soldiers have now **surrendered**.

...If the current **crisis** gets worse, **civil war** could **break out** at any time ...



### Glossary

**conflict** an angry argument or state of fighting between people or countries. (**War** is fighting between countries or groups using guns, etc.)

**bomb** a container packed with materials that can burst out with force.

**explode** burst with force and a loud noise. **SYN go off. explosion** N.

**dozen** twelve or a group of twelve (**half a dozen** = 6).

**soldier** (see picture) a person who is a member of an army.

**fight** PT **fought** When people **fight**, they try to hurt or kill each other (sb who fights is a **fighter**). **fight** N.

**battle** a fight between armies in a war.

**capture sb/sth** 1 catch and keep sb so they can't leave. 2 take control of sth.

**enemy** the people your army or country is fighting against.

**be in control of sth** have the power or ability to deal with sth.

**surrender** stop fighting and admit you have lost. **SYN give up.**

**crisis** a time of great danger or difficulty. **critical** ADJ.

**civil war** a war between groups of people who live in the same country.

**break out** (used about fighting, wars, fires, etc.) start suddenly.

#### 1 Match 1–6 with a–g.

- |                               |                      |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|
| ► They're in control <u>d</u> | a surrendered.       |
| 1 The conflict _____          | b the main port.     |
| 2 Soldiers fought _____       | c guns were found.   |
| 3 Two bombs _____             | d of the city. ✓     |
| 4 Soldiers captured _____     | e a long battle.     |
| 5 The soldiers _____          | f exploded.          |
| 6 A dozen _____               | g lasted many years. |

#### 2 Replace the underlined phrases with a single word that has the same meaning.

- They were physically trying to hurt each other.  
fighting
- They were the men we fought against.
  - It's a dangerous and difficult period. \_\_\_\_\_
  - Many fighters have given up. \_\_\_\_\_
  - They took control of the city. \_\_\_\_\_
  - There were a dozen soldiers. \_\_\_\_\_
  - When did the bomb go off? \_\_\_\_\_

#### 3 Complete the sentences.

- It has become a serious crisis and could end in war.
- Why did war break \_\_\_\_\_?
  - The \_\_\_\_\_ exploded at 10.15.
  - Fifty people died in the first \_\_\_\_\_ of the war.
  - There are 50,000 \_\_\_\_\_ in the army.
  - Are they in \_\_\_\_\_ of the situation?
  - The conflict could result in civil \_\_\_\_\_.



## B Compromise

### Example

The US and its European **allies** are both **determined** to find a solution.

The two countries **involved** are hoping they can reach an **agreement**.

Leaders from the two main parties are now **negotiating**, and there is some hope of a **peace settlement**.

The two **sides** have finally agreed a **ceasefire**.

If both sides are **willing** to **compromise**, there could be a settlement fairly soon.

### Word and meaning

**ally** a country that agrees to support another country.  
**determined** having a strong desire to do sth and be successful.

**involved** taking part in sth or connected to sth.  
**reach an agreement** arrive at a decision that both sides agree on.

**leader** a person who is in charge or control of sth.  
**negotiate** talk to sb in order to decide or agree on sth.  
**peace settlement** an official agreement that ends a war (**peace** is a time when there is no war).

**side** either of two or more groups who are arguing or fighting with each other.  
**ceasefire** an agreement between two sides to stop fighting.

**willing to do sth** happy and prepared to do sth. OPP **unwilling**.  
**compromise** accept less than you want in order to reach an agreement. **compromise** N.

### 4 Cover the table above. Match 1–7 with a–h.

- |                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| ▶ settlement <u>c</u> | a taking part in something                     |
| 1 ceasefire _____     | b having a strong desire to do something       |
| 2 ally _____          | c an agreement to end a war or argument ✓      |
| 3 determined _____    | d happy and prepared to do something           |
| 4 willing _____       | e accept less than you want                    |
| 5 negotiate _____     | f an agreement to stop fighting                |
| 6 compromise _____    | g talk to somebody in order to agree something |
| 7 involved _____      | h a country that has agreed to support you     |

### 5 Complete the texts.

The civil war has now lasted almost ten years.  
▶ Allies of the two (1) \_\_\_\_\_ in the conflict have managed to get them to agree to a temporary (2) \_\_\_\_\_ on several occasions, but they have never been able to get the two (3) \_\_\_\_\_ of the sides to negotiate a peace (4) \_\_\_\_\_. It seems they are both (5) \_\_\_\_\_ to carry on fighting to the bitter end and are completely (6) \_\_\_\_\_ to compromise.

The two countries (7) \_\_\_\_\_ in the conflict have finally agreed to come to the negotiating table. Neither will be willing to (8) \_\_\_\_\_ very much, but there is now at least the possibility that the two leaders could (9) \_\_\_\_\_ an agreement that will lead to a more lasting (10) \_\_\_\_\_ settlement.

### 6 Test yourself. Look at the examples in the table and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?



## 40 I can talk about events in history

Date	Event	Meaning
1066	William of Normandy <b>invaded</b> England and then <b>defeated</b> King Harold in a battle.	<b>invade</b> enter a country with an army to attack and take control of it. <b>invasion</b> N. <b>defeat sb</b> win a battle, vote, game, etc. against sb.
1781	William Herschel <b>discovered</b> the planet Uranus.	<b>discover sth</b> find sth that nobody has found before. <b>discovery</b> N.
1917	The Russian Revolution	<b>revolution</b> action taken by a large group of people to change the government, often using violence.
1923	Turkey became a <b>republic</b> .	<b>republic</b> a country with no king or queen.
1947	India <b>gained independence</b> / became <b>independent</b> .	<b>gain independence</b> become free from control by another country. <b>independent</b> ADJ.
1957	The European Common Market was <b>established</b> .	<b>establish sth</b> start or create an organization or system. <b>establishment</b> N.
1975	<b>Prince</b> Juan Carlos became king of Spain.	<b>prince</b> the son or grandson of a king or queen (a daughter is a <b>princess</b> ).
1981	<b>President</b> Sadat of Egypt was <b>assassinated</b> .	<b>president</b> the leader of a country with no king or queen. <b>assassinate sb</b> kill a famous person, often for political reasons. <b>assassination</b> N.
1981	<b>Attempt</b> to assassinate President Ronald Reagan.	<b>attempt</b> the act of trying to do sth difficult (often without success). <b>attempt to do sth</b> V.
1990	Nelson Mandela was <b>released</b> from prison.	<b>release sb</b> allow sb to be free. <b>release</b> N.

- 1 Cover the table above. Match 1–5 with a–f. Then write the nouns formed from each verb in the third column.

Verb	Meaning	Noun
► discover <u>c</u>	a kill a famous person	► <u>discovery</u>
1 release .....	b enter another country with an army and attack it	.....
2 assassinate .....	c find something that nobody has found before ✓	.....
3 establish .....	d try to do something, often without success	.....
4 invade .....	e start or create an organization	.....
5 attempt .....	f allow somebody to be free	.....

- 2 Can you complete these sentences about other events in world history?

- President Kennedy was ..... in 1963.
- Bill Gates and Paul Allen ..... the Microsoft Corporation in 1975.
- The 'Velvet ..... ' took place in Czechoslovakia in 1989.
- American forces ..... the British at the Battle of New Orleans in 1815.
- In 1981 there was an ..... to assassinate Pope John Paul II.
- Argentina gained ..... in 1816 and Brazil became ..... in 1822.



## Review: Social and political issues

### Unit 35

#### 1 Complete the sentences. Someone who ...

- ▶ attacks someone physically is an attacker.
- 1 commits a crime is a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 kills someone deliberately is a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 attacks someone in the street for money is a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 breaks into a house and steals things from it is a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 steals your car is a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 steals things from shops is a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 steals from a bank is a bank \_\_\_\_\_.

#### 2 Circle the correct word.

- ▶ The man robbed/mugged the post office.
- 1 She shot/stabbed him with a kitchen knife.
- 2 You don't go to prison if you obey/break the law.
- 3 People who commit/break an offence may end up in prison.
- 4 The two men broke into jail/the museum and stole/robbed some paintings.
- 5 It was a terrible accident. Don crashed into another car and murdered/killed the driver.
- 6 You don't see much violence/violent on the streets.
- 7 Murder is a very serious/minor crime.
- 8 They attacked/killed the guard, and he's still in hospital.

### Unit 36

#### 1 Put the sequence in the correct order.

- a The jury decided that the defendant was guilty. \_\_\_\_\_
- b The police charged the suspect. \_\_\_\_\_
- c A crime was committed. 1
- d The suspect went to court. \_\_\_\_\_
- e The police caught the suspect. \_\_\_\_\_
- f The jury listened to the evidence. \_\_\_\_\_
- g The police investigated the crime. \_\_\_\_\_
- h The victim reported the crime. \_\_\_\_\_
- i The judge sentenced the defendant to two years in prison. \_\_\_\_\_

#### 2 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ The suspect may be guilty or innocent.
- 1 The trial takes \_\_\_\_\_ in a court.
- 2 The prosecution try to \_\_\_\_\_ that the defendant committed the crime.
- 3 The defendant is also called the \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 Often a \_\_\_\_\_ has to tell the court what they saw or know about the crime.
- 5 If he is guilty, the defendant may get a \_\_\_\_\_ or a prison \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 The defendant might be guilty, or he \_\_\_\_\_ be innocent.
- 7 When the police investigate a crime, they are looking for \_\_\_\_\_, for example, fingerprints.
- 8 If the police find a suspect, they will \_\_\_\_\_ them and question them at the police station.



## Unit 37

## 1 What medical problem is being defined?

- A feeling of being very unhappy. depression
- The condition of being too fat. \_\_\_\_\_
  - A condition that makes you ill when you touch, breathe, or eat something that doesn't affect other people. \_\_\_\_\_
  - A sudden illness affecting the brain; you may not be able to talk afterwards. \_\_\_\_\_
  - A medical condition which makes breathing difficult. \_\_\_\_\_
  - A condition in which the heart stops working suddenly. \_\_\_\_\_
  - A serious illness in which tumours often grow in the body. \_\_\_\_\_
  - A disease which causes pain when you bend your arms, fingers, etc. \_\_\_\_\_
  - A disease in which the body can't control the level of sugar in the blood. \_\_\_\_\_

## 2 One word is missing in each sentence. Where from? Write it at the end.

- He is and and has been in a wheelchair for years. disabled
- She has suffered asthma for years. \_\_\_\_\_
  - He had a heart and died last week. \_\_\_\_\_
  - My grandfather is going so I have to shout to him. \_\_\_\_\_
  - It's an infectious so he can't mix with other people. \_\_\_\_\_
  - The doctor told me to in deeply through my nose. \_\_\_\_\_
  - She is allergic some medicines. \_\_\_\_\_
  - Obesity can lead heart disease. \_\_\_\_\_
  - He suffers from loss and can't remember where he puts things. \_\_\_\_\_

## Unit 38

## 1 Match 1–10 with a–k.

- |  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| ► I don't belong to any political <u>j</u>   | a Ben Jones represents.            |
| 1 The announcement was made by _____         | b a campaign.                      |
| 2 They hold _____                            | c for that party.                  |
| 3 The government will face _____             | d on better health care.           |
| 4 We need to launch _____                    | e elections every four years.      |
| 5 They want to persuade _____                | f policy.                          |
| 6 I don't know which party _____             | g the prime minister.              |
| 7 I wouldn't vote _____                      | h of Parliament for Hampstead.     |
| 8 She's the Member _____                     | i strong opposition to their plan. |
| 9 I don't agree with their immigration _____ | j party. ✓                         |
| 10 The government needs to focus _____       | k people to accept the scheme.     |

## 2 Which words are being defined?

- the time when people choose politicians to speak and act for them elections
- something that you are trying to achieve o \_\_\_\_\_
  - disagree strongly with something o \_\_\_\_\_ something
  - something that is very important or that you must do before anything else p \_\_\_\_\_
  - the group of people elected to make and change laws in a country p \_\_\_\_\_
  - a person whose job is in politics p \_\_\_\_\_
  - in political control of a country in p \_\_\_\_\_
  - be formed or made up of something c \_\_\_\_\_ of something



## Unit 39

## 1 Answer the questions. Tick (✓) Yes or No.

	Yes	No
► Is a dozen less than ten?		✓
1 Is a soldier a member of the army?		
2 Is a ceasefire at the beginning of a conflict?		
3 When a bomb goes off, is there an explosion?		
4 When two sides reach an agreement, do they usually compromise?		
5 If an army surrenders, does it stop fighting?		
6 Are your enemies on the same side as you?		
7 Are your allies on the same side as you?		
8 Is a civil war between people from different countries?		

## 2 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

- He's one of our allies. | He's one of our enemies. D
- 1 The two leaders are negotiating. | The two leaders are fighting. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 They arrived at a settlement. | They reached a settlement. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 There are two sides. | There are two leaders. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 There's a crisis in the country. | The situation is critical in the country. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 He wanted to do it. | He was unwilling to do it. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 They captured the enemy leader. | They fought the enemy leader. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 It was a long battle. | It was a long war. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 The war broke out in 1993. | The war started in 1993. \_\_\_\_\_

## Unit 40

## 1 Complete the sentences.

- Napoleon Bonaparte was defeated at the Battle of Waterloo in 1815.
- 1 In 1969, Sirhan Bishara Sirhan was sent to prison for the \_\_\_\_\_ of Robert Kennedy in June 1968. He is still there and will never be \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 Seventy days after Ronald Reagan became \_\_\_\_\_ of the United States in 1981, John Hinckley \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_ him. Reagan survived the attack and lived for another 23 years.
- 3 The French \_\_\_\_\_ started in 1789 and lasted for ten years.
- 4 Fidel Castro \_\_\_\_\_ a new Communist government in Cuba in 1959.
- 5 Marie Curie, a Polish–French scientist, \_\_\_\_\_ radium in the early part of the twentieth century. She died from exposure to radiation in 1934.
- 6 Diana, \_\_\_\_\_ of Wales, the first wife of Prince Charles, was killed in a car crash in Paris in 1997.
- 7 China became a \_\_\_\_\_ in 1912 after two thousand years of imperial rule.
- 8 Zimbabwe \_\_\_\_\_ independence in 1980.



# 41 I can understand newspapers

## A Newspaper publishing

### LIFE AS AN EDITOR

Meet Cyrus Davis, who has spent his **whole** working life in **journalism**. He's now the **editor** of *The Evening Star*, a local **daily** paper **published** in Birmingham. He's been a news reporter on **several national** papers, a sports editor, and a **headline** writer. 'The *Star* covers **current affairs**, sports, crime, and so on, but one **section** of our paper is about **culture**. It's a good paper, but newspaper sales generally are **declining** because of TV and the internet. It's a bad time for **the press**.'

### Glossary

<b>whole</b>	• complete; with no parts missing. <b>syn entire</b> .
<b>journalism</b>	• the profession of collecting and writing about news in newspapers, on TV, etc. (a person who does this is a <b>journalist</b> ).
<b>editor</b>	• the person in charge of a newspaper, magazine, etc. <b>edit v</b> .
<b>daily</b>	• You can get a <b>daily</b> (newspaper) every day, except Sunday.
<b>publish sth</b>	• prepare and print a book, newspaper, etc. <b>publishing N</b> .
<b>several</b>	• more than two, but not many.
<b>national</b>	• connected with all of a country ( <b>international</b> = involving two or more countries).
<b>headline</b>	• the title of a newspaper article ( <i>see next page</i> ).
<b>current affairs</b>	• important political or social events happening now.
<b>section</b>	• one of the parts into which sth is divided.
<b>culture</b>	• activities involving art, literature, music, etc. <b>cultural ADJ</b> .
<b>decline</b>	• become weaker or smaller. <b>decline N</b> .
<b>the press</b>	• newspapers and the journalists who work for them.

### 1 Circle the adjectives. Don't circle the verbs and nouns.

► international whole edit press declined daily journalism entire culture section national cultural

### 2 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

- She edits the newspaper. | She's the editor. S
- 1 I didn't understand the article. | I didn't understand the headline. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 Which section do you read first? | Which part of the paper do you read first? \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 I'm interested in current affairs. | I'm interested in cultural events. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 The number of journalists has declined. | The number of journalists has gone up. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 5 She read the entire paper. | She read the whole paper. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 6 She's worked there for several years. | She's worked there for many years. \_\_\_\_\_

### 3 Complete the sentences.

- The article is in the sports section on page 34.
- 1 I always turn to the section on c first to read about the latest films and books.
  - 2 My son reads all the papers and is fascinated by the p \_\_\_\_\_. He wants to be a j \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 3 The paper is p \_\_\_\_\_ in Denton and sold everywhere in the region.
  - 4 I spent the w \_\_\_\_\_ morning reading the news about the i \_\_\_\_\_ situation.
  - 5 Newspaper sales are going up in China, but they're d \_\_\_\_\_ in Europe.
  - 6 Do you buy a d \_\_\_\_\_ newspaper?

### 4 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?



## B Headlines

FOOTBALL FANS **CLASH**  
WITH POLICE

**clash with sb** fight or disagree seriously with sb about sth. **clash** N.

200 **AXED** CAR WORKERS  
**PROTEST** IN CITY CENTRE

**axe sb/sth** cut numbers of people, jobs, etc. by a large amount (an axe is a large tool used for cutting wood).

**protest** say or show that you don't agree with sth, especially in public. **protest** N.

Bomb **scare** in city centre

**scare** a situation in which many people are afraid or worried (e.g. bomb scare, health scare, food scare).

NURSES **DEMONSTRATE**  
OVER TAX CHANGES

**demonstrate** take part in a public protest for or against sth.

SYN **protest**. **demonstration/protest** N.

**THREAT** to  
**Hollywood Star**

**threat** a statement that sb may kill, hurt, or punish you if you don't do what they want. **threaten** V.

**MAN CLAIMS**  
**DOG CAN TALK**

**claim sth** OR **claim that** say that sth is true without having proof.

**claim** N.

GOVERNMENT  
**PROMISES** HIGHER  
**PENSIONS**

**promise (to do) sth** say definitely that you will do sth, or that sth will happen. SYN **make a promise**. **promise** N.

**pension** money paid regularly by the government or a company to sb who has stopped working because of old age (sb who receives a pension is a **pensioner**).

GOVERNMENT **PLEDGES**  
**AID** FOR ETHIOPIA

**pledge sth** make a formal promise to do or give sth. **pledge** N.

**aid** money, food, etc. that is sent to a country or to people to help them (**aid** V FML means 'give help').

### 5 Circle the correct word.

- ▶ She claimed/promised to work hard.
- 1 There was a health scare/aid last week.
- 2 Twenty workers were protested/axed.
- 3 Police clashed/aided with protesters.
- 4 They took part in a demonstration/pledge.
- 5 She claimed/promised she was French.
- 6 I receive a company pension/pensioner.
- 7 There was a threat/clash to kill him.

#### spotlight Verbs and nouns with the same form

There are many words in English in which the base form of the verb and the noun are the same, e.g. *clash*, *protest*, *claim*, *promise*, *pledge*, and *aid*.

*There was a **clash** between the protesters and the police.*

*The police and the protesters **clashed**.*

(See the Vocabulary Building tables on page 202.)

### 6 Replace the underlined phrase with a single word with the same meaning.

- ▶ She went to the public protest. demonstration
- 1 The company made a formal promise to improve services. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 He says that he is the tallest man in the country. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 We're sending money and food to the earthquake zone. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 I had a frightening situation last night – I saw a snake in the garden. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 You should act with others to say that you disagree about price rises. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 My brothers disagreed seriously with the organizers over the arrangements. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 The man said he would hurt me. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 I made a spoken agreement and I won't break it. \_\_\_\_\_

### 7 Test yourself. Look at the headlines and cover the meanings. Can you explain the headlines?



## 42 I can talk about films

### A Film awards

The BAFTAs are the British **equivalent** of the Oscars. The highest **award**, the Academy Fellowship, is a **prize** given for an **individual's** work and **achievements** during their career; previous **winners** include Hitchcock and Fellini. There are awards for the **outstanding** film of the year, and for special achievement by a British **director**, writer, or **producer** in their first film. There are also awards for best actor and actress in a **leading role** and in a **supporting** role. Achievements are also recognized in **editing**, lighting, and so on.

#### Glossary

<b>the equivalent of sth</b>	• sth that has the same value, amount, meaning, or importance as sth else. <b>equivalent</b> ADJ.
<b>award</b>	• You <b>get</b> or <b>win</b> an <b>award</b> when you do very well in a competition.
<b>prize</b>	• sth of value that you get when you are successful in a competition, race, etc.
<b>individual</b>	• one person who is seen separately from others or a group.
<b>achievement</b>	• sth you have done successfully that was difficult. <b>achieve</b> v.
<b>winner</b>	• a person who wins a competition, game, etc.
<b>outstanding</b>	• extremely good; excellent.
<b>director</b>	• the person who tells actors what to do in a film, play, etc. <b>direct</b> v.
<b>producer</b>	• the person who is responsible for the business side of a film, play, etc. <b>produce</b> v.
<b>leading role</b>	• the most important role (or part) in a film or play (a <b>supporting role</b> is the next most important role).
<b>role</b>	• the part an actor plays (e.g. the <b>role</b> of Julius Caesar).
<b>editing</b>	• the process of deciding which parts of a film to show and in which order. <b>edit</b> v.

#### 1 Complete the words.

- |                         |                          |                     |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------|
| ▶ <u>o u t</u> standing | 3 _____ porting ro _____ | 6 a c _____ eve     |
| 1 e _____ valent        | 4 _____ ividual          | 7 w _____ n _____ r |
| 2 _____ duce            | 5 a _____ rd             | 8 p _____ ze        |

#### 2 True or false? Write T or F.

- ▶ A producer plays the leading role in the film. F
- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1 An actor directs the film. _____             | 6 A producer edits films. _____                   |
| 2 An outstanding film is very bad. _____       | 7 It's an achievement to win an award. _____      |
| 3 A BAFTA winner gets an award. _____          | 8 A role is what an actor wears. _____            |
| 4 A leading role is always a man's role. _____ | 9 A producer organizes the film's finances. _____ |
| 5 An individual is one person. _____           | 10 A director tells actors how to act. _____      |

#### 3 Replace the underlined word or phrase with a single word with the same meaning.

- ▶ Who was the business manager of the film? producer
- Was she the person who won? \_\_\_\_\_
  - Did they get the success they wanted? \_\_\_\_\_
  - Who played the most important role? \_\_\_\_\_
  - Who organized the business side of the film? \_\_\_\_\_
  - Which part did Leonardo di Caprio play? \_\_\_\_\_
  - Who won the prize for supporting actress? \_\_\_\_\_
  - Is an Oscar equal in importance to a BAFTA award? \_\_\_\_\_
  - Was he the first single person to win three awards? \_\_\_\_\_

#### 4 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?



## B Opinions

### Love it or hate it?

An **extraordinary** and **moving** **performance** by a great leading actor.

A **gripping** and **entertaining** thriller, and full of **drama** – I loved it.

I'm usually a **fan** of Jan Loos, but this **movie** had such a weak **plot**. Very **disappointing** indeed.

Very violent and too much **swearing** – totally **unsuitable** for children. **Disgusting!**

### spotlight *indeed*

Use **indeed** after *very* and an adjective or adverb to emphasize a statement.

*The film was very boring **indeed**.*

*I liked it very much **indeed**.*

### Glossary

**extraordinary** very unusual or much better than usual.

SYN **incredible**. OPP **ordinary**.

**moving** causing strong feelings, especially of sadness.

**performance** the act of playing a role in a film or play.

**gripping** very exciting; holding your attention.

**entertaining** interesting and fun.

**drama** exciting things that happen; an exciting event.

**dramatic** ADJ.

**fan** sb who really likes and is enthusiastic about a person or an activity.

**movie** (especially in US English) a film.

**plot** the series of events that form the story of a film, novel, etc.

**disappointing** not as good as you had hoped.

**swearing** rude language that may upset people. **swear** v.

**unsuitable (for sth/sb)** not right or appropriate for sth/sb. OPP **suitable**.

**disgusting** very unpleasant.

### 5 Are the adjectives positive or negative? Write P or N.

- |                          |                    |                       |                    |
|--------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| ► extraordinary <u>P</u> | 2 ordinary _____   | 4 unsuitable _____    | 6 moving _____     |
| 1 gripping _____         | 3 incredible _____ | 5 disappointing _____ | 7 disgusting _____ |

### 6 Circle the correct word.

- There's a lot of swear/swearing in the film.
- 1 It's very funny extremely/indeed.
- 2 The plot/performance is about three men who have to look after a baby.
- 3 The drama/movie is on at the Odeon cinema.
- 4 It was an ordinary/extraordinary film – I really loved it.
- 5 That film won't be suitable/disgusting for you – it's much too violent.
- 6 Her performance/fan was really gripping – you must see it.

### 7 Complete the words in these sentences.

- 1 'Casino Royale' is a really enter \_\_\_\_\_ film.
- 2 Forest Whitaker gave an extra \_\_\_\_\_ perf \_\_\_\_\_ in 'The Last King of Scotland'.
- 3 I thought 'Snakes on a Plane' was very disapp \_\_\_\_\_ ind \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 I'm a f \_\_\_\_\_ of Cate Blanchett.
- 5 'The Pianist' was very mov \_\_\_\_\_.

### ABOUT YOU

---



---



---



---

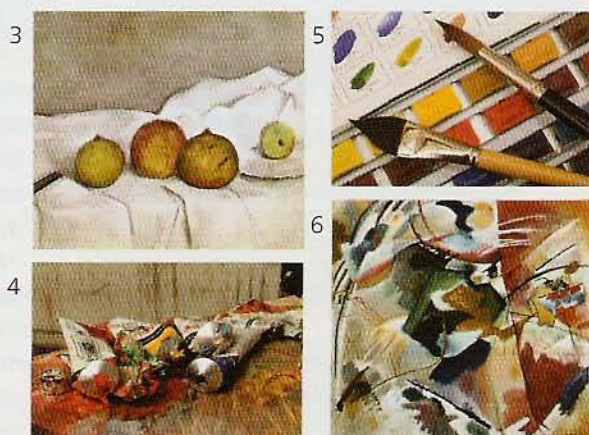


---

### 8 ABOUT YOU Replace the underlined names and titles with your own examples of films and actors in the 'About you' column. Compare with another student if you can.

## 43 I can talk about art and photography

### A Painting and drawing 🎨



At an art **exhibition**, a **variety** of paintings and **drawings** may be **on display**: for example, **portraits**<sup>1</sup>, **landscapes**<sup>2</sup>, and **still lifes**<sup>3</sup> (note the plural here is *lives*, not *lives*). Some artists work in **oils** (oil paints)<sup>4</sup>, while others use **watercolours**<sup>5</sup>.

**Styles vary** too: some **works of art** are **realistic**, others are **abstract**<sup>6</sup>. **Skilled** artists use a range of **techniques** to **create** different **sorts** of effects.

#### Glossary

**exhibition** a collection of paintings, objects, etc. that are shown in public.

**variety** a number of different types of the same thing. **vary** v.

**drawing** a picture made with a pencil, pen, etc., but not paint.

**on display** being shown in a place where people will see it. **syn on show**.

**style** the way that sth is painted, drawn, built, etc.

**work of art** a very good painting, drawing, book, etc. (a really great work of art, e.g. *Mona Lisa* by Leonardo da Vinci, is a **masterpiece**).

**realistic** showing things as they are. **realism** n.

**skilled** having the ability and experience to do sth well. **syn expert**.

**technique** a particular way of doing sth, often needing special skills.

**create sth** cause sth new to happen; produce sth new. **sort** a type or kind.

#### 1 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

► watercolours | oil paints D

1 a drawing | a painting \_\_\_\_\_

2 on display | on show \_\_\_\_\_

3 realistic | abstract \_\_\_\_\_

4 create | make something new \_\_\_\_\_

5 a sort | a type \_\_\_\_\_

6 a portrait | a painting \_\_\_\_\_

7 a still life | a landscape \_\_\_\_\_

8 skilled | expert \_\_\_\_\_

9 a work of art | a painting \_\_\_\_\_

#### 2 Complete the text.

Picasso is a great artist who worked in a ► **variety** of different (1) s\_\_\_\_\_, some realistic and others (2) a\_\_\_\_\_. He developed a wide range of painting (3) t\_\_\_\_\_. He usually painted using (4) o\_\_\_\_\_, but he liked to (5) v\_\_\_\_\_ things and sometimes used (6) w\_\_\_\_\_. He loved to paint people, and produced a beautiful (7) p\_\_\_\_\_ of his mother. Many people believe that his real (8) m\_\_\_\_\_ was *Guernica*, which he painted during the Spanish Civil War. In the past, the painting was on (9) d\_\_\_\_\_ in (10) e\_\_\_\_\_ all over the world, but it is now permanently in Madrid.

#### 3 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Can you remember the words?



## B Photography



Word	Example	Meaning
out of focus	The photos are <b>out of focus</b> .	not showing things clearly. <b>opp</b> in focus.
focus on sth	I <b>focused</b> on the girl's face.	change the camera until the image is clear.
transfer sth (from ... to ...)	I <b>transferred</b> the photos <b>from</b> the camera <b>to</b> a laptop.	move sth from one place to another.
develop a film	Could I have this <b>film</b> <b>developed</b> , please?	make pictures from a piece of film using chemicals.
automatic	With an <b>automatic</b> camera, photos are usually in focus.	able to work by itself without direct human control.
studio	She has a <b>studio</b> where she does fashion photography.	a room where a photographer or artist works.

### 4 Complete the phrases with words from the box.

photographer   camera   flash   a film  
focus ✓   album   of film   focus   lens

- in focus                      5 develop \_\_\_\_\_  
1 digital \_\_\_\_\_              6 roll \_\_\_\_\_  
2 zoom \_\_\_\_\_                7 built-in \_\_\_\_\_  
3 amateur \_\_\_\_\_            8 photo \_\_\_\_\_  
4 out of \_\_\_\_\_

**spotlight** *photography, photograph, etc.*

**Photography** is the act of **taking pictures** or **photos/photographs**. Someone who does this as a job is a **photographer**; someone who does it as a hobby is an **amateur photographer**.

### 5 Write the words in the correct order to form sentences.

- I / film / please / roll / have / a / could / of Could I have a roll of film, please?  
1 can / studio / in / films / develop / she / her \_\_\_\_\_  
2 frame / the / put / photo / I / the / in \_\_\_\_\_  
3 negative / two / please / of / can / prints / have / I / this? \_\_\_\_\_  
4 the / focused / the / in / he / girl / foreground / on \_\_\_\_\_  
5 photographers / automatic / often / cameras / amateur / buy \_\_\_\_\_  
6 you / computer / to / can / the / transfer / pictures / the \_\_\_\_\_

### 6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Are you interested in photography? If so, why? \_\_\_\_\_  
2 What kind of camera have you got? \_\_\_\_\_  
3 What features does it have? \_\_\_\_\_  
4 What kinds of problems do you have when you take pictures? \_\_\_\_\_

## 44 I can talk about music

### A Musical instruments and musicians



1 trumpet



2 saxophone



3 flute



4 organ



5 keyboard



6 piano



7 violin



8 cello



9 guitar

#### spotlight The suffix -ist

We often use this suffix for the person who plays a particular instrument, e.g. guitarist, violinist, pianist, saxophonist, cellist, organist. But we say trumpeter, drummer, and usually keyboard player. The word for a flute player is flautist: note the change in spelling.

Franz Liszt was a **composer** but also a great **pianist**.

Chris Martin is the **lead singer** and main **songwriter** in the rock **band** Coldplay.

Mark Elder is the **conductor** of the Hallé **Orchestra**.

#### Glossary

**musical instrument** a thing that is used for playing music.

**musician** a person who plays a musical instrument.

**composer** a person who writes music. **compose** v.

**lead singer** the main singer in a band.

**songwriter** a person who writes the words and music for a song.

**band** a number of people who play music together. **SYN group.**

**conductor** the person in an orchestra who directs the musicians.

**orchestra** a large group of musicians who play music together.

#### 1 Complete the words for the musical instruments, then write the person who plays them.

▶ piano / pianist

1 vi \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_

2 or \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_

3 tr \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_

4 gu \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_

5 sax \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_

6 ce \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_

7 fl \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_

#### 2 Complete the words in the sentences.

▶ They both play in a rock band.

1 My brother plays the violin in an o\_\_\_\_\_.

2 Noel Gallagher plays the g\_\_\_\_\_ in the rock b\_\_\_\_\_ 'Oasis', and his brother Liam is the l\_\_\_\_\_ singer.

3 Do you play a musical i\_\_\_\_\_?

4 I don't like modern c\_\_\_\_\_ such as Bartók and Stockhausen.

5 Paul Simon sings and plays the guitar but is most famous as a s\_\_\_\_\_.

6 Mike's playing guitar, but who is the keyboard p\_\_\_\_\_?

7 There are five in the band and they're all good m\_\_\_\_\_.

8 Sir Georg Solti was the c\_\_\_\_\_ of several wonderful orchestras.

#### 3 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. What are the instruments?



## B Who do you admire?

### Music questionnaire

- Write the name of a modern band or **solo artist** that you **admire**. \_\_\_\_\_
- Has their music been **influenced** by anyone/anything? \_\_\_\_\_
- Do they write and **record** their own music or play other people's? \_\_\_\_\_
- Do they often do **live** concerts? Have you seen them play **live**? \_\_\_\_\_
- What was the last **album** they **released**? \_\_\_\_\_
- Why does their music **appeal** to you? Is it because of:  
a great **voice** / **talented** musicians / lovely **melodies** / good **lyrics**? \_\_\_\_\_

### Glossary

**solo artist** a singer or musician who is not part of a band.

**admire sb** like sb and think they have achieved a lot. **admiration** N.

**influence sb/sth** make a change to the way sb thinks. **influence** N.

**record sth** put music, a film, etc. onto a CD or tape. **recording** N.

**album** a collection of songs (often eight or ten).

**release sth** put an album onto the market so people can buy it. **release** N.

**appeal to sb** be attractive or interesting to sb. **appeal** N.

**voice** the sound a person makes when they talk or sing.

**talented** having a lot of ability. **talent** N.

**melody** a series of musical notes in a particular order. **SYN tune** INF.

**lyrics** the words of a song.

### spotlight *living, alive, live*

**Living** and **alive** mean 'not dead', but **alive** is not used before a noun.

*He's one of the greatest **living** composers. Mozart isn't **alive** today.*

**Live** ADJ, ADV (sounds like *five*) means 'seen or heard as it is happening'.

*We saw the band play **live**, then watched a recording of the concert on TV.*

### 4 Circle the correct answer.

- James Brown isn't live/alive any longer.
- I like the tune but not the lyrics/melody.
  - Is he a solo/single artist?
  - I've never seen the band live/alive.
  - Katie Melua has a great tune/voice.
  - He's one of the best living/alive songwriters.
  - The song has a beautiful melody/voice.
  - His music appeals/influences to me.

### 5 Complete the text with words from the box.

albums influenced talented ✓ release appeals solo recorded admire recording



Gilberto Gil is a Brazilian singer and guitarist, and one of his country's most ► talented songwriters. As a young musician in the 1950s, he was (1) \_\_\_\_\_ by the bossa nova style of João Gilberto, but he didn't (2) \_\_\_\_\_ his first album, *Louvação*, until 1967. He travelled in the 1970s, (3) \_\_\_\_\_ an album in English, and, in 1980, introduced reggae to Brazil with his (4) \_\_\_\_\_ of the Bob Marley song, 'No woman, no cry'. He has played with many musicians, while continuing his career as a (5) \_\_\_\_\_ artist. In all he has produced over 40 (6) \_\_\_\_\_. His music (7) \_\_\_\_\_ to people because of the rhythm and melodies, but people also (8) \_\_\_\_\_ him for his work in politics and for social causes.

### 6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questionnaire, or ask another student.



# 45 I can talk about people and places in sport

## A People

Word	Example		Meaning
<b>referee</b> ref INF (see picture)	The <b>referee</b> gave out five yellow cards.		the official person in control in some sports (in tennis this is an <b>umpire</b> ).
<b>linesman</b> (see picture)	The <b>linesman</b> put his <b>flag</b> <sup>1</sup> up for offside, but I think he was wrong.		a person who helps the referee in some sports. SYN <b>referee's assistant</b> .
<b>manager</b>	José Mourinho has been <b>manager</b> of Porto and Chelsea.		the person in control of a football team (also <b>coach</b> in some countries).
<b>coach</b>	Andy Murray has a new tennis <b>coach</b> .		a person who gives practical teaching to make sb better in a sport.
<b>captain</b>	Fabio Cannavaro was the Italian <b>captain</b> in the 2006 World Cup.		the player who is leader of the team.
<b>spectators</b>	<b>Spectators</b> ran onto the <b>pitch</b> (= the area where the game is played).		people who watch a game (also <b>the crowd</b> ).
<b>supporters</b>	Many football <b>supporters</b> travel all over Europe to see their team.		people who regularly watch a team play. SYN <b>fans</b> . <b>support</b> v.
<b>commentator</b>	I thought the <b>commentator</b> was talking rubbish.		a person who describes a game on TV or the radio.

### 1 Cover the spotlight box and complete the list of people.

- football footballer      4 motor racing \_\_\_\_\_  
 1 golf \_\_\_\_\_      5 rugby \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 athletics \_\_\_\_\_      6 skiing \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 boxing \_\_\_\_\_      7 gymnastics \_\_\_\_\_

### 2 Circle the correct answer.

- They have a special **manage/coach** to improve their fitness.  
 1 The **captain/manager** wears an armband during the game.  
 2 The **referee/umpire** gave him a red card.  
 3 I **lead/support** Real Madrid, and go to most of their home games.  
 4 In the men's singles final at Wimbledon, they had a Portuguese **referee/umpire**.  
 5 There were 40,000 in the ground, of which about 5,000 were Arsenal **spectators/supporters**.

### 3 Complete the words in the text.

'There was trouble at last week's game. Our ► **captain** got a red card in the second half for arguing with the (1) **r**\_\_\_\_\_, and then the other team scored a goal in the last minute, although the (2) **l**\_\_\_\_\_ had his (3) **f**\_\_\_\_\_ up for offside. Even the (4) **c**\_\_\_\_\_ on the radio thought it was offside, but the ref gave the goal. At the end of the match, some (5) **f**\_\_\_\_\_ who were in the (6) **c**\_\_\_\_\_ then ran onto the (7) **p**\_\_\_\_\_, and the referee had to have a police escort. In the press conference after the game, our (8) **m**\_\_\_\_\_ was still very angry.'

#### spotlight Suffix -er and player

We usually add **-er** or **player** to a noun or verb for the person who does a sport: **golfer**, **swimmer**, **skier**, **racing driver**, **boxer**, **tennis player**, **rugby player**.  
 But: **athletics/athlete**, **gymnastics/gymnast**.

## B Places

The Camp Nou **Stadium**, the **ground** of Barcelona football **club**, is the largest stadium in Europe with a **capacity** of 98,800 spectators.

Hohenheim is a motor-racing **circuit** where the German Grand Prix sometimes takes place. One **lap** of the **track** is 4.574 kms.

The Centre **Court** at Wimbledon is famous **worldwide**. Now they have **constructed** the new roof, the All England **Championship** won't be **interrupted** because of rain.

A **standard** Olympic **swimming pool** is **50 metres long**, **25 metres wide**, and has a **minimum depth** of two metres.

### spotlight *long, wide, deep*

**Long, wide, and deep** can describe measurements.

The pool is **50 metres long**.

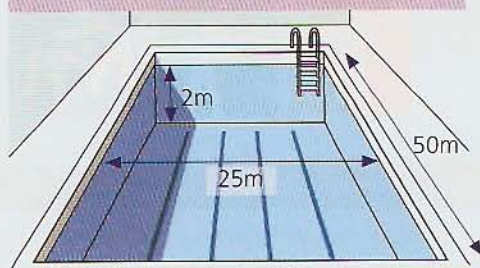
= The **length** of the pool is 50 metres.

The pool is **25 metres wide**.

= The **width** of the pool is 25 metres.

The pool is **2 metres deep**.

= The **depth** of the pool is 2 metres.



swimming pool

### Glossary

**stadium** a large structure where people sit and watch sport.

**ground** an area of land where a game is played and people watch.

**club** A football **club** is the team, the management, and the ground.

**capacity** the amount or number that a space or container will hold.

**circuit** an area of land, often in a circle, where a race takes place. **syn track**.

**lap** one journey around a track.

**court** a place where tennis, basketball, or badminton are played.

**worldwide** everywhere in the world. **syn all over the world**.

**construct sth** build or make sth. **construction** **n.** **championship** a competition to find the best player or team in a sport.

**interrupt sth** stop the progress of sth for a short period of time.

**standard** normal; average.

**minimum** smallest possible or smallest allowed. **opp maximum**.

### 4 Complete the sentences.

▶ *Worldwide* means all over the world.

1 The noun from *long* is \_\_\_\_\_.

2 A synonym for *circuit* is \_\_\_\_\_.

3 The noun from *wide* is \_\_\_\_\_.

4 The opposite of *minimum* is \_\_\_\_\_.

5 The noun from *deep* is \_\_\_\_\_.

6 The noun from *construct* is \_\_\_\_\_.

7 One journey round a track is a \_\_\_\_\_.

### 5 Complete the words in each text.

1 Liverpool Football ▶ **Club** is planning to c\_\_\_\_\_ a new football s\_\_\_\_\_, with a c\_\_\_\_\_ of over 60,000.

2 The Chinese Grand Prix is raced over 56 l\_\_\_\_\_ of the Shanghai International C\_\_\_\_\_. It's the most expensive t\_\_\_\_\_ ever c\_\_\_\_\_, costing \$240m.

3 The French Open Tennis C\_\_\_\_\_ at Roland Garros is famous w\_\_\_\_\_ as the only one of the four major tournaments that is played on clay c\_\_\_\_\_s.

4 Unfortunately we don't have a s\_\_\_\_\_ Olympic swimming p\_\_\_\_\_. The one we use for competitions is only 25 metres l\_\_\_\_\_ and 15 metres w\_\_\_\_\_. The m\_\_\_\_\_ d\_\_\_\_\_ is one metre, and the m\_\_\_\_\_ is two metres.

## 46 I can describe sporting events Do Unit 45 first

### A The Olympics



- The first games **took place** in 776 BC, with one **competition**, a **race** of about 192 metres.
- The first modern Olympics took place in 1896 with 241 **competitors taking part** in nine sports: **athletics**<sup>1</sup>, **cycling**<sup>2</sup>, **fencing**<sup>3</sup>, **gymnastics**<sup>4</sup>, **weightlifting**<sup>5</sup>, **shooting**<sup>6</sup>, swimming, tennis, and **wrestling**<sup>7</sup>. By 2004, there were over 11,000 people **competing** in 28 sports.
- Gymnast Larissa Latynina **holds the record** for the most Olympic **medals** (18).
- Boxing is now the only Olympic sport where **professionals** are not allowed to compete.

#### Glossary

**take place** (used about a meeting or an event) happen.

**competition** a situation in which two or more people are trying to win sth or be better than sb (a person trying to win is a **competitor**).

**compete** v. **competitive** ADJ.

**race** a competition to see who is fastest or best, or who wins.

**take part in sth** join with other people in an activity. SYN **participate**.

**medal** a piece of metal given to an athlete who comes 1st, 2nd, or 3rd.

**professional** a person who plays a sport for money as their job. OPP **amateur**.

#### spotlight **record**

A **record** is the best performance in something, especially sport.

*She holds the record for the long jump.*  
(She has the record.)

*He broke the record in the 100 metres.*  
(He set a new record.)

#### 1 Complete the words for sports.

- |                  |                |             |             |
|------------------|----------------|-------------|-------------|
| ▶ shooting _____ | 2 weight _____ | 4 cyc _____ | 6 wre _____ |
| 1 gym _____      | 3 fen _____    | 5 ath _____ |             |

#### 2 Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| ▶ It's a long <u>race</u> /medal.               | 3 He broke the <u>record</u> /competition.            |
| ▶ It was a hard <u>race</u> /competition.       | 4 The race <u>takes place</u> /takes part on Tuesday. |
| 1 How many people <u>took place</u> /took part? | 5 Did she win a <u>race</u> /medal?                   |
| 2 Anyone can <u>take part</u> /participate.     | 6 Does she <u>hold</u> /carry the record?             |

#### 3 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ How many sportsmen and women took part in the last Olympics?
- The 2012 Olympics will \_\_\_\_\_ place in London.
  - It's hard for poor countries to \_\_\_\_\_ against rich countries in certain events.
  - A Russian gymnast holds the \_\_\_\_\_ for the most Olympic medals won.
  - There are a few Olympic amateurs, but now most of the \_\_\_\_\_ are \_\_\_\_\_.
  - The marathon (just over 42 kms) is the longest \_\_\_\_\_ on foot at the Olympics.
  - My uncle won a silver \_\_\_\_\_ in the shooting \_\_\_\_\_ at the 1984 Olympics.

#### 4 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. What are the sports?



## B Winners and losers

In a very **one-sided contest**, Roger Federer **defeated** Andy Roddick 6–4, 6–0, 6–2 in the **semi-final** of the Australian Open to go through to his tenth grand slam **final**. Federer won the first set quite easily, then broke Roddick's **resistance** in the second with some **brilliant** tennis. Afterwards, Roddick was very **critical of** his own **performance**, but **praised** his **opponent** for some **outstanding** tennis. Federer is now clearly the **favourite** to take his third Australian Open, and tenth grand slam **overall**. This would put him just one behind Rod Laver, a tremendous **achievement** for someone who is still only 25.

### spotlight **defeat**

As a verb, to **defeat sb** means to be stronger or better than somebody in a game, fight, etc. **syn beat sb.**

*Italy **defeated** Wales 2–0 in the last match they played.*

As a noun, a **defeat** is an occasion when you **don't** win something.

*We won our first match, then followed it with three **defeats**.*

### Glossary

<b>one-sided</b>	• If a game is <b>one-sided</b> , one person or team is much better than the other.
<b>contest</b>	• an activity between two players or teams to see who is best.
<b>semi-final</b>	• one of two games to decide who plays in the <b>final</b> .
<b>final</b>	• the last game or match in a competition.
<b>resistance</b>	• the action of trying to stop sth happening or stop sb doing sth. <b>resist v.</b>
<b>brilliant</b>	• very good, clever, or skilful. <b>syn outstanding.</b>
<b>critical of sth/sb</b>	• saying what is wrong with sth/sb. <b>criticize sth/sb v.</b>
<b>performance</b>	• the way in which sb plays or does sth. <b>perform v.</b>
<b>praise sb/sth</b>	• say that sb/sth is very good. <b>praise n.</b>
<b>opponent</b>	• a person who plays against you in a sport or competition.
<b>favourite</b>	• the person or team who is expected to win. <b>opp outsider.</b>
<b>overall</b>	• including everything; in total.
<b>achievement</b>	• a thing that you have done successfully through hard work or skill. <b>achieve sth v.</b>

### 5 Complete the sentences.

- The noun related to **perform** is performance. 4 The noun related to **praise** is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 1 The noun related to **achieve** is \_\_\_\_\_. 5 **Outstanding** is a synonym for \_\_\_\_\_.  
 2 The verb related to **critical** is \_\_\_\_\_. 6 An **outsider** is the opposite of a \_\_\_\_\_.  
 3 The noun related to **resist** is \_\_\_\_\_. 7 **Beat sb** is the same as \_\_\_\_\_.

### 6 Complete the sentences.

- We were defeated in the semi-final, which was very disappointing.
- 1 Nadal won the match in the end, but it was a great \_\_\_\_\_ between them.  
 2 He was the winner in 1998, 2003, and again in 2008, so that's three titles \_\_\_\_\_.  
 3 Bjorn Borg won Wimbledon five times, which is a fantastic \_\_\_\_\_.  
 4 He was the \_\_\_\_\_, so we expected him to win, but it was a very one-\_\_\_\_\_ contest.  
 5 Tiger Woods aims for perfection and is always very \_\_\_\_\_ of his own performance.  
 6 Who will her \_\_\_\_\_ be in the final? ~ I don't know. It depends on the other \_\_\_\_\_-final.

### 7 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?



## 47 I can talk about books

### A Types of book

I read a huge amount. As an editor, I'm always using **reference books** such as dictionaries, **encyclopedias**, **manuals**, catalogues, and so on. But I read a lot for **pleasure** too, and I particularly like **poetry**. At home all my books are arranged in **alphabetical** order (I know that's a bit strange!). I've got loads of **novels**, **murder mysteries**, **science fiction**, etc. But there is **non-fiction** as well; I read quite a lot of **biographies**. My husband says I'm book-crazy.

#### Glossary

- reference book** • a book you use to find a piece of information.
- encyclopedia** • a book or set of books that gives information about many different subjects, arranged in alphabetical order.
- manual** • a book that tells you how to do or use sth such as a car or a computer.
- catalogue** • a complete list of things you can buy or see somewhere.
- pleasure** • a feeling of enjoyment.
- poetry** • poems in general (a **poem** is a piece of writing arranged in short lines which express thoughts and feelings through sound and rhythm).
- alphabetical** • listed in the same way as the **alphabet**: A, B, C, etc.
- novel** • a book that tells a story about people or events that are not real.
- mystery** • a story in which the events are only explained at the end (e.g. a **murder mystery**).
- science fiction** • books about events that take place in the future, often involving travel in space. **SYN sci-fi** INF.
- non-fiction** • books about real facts, people, events, etc. **OPP fiction**.
- biography** • the story of sb's life written by someone different (an **autobiography** is the story of sb's life written by that person).

#### 1 Complete the table with words from the box.

catalogue ✓ murder mystery autobiography manual  
reference book encyclopedia novel biography sci-fi

Fiction

Non-fiction

catalogue

#### 2 Complete the sentences.

- A dictionary is arranged in alphabetical order.
- If you don't know the date of the French Revolution, look it up in an \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Shakespeare is famous for his plays, but he also wrote beautiful \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Dictionaries are a kind of \_\_\_\_\_ book.
  - What kind of books do you read for \_\_\_\_\_ in the evenings?
  - Do you read crime stories? ~ Yes, I'm reading a murder \_\_\_\_\_ at the moment.
  - What's the tenth letter of the \_\_\_\_\_? ~ It's 'J'.
  - Did David Beckham write his life story himself? ~ Yes, it's his \_\_\_\_\_.
  - If you don't know how your camera works, you should look in the \_\_\_\_\_.

#### 3 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?



## B Choosing a book

**Booksellers' survey: how did you choose the last book you read?**

The **title** and front **cover** just **attracted my attention**.

I was **browsing** in a bookshop. I just picked up a **paperback** that looked interesting.

A recommendation by a friend – he said it was very **readable** and **well written**.

It was a **gift**, but I like the **author** so I was really pleased.

I **looked through** the first **chapter** – it looked **fascinating**.

### Glossary

<b>title</b>	• the name of a book, play, film, etc.
<b>cover</b>	• the outside part of a book, magazine, etc.
<b>attract sb's attention</b>	• If sth <b>attracts your attention</b> , it interests you so that you want to look at it.
<b>browse</b>	• spend time pleasantly in a shop looking at things.
<b>paperback</b>	• a book with a thick paper cover (a <b>hardback</b> has a hard cover).
<b>readable</b>	• easy or interesting to read.
<b>gift</b>	• a thing that you give to sb, e.g. for their birthday. SYN <b>present</b> .
<b>author</b>	• the writer of a particular book, play, etc.
<b>look through sth</b>	• read sth quickly. SYN <b>skim sth</b> .
<b>chapter</b>	• one of the parts into which a book is divided.
<b>fascinating</b>	• very interesting.

### spotlight Compound adjectives with *well*

There are many adjectives consisting of **well** + past participle, e.g. **well written** (of a book, article, etc.), **well informed** (= knowing a lot about a subject), **well known** (= famous).

#### 4 Tick (✓) the correct sentence ending.

- Who is the *author* ☒ *gift* ☐ ?
- 1 The cover attracted my *chapter* ☐ *attention* ☐.
- 2 The author was *well known* ☐ *well written* ☐.
- 3 I read the second *title* ☐ *chapter* ☐.
- 4 The book looked very *readable* ☐ *well informed* ☐.
- 5 I wanted the cheaper one, so I bought the *hardback* ☐ *paperback* ☐.
- 6 I was in a bookshop the other day, just *attracting* ☐ *browsing* ☐.

#### 5 Complete the text.

My cousin has just written a reference book. He's not ► *well* \_\_\_\_\_ known, but he's a good (1) a \_\_\_\_\_. His book might attract a lot of (2) a \_\_\_\_\_ because it's called 'How to make a lot of money by doing very little' – isn't that a great (3) t \_\_\_\_\_ ! It's being published in hardback and (4) p \_\_\_\_\_. I read the first (5) c \_\_\_\_\_ about selling things on the internet, and it's really (6) f \_\_\_\_\_ – I couldn't put it down. On the front (7) c \_\_\_\_\_ there's a picture of my cousin in bed with his laptop; it's a bit silly. But it's a funny book and it's (8) well w \_\_\_\_\_.

#### 6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- What kind of books do you find most fascinating? \_\_\_\_\_
- What kind of reference books do you use most often? \_\_\_\_\_
- Do you enjoy browsing in bookshops? \_\_\_\_\_
- Are you ever attracted to a book just by the cover? \_\_\_\_\_
- Do you have more paperbacks or hardbacks? Why? \_\_\_\_\_

#### 7 Test yourself. Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. What are the words?



## 48 I can describe festivals 🎧



### 'LA TOMATINA': THE WORLD'S BIGGEST TOMATO FIGHT

The event takes place every August in Buñol, Spain. People come from all over the world to **participate** in this huge social **occasion**, which includes music, **parades**, dancing, and **fireworks**. The main event is a tomato fight in which 100 **tons** of over-ripe tomatoes are **thrown** in the streets. Trucks bring the tomatoes into the town, and the fight begins; it ends after exactly one hour. No one is very sure how or why this **festival** started!

### CHERRY BLOSSOM FESTIVAL, JAPAN

Cherry **blossom** is the national flower of Japan. And as spring **approaches**, people make special trips to various viewing sites to see the first signs of the cherry trees in flower. The trees are sometimes **lit up** at night. The festival includes all sorts of delicious food, games, rides, **parades**, folk music, religious ceremonies, and a beauty **contest**.



### THE RIO CARNIVAL ('CARNAVAL')

One of the most **spectacular entertainments** in the world, Carnival is a **wild** four-day celebration of music, dance, and food and drink, all over Rio. The event **means a lot** to the people from the poorest **neighbourhoods**, who spend months in preparation. It is an opportunity for the whole **community** to go out and **have fun** together. It ends with the Samba Parade, for which the performers **dress up** in the most **striking** costumes.

### spotlight festival, carnival, parade

A **festival** is a day or days when people celebrate something, often a religious event. A **carnival** is like a festival with people dancing and playing music in the streets. A **parade** is an organized event in which people move (**parade v**) through the streets, often on special vehicles, wearing **costumes** (special clothes), and playing music.

### Glossary

<b>participate (in sth)</b>	• become part of an activity. <b>syn take part in sth.</b>
<b>occasion</b>	• a time when sth happens.
<b>fireworks</b>	• objects that burn or explode in the sky with colours and noise.
<b>ton</b>	• a unit for measuring weight in Britain (one <b>ton</b> = 1,016 kilograms).
<b>throw sth</b>	• use your hand and arm to send an object through the air.
<b>blossom</b>	• a flower or mass of flowers especially on fruit trees in spring.
<b>approach sb/sth</b>	• come nearer to sb/sth.
<b>light sth up</b>	• make sth bright with light. <b>syn illuminate sth.</b>
<b>contest</b>	• a competition to see who is the best (e.g. a <b>beauty contest</b> ).
<b>spectacular</b>	• very impressive; large, beautiful, and often with lots of colour.
<b>entertainment</b>	• an activity that people enjoy watching and listening to, e.g. theatre, film, music (the people who entertain you are <b>entertainers</b> ).
<b>wild</b>	• exciting and enjoyable.
<b>mean a lot to sb</b>	• be very important to sb.
<b>neighbourhood</b>	• an area of a town and the people who live there.
<b>community</b>	• all the people who live in an area or town.
<b>have fun</b>	• enjoy yourself.
<b>dress up</b>	• put on special clothes either for fun or for a formal event.
<b>striking</b>	• very attractive in a way that causes people to notice.



# 1 Find one spelling mistake in each sentence. Write the correct word at the end.

- The event is really designed to serve the local community. community
- 1 It was really amazing to see the trees illuminated at night. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 Carnival takes place once a year, usually during the holiday season. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 As we approached the centre, we saw that the entertainment had started. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 It was a really spectacular evening, which we will never forget. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 5 The festival takes place every three years. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 6 The display of fireworks was absolutely amazing. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 7 They picked tuns of grapes. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 8 Spring is the time when people make special trips to see the trees in blossom. \_\_\_\_\_

## 2 Match 1–8 with a–i.

- |                                     |                                |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| ► The trees are covered in <u>e</u> | a contest.                     |
| 1 Fireworks _____                   | b flowers at the entertainers. |
| 2 The crowd threw _____             | c lit up the night sky.        |
| 3 The festival means _____          | d fun together.                |
| 4 Everyone just wants to have _____ | e blossom. ✓                   |
| 5 People dress up in _____          | f take part in the event.      |
| 6 Lots of people want to _____      | g occasion.                    |
| 7 There is even a beauty _____      | h a lot to the community.      |
| 8 It was a very wild _____          | i special costumes.            |

## 3 Replace the word or phrase in *italics* with one which has a similar meaning.

- We had a *good time* watching the carnival parade. fun
- 1 How many people *took part* in the event? \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 We were going to a party so we decided to *put on special clothes* for it. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 The church is usually *lit up* at night. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 She was wearing a *very attractive and unusual* dress. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 5 It's a great *time* because everyone goes onto the streets. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 6 The festival is an important event in the *local area where I live*. \_\_\_\_\_

## 4 Complete the questions.

### ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY

- 1 What is the most important f \_\_\_\_\_ or c \_\_\_\_\_ in your country? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Do people p \_\_\_\_\_ through the streets as a part of it? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Do you have other kinds of e \_\_\_\_\_ during it? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Have you ever t \_\_\_\_\_ p \_\_\_\_\_ in a parade? If so, what did you do? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Have you ever d \_\_\_\_\_ u \_\_\_\_\_ in a special costume for a festival? \_\_\_\_\_  
If so, what did you wear? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Are there any special o \_\_\_\_\_ when you have f \_\_\_\_\_ at night? \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 Do these different events m \_\_\_\_\_ a lot to you personally? \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 Would you like to p \_\_\_\_\_ in any of the festivals on page 124? \_\_\_\_\_  
Which one(s) and why? \_\_\_\_\_

## 5 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 4, or ask another student.

## 6 Test yourself. Cover the words in the glossary and look at the meanings. Say the words.



# Review: Media and entertainment

## Unit 41

1 One word is wrong in each line. Cross it out and write the correct word at the end.

- I spent the ~~whose~~ day waiting for the electrician to come. whole
- 1 The president received many death threads during his life. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Sales of newspapers have reclined over recent years. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I worry a lot about bomb stares where I live. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Are you interested in currant affairs? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 I saw a huge demonstration today; people were protecting about the war. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Do you usually get a dairy paper? ~ Yes, I get *The Times*. \_\_\_\_\_

2 One word is missing from each sentence. Where from? Write a word from the box at the end.

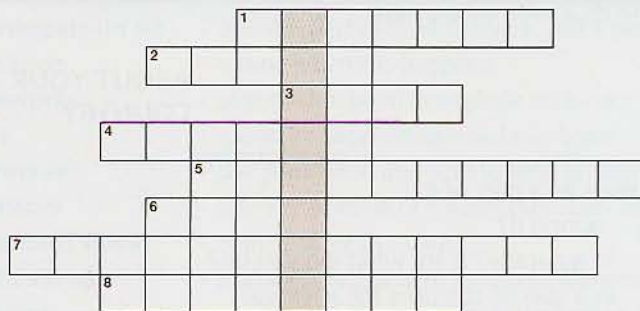
cultural editor pension made ✓ journalist claims headline

1

- I ~~made~~ a promise to help her, so I will do it. made
- 1 I enjoy all sorts of events, such as exhibitions and concerts. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 I think he must receive a because he's nearly 70. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I saw a strange newspaper the other day: 'Man bites dog'. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 She's in charge of the local newspaper; I believe she's been the for three years. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 The government that it can cut crime by 20 per cent this year, but I don't believe it. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 My cousin's a newspaper; he writes articles about current affairs. \_\_\_\_\_

## Unit 42

1 Complete the crossword. What is the word in the grey squares?



- 1 the process of deciding which parts of a film to show.
  - 2 film
  - 3 the part an actor plays
  - 4 the person who comes first in a competition
  - 5 extraordinary; very much better than usual
  - 6 the series of events that form the story of a film
  - 7 not as good or interesting as you had hoped
  - 8 rude language that may upset people
- The letters in the grey squares make the word \_\_\_\_\_



## Unit 43

## 1 Which words or phrases are being defined?

- an exhibition of paintings: a collection of paintings which are on display to the public
- 1 an \_\_\_\_\_ camera: one which works by itself
- 2 an \_\_\_\_\_ painting: a painting that shows the artist's feelings rather than showing the exact appearance of people or things
- 3 a \_\_\_\_\_: a place where an artist or photographer works
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ focus: not able to be seen clearly
- 5 a \_\_\_\_\_ drawing: one that shows things as they really are
- 6 a \_\_\_\_\_: a painting or drawing of the countryside
- 7 a \_\_\_\_\_: a type or kind
- 8 a \_\_\_\_\_ artist: an artist who has a lot of ability and experience

## Unit 44

## 1 Complete the words. Then write P next to those that are people.

- r e c o r d      ► v i o l i n i s t      P
- 1 c \_ n d \_ c t \_ r \_      7 t r \_ m p \_ t \_
- 2 l \_ \_ d s \_ n g \_ r \_      8 m \_ l \_ d \_
- 3 k \_ y b \_ \_ r d p l \_ y \_ r \_      9 f l \_ \_ t \_ s t \_
- 4 c \_ m p \_ s \_ r \_      10 g \_ \_ t \_ r \_ s t \_
- 5 f l \_ t \_      11 s \_ x \_ p h \_ n \_
- 6 b \_ n d \_      12 s \_ l \_ \_ r t \_ s t \_

## Unit 45

## 1 Tick (✓) the two correct words or phrases.

- five thousand spectators ☒ commentators ☐ supporters ☒
- 1 a football ground ☐ stadium ☐ circuit ☐      4 a motor-racing track ☐ ground ☐ circuit ☐
- 2 a tennis lap ☐ court ☐ umpire ☐      5 a football club ☐ referee ☐ umpire ☐
- 3 the new spectator ☐ coach ☐ manager ☐      6 a worldwide ☐ deep ☐ standard ☐ pool

## 2 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- The other members of the team chose him as their captain.
- 1 They're \_\_\_\_\_ a new stadium. It will be finished next year.
- 2 The ground has a \_\_\_\_\_ of 50,000.
- 3 I watch my team every week. I've \_\_\_\_\_ them for 25 years.
- 4 Alonso completed the last \_\_\_\_\_ of the circuit in one minute and 37 seconds.
- 5 The game was \_\_\_\_\_ for 25 minutes because the lights went out.
- 6 A \_\_\_\_\_ of 28,000 watched the last game.
- 7 Who won the Drivers' World \_\_\_\_\_ last year?
- 8 The \_\_\_\_\_ of a football pitch is about 100 metres; the \_\_\_\_\_ is about 50.



## Unit 46

## 1 Match 1–9 with a–j.

- It was an outstanding f
- 1 About thirty took part \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 It was a very one- \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 He was critical \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 He still holds \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 She's the favourite \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 She's in the semi- \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 The game takes \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 He's a difficult \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 She won five titles \_\_\_\_\_

- a overall
- b of the performance.
- c the record.
- d place on Tuesday.
- e in yesterday's race.
- f to win.
- g performance. ✓
- h sided contest.
- i final
- j opponent

## Unit 47

## 1 Tick the correct column.

	Yes	No
► If a novel is readable, it means that you have definitely read it.		✓
1 Reference books are useful when you want to get information.		
2 There is often a picture on the cover of a book.		
3 A well-known person is someone only a few people have heard of.		
4 An encyclopedia is arranged in alphabetical order.		
5 If you are browsing in a shop, you definitely won't buy anything.		
6 You'll find novels in the non-fiction section of a bookshop.		
7 An autobiography is someone's life story, written by someone else.		
8 A manual is something most people read for pleasure.		

## Unit 48

## 1 One word or phrase is missing from each sentence. Where from? Write it at the end. Use words from the box in the correct form.

wild festival community ✓ throw mean striking parade take part neighbourhood

- Anyone in the whole / can participate. community
- 1 Everyone through the main streets in the town. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 The people in the where I live are very friendly. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 It's a two-day, which we have every year. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 It was quite a party; we had great fun. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Do you ever in parades? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 I enjoy the carnival: it a lot to me. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 She wore a really dress with gold flowers on it. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 We all had to a ball and try to hit the moving object. \_\_\_\_\_

## 49 I can get through exams

### A guide to exam success

- Follow the invigilator's instructions. Don't take any forbidden items into the room, or try to communicate with other candidates. You will be disqualified for cheating.
- Before you start, read the paper carefully. Don't waste time copying the questions; the examiner knows what they are.
- Planning is essential in successful writing. Devote 5–10 minutes to making notes.
- Have a positive attitude. It's your chance to show what you know. And it will be a relief when it's all over in a few hours.



### Glossary

<b>success</b>	• the achievement of sth you have wanted. <b>succeed</b> v.	<b>paper</b>	• the written questions in an exam.
<b>follow instructions</b>	• do what sb tells you to do.	<b>carefully</b>	• If you read sth <b>carefully</b> , you read slowly and pay attention.
<b>invigilator</b>	• the person watching students in the exam room.	<b>examiner</b>	• the person who will read and mark the candidate's answer.
<b>item</b>	• a thing or an object.	<b>planning</b>	• the act or process of making plans for sth.
<b>communicate with sb</b>	• talk to or make signs to sb.	<b>essential</b>	• completely necessary and important in a particular situation.
<b>candidate</b>	• a person taking an exam.	<b>devote time to sth/sb</b>	• give proper time to sth/sb.
<b>disqualify sb</b>	• officially stop sb from taking part in sth because they have broken a rule.	<b>attitude</b>	• the way you think, feel, or behave.
<b>cheat</b>	• do sth dishonest to get an advantage for yourself (a person is a <b>cheat</b> N).	<b>relief</b>	• the feeling you have when sth unpleasant stops. <b>relieved</b> ADJ.

### 1 Circle the correct word.

- Read the planning/paper carefully.
- 1 The examiner/invigilator watches students during the exam.
  - 2 What's the best way to achieve relief/success in the exam?
  - 3 If you want to succeed/cheat, you should study hard.
  - 4 A positive attitude/candidate will help you be more successful.
  - 5 Students should communicate/follow the instructions they hear.
  - 6 If you cheat, you will be disqualified/relieved.

### 2 Complete the words in the text.

My brother has very little ► success in exams. He gets very nervous and generally has a negative (1) a \_\_\_\_\_ to them. He's so nervous that he can't follow the (2) i \_\_\_\_\_ given by the (3) i \_\_\_\_\_. He once forgot that he had his dictionary in his pocket; he was accused of (4) c \_\_\_\_\_ and was (5) d \_\_\_\_\_ for taking a forbidden (6) i \_\_\_\_\_ into the exam room. My mother gives him lots of advice, though; she tells him not to panic and to read the (7) p \_\_\_\_\_ slowly before he writes anything, and that it's (8) e \_\_\_\_\_ that he plans his answers (9) c \_\_\_\_\_. However, he never (10) d \_\_\_\_\_ enough time to the (11) p \_\_\_\_\_, so the (12) e \_\_\_\_\_ must find his answers very difficult to understand. In our house, it's always such a (13) r \_\_\_\_\_ if he passes an exam.

### 3 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?



## 50 I can describe university life

### A Academic life

Word	Example	Meaning
academic	I enjoy <b>academic</b> subjects like history.	connected to education, especially school or university.
undergraduate	<b>Undergraduates</b> usually do a three-year course.	a university student studying for their first degree.
graduate	She's an Oxford <b>graduate</b> . He <b>graduated</b> last year.	a person who has finished their degree (when they finish, they <b>graduate</b> v).
tutor	You can ask your <b>tutor</b> for advice on your work.	sb who teaches and looks after a student or a small group of students.
professor	She's a <b>professor</b> of law.	the highest level of teacher in a university.
lecture	I went to an interesting <b>lecture</b> on Italian politics.	a talk given to a large group to teach them a subject (the person is a <b>lecturer</b> N).
seminar	Are you going to the <b>seminar</b> this morning?	a class at a university where a small group discuss a subject with a tutor.
debate	We <b>had</b> a great <b>debate</b> .	a formal discussion.
attend sth	You have to <b>attend</b> lectures.	go to sth, or be present at sth.
take notes	Don't forget to <b>take notes</b> .	write words quickly to help you remember sth.
read widely	Try to <b>read widely</b> .	read a lot of different kinds of books.
write a thesis	I'm <b>writing a thesis</b> on global warming.	do a long piece of writing on a particular academic subject.
do research	You <b>do research</b> for a PhD.	do a long and careful study of a subject.
continuous assessment	We don't have exams; it's all <b>continuous assessment</b> .	a way of judging students by looking at the work they do during the year.

#### 1 Tick (✓) the words that are people.

► professor ✓

► assessment ✗

1 thesis \_\_\_\_\_

4 graduate \_\_\_\_\_

7 seminar \_\_\_\_\_

2 debate \_\_\_\_\_

5 undergraduate \_\_\_\_\_

8 research \_\_\_\_\_

3 lecture \_\_\_\_\_

6 tutor \_\_\_\_\_

9 lecturer \_\_\_\_\_

#### 2 Complete the text.

If you are an ► undergraduate at university in Britain, you spend a lot of time studying alone, but you also have to (1) a \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of (2) s \_\_\_\_\_ and (3) l \_\_\_\_\_ and take (4) n \_\_\_\_\_. In seminars, the discussion is usually led by a (5) t \_\_\_\_\_. You have to read (6) w \_\_\_\_\_ and you may have to express your opinions on a range of (7) a \_\_\_\_\_ topics. In many courses, there is continuous (8) a \_\_\_\_\_: the marks you get for your essays go towards your final results, after which, if you are successful, you (9) g \_\_\_\_\_.

#### 3 Test yourself. Look at the words and cover the examples and meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

## B Student life

### Advice for new students

- In Britain, many university students live **away from home**. This means you get the **freedom** and **opportunity** to meet new people. Most students choose to live in a **hall of residence** in their first year, where you are less likely to be **homesick** or lonely.
- Student life is all about learning to **manage** your money: **tuition fees**, **loans**, bills, accommodation fees, etc. You may be able to get a **scholarship**, and many students find part-time jobs to help pay the bills.
- At university, you can be **flexible** about when you study, but be sure to get out of bed **in time** for lectures, do your work **on time**, and plan your **revision** period before exams.

### Glossary

<b>away from home</b>	• in a different place from your home. <b>OPP</b> at home.	<b>fees</b>	• money you pay for the professional advice or service of a doctor, lawyer, etc. ( <b>tuition fees</b> are the money that you pay to be taught).
<b>freedom</b>	• the right or ability to say or do what you want.	<b>loan</b>	• If you <b>take out a loan</b> , you borrow money, usually from a bank.
<b>opportunity</b>	• the possibility to do sth that you want to do. <b>SYN</b> chance.	<b>scholarship</b>	• money that an organization gives sb to help them study.
<b>hall of residence</b>	• (in universities) a building where students live.	<b>flexible</b>	• able to change easily. <b>flexibility</b> N.
<b>homesick</b>	• sad because you are away from home and you miss it.	<b>revision</b>	• the process of studying sth again to prepare for an exam. <b>revise</b> v.
<b>manage sth</b>	• be in control of sth.		

### 4 Complete the sentences with words from the box.

revision on time in time manage flexible✓  
opportunity freedom homesick

- I can see you any day this week – I can be flexible.
- I had the \_\_\_\_\_ to meet the president.
  - The train was \_\_\_\_\_, fortunately.
  - I think children have too much \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Do lots of \_\_\_\_\_ before the exam.
  - I don't know how to \_\_\_\_\_ my money.
  - I got there \_\_\_\_\_ to see Joel before he left.
  - I lived abroad for a year but I was \_\_\_\_\_ and I missed my family.

### spotlight **in time, on time**

If you are **in time** for something, you arrive before or at the correct time.  
If you are **on time** for something, you arrive at exactly the correct time.  
*He arrived **in time** for the lesson.*  
(= before the lesson started.)  
*The lesson started **on time**.*  
(= at the correct time.)

### 5 Complete the questions. Then write your answers, or ask another student.

#### ABOUT YOU

- Do students usually live at home, or a \_\_\_\_\_ from home?
- Do most students live in halls of r \_\_\_\_\_?
- Do they have to pay t \_\_\_\_\_ fees?
- Do they have to take out l \_\_\_\_\_ to pay the bills?
- Can they get a s \_\_\_\_\_ to help pay for their studies?
- Would you like the c \_\_\_\_\_ to study abroad?

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

### 6 Test yourself. Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. Can you remember the words?



## 51 I can apply for a job

### Applying for a job with FamAid UK

Wherever you are **based**, you can apply for any advertised **vacancy**.

### Work permits

For jobs in the UK, you will usually be expected to have a **valid** UK work permit. For jobs outside the UK, the local FamAid office will **advise** you about the permit you may need.

### Closing dates

Your **application** must reach us by the advertised closing date. Online applications will be **acknowledged automatically** by email.

### Selection process

If we would like you to **attend** an **interview**, we will **contact** you. At that time, and if **required**, we will also **assess** other skills you may have or need.

If you are not successful, we will contact you and, wherever possible, **give** you **feedback**.

If you are the successful **candidate**, we will offer you the position, but this is **subject to** satisfactory **references**. We shall also **request confirmation** that you are medically fit to do the job and have the necessary permit/visa.

### Glossary

#### apply for sth

- ask for sth in writing (often a job or course).

**application** N.

#### be based somewhere

- If you are **based in** a **place**, that place is the centre for your work.

#### vacancy

- a job that is available for sb to do.

#### work permit

- an official document which says you are allowed to work.

#### valid

- If sth is **valid**, it is legally acceptable and can be used.

#### advise sb

- tell sb the best thing to do. SYN **give sb advice** (**advice** N, U).

#### acknowledge sth

- let sb know that you have received sth from them. **acknowledgement** N.

#### automatically

- without any human control.

#### process

- a series of things that are done for a particular reason.

#### interview

- a meeting in which sb is asked questions to find out if they are suitable for a job, course, etc. (the person who asks the questions is an **interviewer**). **interview** sb v.

#### contact sb

- phone or write to sb.

#### assess sth/sb

- decide on the quality or ability of sth/sb. **assessment** N.

#### give sb feedback

- give sb advice or criticism about how they have done sth.

#### candidate

- a person who makes a formal application for a job.

#### reference

- a statement or letter which describes sb's character and ability to do a job (a person who writes this is a **referee**).

#### confirmation

- a statement in writing which says that sth is true or accurate. **confirm** v.

### spotlight Formal language

In a written text like this, some language will be formal. For example: **attend sth** (= go to/for sth), **require sth** (= need sth), **request sth** (= ask for sth), **subject to sth** (= depending on sth), **position** (= job), and **shall** (= will). The words in bold are more formal than the words in brackets, which we would normally use in spoken English.

**1**  Cover the glossary and complete the table.

Verb	Noun	Verb	Noun
advise	▶ advice	confirm	
apply		acknowledge	
assess		interview	

**2** There is a mistake in each sentence. Write the correct sentence at the end.

▶ My old boss said he would be my reference. My old boss said he would be my referee.

- 1 They said they'd contact to me. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Is she applying a job? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Have you got a work permission? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 The company is based on Tokyo. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 He gave me some good advices. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 She gave me foodback after the interview. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 I have to confirmate it in writing. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 If you apply for a job, it's quite a long processment. \_\_\_\_\_

**3** Replace the underlined words with a more formal word or phrase with the same meaning.

- ▶ We will contact you as soon as possible. shall
- 1 Has the company asked for references? \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 They offered me the job on Thursday. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 I went for an interview last week. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 If you need more information, please contact me. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 5 We're going to give him the job, depending on satisfactory references. \_\_\_\_\_

**4** Complete the sentences with a single word.

- ▶ You can't use this visa any longer – it's not valid.
- 1 I work in lots of places, but I'm \_\_\_\_\_ in Bristol.
  - 2 She was angry because they didn't \_\_\_\_\_ that they had received her letter.
  - 3 He offered me the job on the phone, but I haven't had written \_\_\_\_\_ yet.
  - 4 They said they would \_\_\_\_\_ me by phone when they've made a decision.
  - 5 You don't need to ask for confirmation; they will reply \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 6 They interviewed four other \_\_\_\_\_ for the job as well as me.
  - 7 Val wrote to the company for a job, but there are no \_\_\_\_\_ at the moment.
  - 8 I hope they'll \_\_\_\_\_ me feedback after the interview.
  - 9 He wants to \_\_\_\_\_ for the job, but he still has to fill in the \_\_\_\_\_ form.
  - 10 You have to do tests and have several interviews; it's quite a long \_\_\_\_\_.

**5** ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions, or ask another student.

- 1 What jobs have you applied for in the past? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 How many interviews have you had? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Have any interviewers given you feedback after the interview? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 How many times have you been the successful candidate? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Who were your referees? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Have you ever had to get a work permit? If so, where? \_\_\_\_\_

**6**  Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. Can you remember the meanings and other parts of speech?



## 52 I can describe jobs

### A Careers

**Careers** 4 U advertises jobs across a range of market **sectors**. Register by email now and you can be first in line to apply for **jobs** as they appear. Just complete the following:

Please select any two sectors in which you have **experience** and/or **qualifications**.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>engineering</b>   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>management</b>  |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>military</b>      | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>retail</b>      |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>training</b>      | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>finance</b>     |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>publishing</b>    | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>recruitment</b> |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>manufacturing</b> |  |

#### Spotlight **career, job, profession**

A **career** is the series of jobs you have in a particular area, e.g. *a career in publishing*. A **job** is any work you do to earn money, e.g. being a waiter, teacher, etc. A **profession** is a job with a high level of training and/or education, e.g. *the medical/teaching profession*.

#### Glossary

**sector** a part of the business activity of a country  
(**public sector** = controlled by the government;  
**private sector** = controlled by private companies).

**experience** the things that you have done in your life.

**qualifications** the exams you have passed or courses you have finished.

**engineering** the activity of designing roads, railways, bridges, etc.

**military** connected with soldiers, or the army, navy, and air force.

**training** the activity of teaching people the skills they need for a job. **train sb** v.

**publishing** the business of producing and selling books, magazines, etc. **publish sth** v.

**manufacturing** the business of producing goods in factories. **manufacture sth** v.

**management** the control of a business or organization. **manage sb/sth** v.

**retail** selling goods to people directly in shops, on the internet, etc.

**finance** the activity of managing money.

**recruitment** the business of finding people for job vacancies. **recruit sb** v.

#### 1 What sector do these people work in?












- I produce books and then we sell them. publishing
- |                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 1 I teach people their jobs. _____ | 5 I produce cars. _____                      |
| 2 I'm a soldier. _____             | 6 I'm the boss of a company. _____           |
| 3 I sell clothes. _____            | 7 I control the money in our business. _____ |
| 4 I design motorways. _____        | 8 I fill job vacancies in companies. _____   |

#### 2 Complete the words in the text.

I've just left university and I'm hoping to have a ► career in the private (1) s\_\_\_\_\_, and eventually I'd like to be in (2) m\_\_\_\_\_ and have my own business. I had a couple of jobs in small companies in my holidays, so I have a little (3) e\_\_\_\_\_. I'm hoping to work for a large company to start with; they do a lot of (4) t\_\_\_\_\_, and I'll be able to get some extra (5) q\_\_\_\_\_ too. My father's in the legal (6) p\_\_\_\_\_, but for some reason, he wants me to have some experience in the (7) m\_\_\_\_\_ as a soldier. I've no idea why, though.

#### 3 ABOUT YOU Look at the website again. Which sectors do you have experience or qualifications in?

## B Jobs

Job		What does he/she do?	Glossary
plumber		installs and repairs water pipes, taps, central heating, baths, etc.	<b>install sth</b> put in some equipment so that it is ready to use.
mechanic		repairs engines, especially in <b>vehicles</b> .	<b>vehicle</b> e.g. car, bus, lorry.
electrician		installs, connects, or repairs <b>electrical</b> wiring.	<b>electrical</b> of or about electricity
carpenter		makes or repairs parts of a building and other <b>objects</b> made of wood.	<b>object</b> a thing that can be seen or touched but is not alive.
nanny		takes care of / <b>cares</b> for children in their own home.	<b>take care of / care for sb/sth</b> look after sb/sth.
travel agent		<b>makes</b> travel <b>arrangements</b> for people.	<b>make arrangements for sb/sth</b> make plans or preparations for sb/sth.
estate agent		buys and sells houses or <b>land</b> for people.	<b>land</b> an area of ground; an area used for a special purpose.
importer		<b>imports</b> goods.	<b>import sth</b> buy goods from another country to sell in your own country. <b>opp export sth.</b>
priest		performs religious ceremonies in some religions.	
civil servant		works for the <b>civil service</b> , i.e. all government departments except the military.	<b>i.e.</b> in other words; that is (used when you are explaining or defining sth).
sales rep / representative		travels to different places and sells the <b>products</b> of a particular company.	<b>product</b> a thing that people make or grow in order to sell.

### 4 Cover the table above. Are these sentences true or false? Write T or F.

- An importer exports goods to sell. F
- 1 An estate agent sells holidays. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 A carpenter makes wooden objects. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 A civil servant works for a company. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 A priest conducts religious ceremonies. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 A mechanic can repair vehicles. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 An electrician fixes electrical wiring. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 A plumber can fix your central heating. \_\_\_\_\_

### 5 Cross out one word which is wrong. Write the correct word at the end.

- I haven't got central heating; I need a plumber to ~~repair~~ a new system. install
- 1 Our estate agent made the arrangements, i.e. buying tickets, booking hotels. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 The estate agent sold the landing which belonged to the farm. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 What produces does that company make? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 My sister does quite a lot of training for the civil servant. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 I believe he exports silver jewellery from abroad. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 A nanny takes care for children. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 Sales representants have to travel a lot. \_\_\_\_\_

### 6 Test yourself. Look at the jobs and cover the other columns. What do the people do?

## 53 I can describe a career

### A Career structure

Two years ago, I got a **challenging** job with good **prospects** in local radio. I worked hard and, as a **reward**, I was **promoted**. I was delighted. I was quickly **transferred** to a different **department**. Then things went wrong: one colleague **got the sack**, and another **handed in his notice**. After that, ten people were **made redundant**. I didn't want to be **out of work**, so I decided to look **elsewhere**. I applied for a job in TV and was **appointed** assistant director. Amazing!

#### spotlight *dismiss, sack, fire*

An employer may **dismiss** an employee if their work is not good enough or if they have done something wrong. In less formal English, you can say **sack sb**, **give sb the sack**, or **fire sb**. An employee can **get the sack** INF.

He  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{was sacked} \\ \text{was given the sack} \\ \text{got the sack} \\ \text{was fired / was dismissed} \end{array} \right\}$  for being rude.

#### Glossary

**challenging** difficult to do, but interesting and enjoyable. **challenge** N.

**prospects** (PL) chances of being successful in the future.

**reward** sth you get because you have done sth helpful, worked hard, etc. **reward sb** V.

**promote sb** (usually passive) give sb a better job at a higher level in a company. **promotion** N.

**transfer sb/sth (from ... to ...)** move sb/sth from one place to another.

**department** a section of a business, university, etc.

**hand in your notice** say officially that you want to leave your job. **SYNS** **resign**, **quit** INF.

**make sb redundant** (often passive) make sb leave their job because they are not needed any more.

**out of work** not working and unable to find a job. **SYN** **unemployed**.

**elsewhere** in or to another place.

**appoint sb** choose sb for a job.

#### 1 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| ► a challenge   a reward <u>D</u>      | 5 prospects   chances of success _____          |
| 1 out of work   unemployed _____       | 6 hand in your notice   resign _____            |
| 2 be promoted   be appointed _____     | 7 be sacked   be promoted _____                 |
| 3 get the sack   sack someone _____    | 8 transfer sb   move sb to another office _____ |
| 4 fire someone   dismiss someone _____ | 9 make someone redundant   fire someone _____   |

#### 2 Complete the sentences with a single word.

- |  |           |
|--|-----------|
| ► I was glad to be <u>appointed</u> to the job I have. ( <i>chosen for the job</i> ) | ABOUT YOU |
| 1 My job's very _____. ( <i>difficult but interesting</i> )                          | _____     |
| 2 I want to transfer to another _____. ( <i>section of the business</i> )            | _____     |
| 3 I have good _____ in my job. ( <i>chances of success</i> )                         | _____     |
| 4 I'd really love to be _____. ( <i>given a better job in the company</i> )          | _____     |
| 5 I'm bored at work, so I'm going to look _____. ( <i>in another place</i> )         | _____     |
| 6 I've never been _____. ( <i>out of work</i> )                                      | _____     |
| 7 I'd hate to have to _____ someone. ( <i>dismiss</i> )                              | _____     |
| 8 If I hated my job, I would definitely _____. ( <i>hand in my notice</i> )          | _____     |

#### 3 ABOUT YOU Have you got a job? If so, are the sentences in Exercise 2 true for you? Write true or false, or talk to another student who has a job.

## B A job with responsibility

KATE Amy, I know you work on reception at the sports centre, but what does that **involve**?

AMY Well, I **handle** all customer bookings, and answer **enquiries** over the phone or **face-to-face**. Occasionally I also have to **deal with complaints** from **members of the public**, and if there's a problem, I'm the one who has to **solve** it.

KATE So it's not just **clerical duties**, then?

AMY Oh, no. Some weekends I'm **in charge of** the whole centre, and in an emergency it's my job to **make sure** that everyone is safe. I have a lot of **responsibility**.

### Glossary

<b>what does (your job) involve?</b>	• = what do you have to do (in your job)?
<b>handle sth/sb</b>	• take suitable action in a situation. SYN <b>deal with sth/sb</b> .
<b>enquiry</b>	• a question about sth ( <b>make an enquiry</b> ).
<b>face-to-face</b>	• with and looking at sb.
<b>complaint</b>	• a statement that you are not satisfied with sth ( <b>make a complaint</b> ). <b>complain</b> v.
<b>members of the public</b>	• people in general (also <b>the public</b> ).
<b>solve a problem</b>	• find an answer to a problem. SYN <b>find a solution</b> .
<b>clerical</b>	• connected with office work, especially keeping records or accounts (the person who does this is a <b>clerk</b> ).
<b>duties</b>	• the tasks you do when you are at work.
<b>in charge of sth/sb</b>	• in a position of control over sth/sb. SYN <b>responsible for sb/sth</b> .
<b>make sure</b>	• check sth so that you can be certain about it.
<b>responsibility</b>	• the fact or duty of being in control of sth, so that it is your fault if sth goes wrong.

### 4 One word is missing in each line. Rewrite the sentences, adding the missing word.

- does her job involve? What does her job involve?
- I'd like to an enquiry about the club. \_\_\_\_\_
  - I talked to her to-face. \_\_\_\_\_
  - It's very hard to deal this situation. \_\_\_\_\_
  - Who's charge of this department? \_\_\_\_\_
  - You have to sure the door is locked. \_\_\_\_\_
  - We're not responsible the cleaning. \_\_\_\_\_
  - Do you know how to the problem? \_\_\_\_\_
  - I want to a complaint about the service. \_\_\_\_\_

### 5 Complete the texts.

A I used to have a boring office job – I was a ► clerk \_\_\_\_\_ in the civil service for five years, but I couldn't stand it and left. I've now got a job in a tourist information office in Liverpool and I really like it. My (1) d \_\_\_\_\_ include helping people to find accommodation, dealing with their (2) e \_\_\_\_\_ about places to visit, and finding (3) s \_\_\_\_\_ to their travel problems. I'm also (4) r \_\_\_\_\_ for the Beatles tour: I take people to John Lennon and Paul McCartney's childhood homes. I try to make (5) s \_\_\_\_\_ everything goes well.

B I work in a travel agent's, and my job (6) i \_\_\_\_\_ organizing trips for people. I love meeting the (7) p \_\_\_\_\_ and I really enjoy (8) h \_\_\_\_\_ the money side of things. Some of my work is just routine (9) c \_\_\_\_\_ work; other times, I have a lot of (10) r \_\_\_\_\_. For example, if a customer's holiday goes wrong, I have to (11) d \_\_\_\_\_ with their (12) c \_\_\_\_\_.

### 6 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?



## 54 I can describe working conditions

### Job questionnaire

- Do you feel your job is **stressful**?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- How much **time off** do you **get** every year?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Do you ever have to do **shift work**?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Do you often have to **work overtime**?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Do you normally receive an annual **bonus**?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Are you entitled to sick pay?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Do you **have the right to** join a **trade union**?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Do people in your kind of job ever **go on strike**?  
\_\_\_\_\_

### spotlight **time off**

If you **have**, **get**, or **take time off**, you are not at work, school, etc. perhaps because you're ill, or on holiday.  
*I had a day off to go to a wedding.*  
*He's taking a month off work.*

### Glossary

- |                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| <b>working conditions</b>          | • the arrangements made at a place of work for physical comfort and safety.  |
| <b>stressful</b>                   | • making you worry a lot. <b>stress</b> N.   |
| <b>shift work</b>                  | • a pattern of work in which you sometimes work during the day and sometimes at night.                                   |
| <b>overtime</b>                    | • the time you spend working after your normal working hours (you can <b>work overtime</b> or <b>do overtime</b> INF).   |
| <b>bonus</b>                       | • an extra payment that is added to what you normally receive.   |
| <b>sick pay</b>                    | • money you receive when you are ill and cannot work.  |
| <b>be entitled to (do) sth</b>     | • be allowed sth or to do sth because it is the law.<br>SYN <b>have the right to (do) sth</b> .                          |
| <b>union</b> OR <b>trade union</b> | • an organization of people in the same kind of work who try to get better pay and working conditions for their members. |
| <b>go on strike</b>                | • refuse to work for a period of time as a protest for more money, better conditions, etc.                               |

### 1 Complete the words.

- I often do s h i f t work.
- I belong to a t \_\_\_\_\_ union.
  - We went on st \_\_\_\_\_ last year.
  - Do you get an annual b \_\_\_\_\_ s?
  - Our w \_\_\_\_\_ ing c \_\_\_\_\_ itions are good.
  - I often have to work o \_\_\_\_\_ time.
  - She t \_\_\_\_\_ two weeks o \_\_\_\_\_ in summer.
  - Does he suffer from st \_\_\_\_\_ in his job?

### 2 Write the words in the correct order, and add the final word.

- you / working / have / good / do Do you have good working conditions?
- is / she / trade / member / a / of / a / ? \_\_\_\_\_
  - we / sick / are / to / entitled / ? \_\_\_\_\_
  - take / like / to / I'd / week / a . \_\_\_\_\_
  - you / shift / don't / why / like / ? \_\_\_\_\_
  - I / left / today / time / on / didn't / I / do . \_\_\_\_\_
  - go / why / the / on / did / workers / ? \_\_\_\_\_

### 3 ABOUT YOU If you have a job, write your answers to the questionnaire. If you haven't got a job, ask a student who has.

### 4 Test yourself. Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. Say the words.

## Review: Work and study

### Unit 49

1 Rewrite the sentences using the words on the right. The meaning must stay the same.

- I'm a careful driver. CAREFULLY I drive carefully.
- 1 You have to do what he tells you. INSTRUCTIONS \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Don't talk to anyone. COMMUNICATE \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 The way you think and behave is important. ATTITUDE \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 It was a relief to finish the exam. RELIEVED \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Spend ten minutes making notes. DEVOTE \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 He would never do anything dishonest in an exam. CHEAT \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 If you don't get what you want, try again. SUCCEED \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 Do we need dictionaries? ESSENTIAL \_\_\_\_\_

### Unit 50

1 Tick (✓) the words or phrases that are correct.

- At university, students have to *attend lectures* ☒ *read widely* ☒ *teach professors* ☐.
- 1 A *tutor* ☐ *seminar* ☐ *lecture* ☐ is a type of class at a university.
- 2 Some students live and study *at home* ☐ *homesick* ☐ *away from home* ☐.
- 3 *Undergraduates* ☐ *Professors* ☐ *Tutors* ☐ are types of teacher.
- 4 In order to have enough money, students often *pay tuition fees* ☐ *take out a loan* ☐ *try to get a scholarship* ☐.
- 5 In seminars, students may *have a debate* ☐ *take notes* ☐ *write a thesis* ☐.

2 One word is missing in each sentence. Where from? Write it at the end.

- I won't have enough money to live on, so I'll have to / out a loan. take
- 1 Our seminar started time at 10.00. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 My sister is studying away from home and she's living in a hall residence. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 How much were the tuition for your summer course? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 We had to hurry but we arrived just time for the beginning of the lecture. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 At the moment, she's some medical research as part of her studies. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 I would like to have the to study abroad, perhaps in Canada. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 When I was at university, our essays were all part of the continuous. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 Do you study away home? \_\_\_\_\_

### Unit 51

1 There is a spelling mistake in each sentence. Write the correct word at the end.

- Do you need a reference? reference
- 1 Is there a job vacancie? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Did they give you any advise? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Did he acknowlege the application? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 I haven't got a valide work permit. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 They asess people differently. \_\_\_\_\_



- 6 Do they require more information? \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 They reply automatically. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 It's a long selection process. \_\_\_\_\_

## 2 Complete the dialogue.

- A You know that job ► vacancy . Did you (1) \_\_\_\_\_ for it?
- B Yes, and I went for an (2) \_\_\_\_\_ on Wednesday.
- A Wow. How did it go?
- B It seemed OK, but they didn't give me any (3) \_\_\_\_\_ afterwards, so it's hard to know. They said they'd (4) \_\_\_\_\_ me by the end of the week if they were going to offer me the job.
- A What about (5) \_\_\_\_\_ ?
- B They said they'd already spoken to one of my referees.
- A Oh really? And were there many other (6) \_\_\_\_\_ ?
- B Yes, over a hundred. I'm not sure if I want the job because it's based (7) \_\_\_\_\_ Scotland. Still, at least I don't need a work (8) \_\_\_\_\_ .

## Unit 52

### 1 Tick (✓) the correct words.

- A plumber ☒ A nanny ☐ An electrician ☒ often installs things.
- 1 A carpenter ☐ A travel agent ☐ A plumber ☐ gets his hands dirty.
- 2 A nanny ☐ A plumber ☐ An importer ☐ looks after people.
- 3 A civil servant ☐ A carpenter ☐ An estate agent ☐ usually works in an office.
- 4 An electrician ☐ A sales rep ☐ A mechanic ☐ often has to repair things.
- 5 A sales rep ☐ A civil servant ☐ A travel agent ☐ wants to sell you something.
- 6 A plumber ☐ An estate agent ☐ A carpenter ☐ has had a lot of technical training.

### 2 Complete the dialogues.

- Miguel produces his own magazine. ~ Really? And how long has he worked in publishing ?
- 1 Dr Erman seems very good, but how much \_\_\_\_\_ does he have? ~ Oh, I think he's been in the medical \_\_\_\_\_ for about ten years now.
- 2 Who made all the travel \_\_\_\_\_ for your last holiday? ~ My wife did, but that's her job; she's a travel \_\_\_\_\_ .
- 3 How long has your father been a civil \_\_\_\_\_ ? ~ Thirty-five years. He's spent his whole \_\_\_\_\_ in the civil \_\_\_\_\_ .
- 4 Did the company give you much \_\_\_\_\_ after you started? ~ Yes, they sent me on several courses, and I took exams to get extra \_\_\_\_\_ .
- 5 What kind of \_\_\_\_\_ does she sell? ~ Electrical stuff mostly, but she's only been a sales \_\_\_\_\_ for six months.

## Unit 53

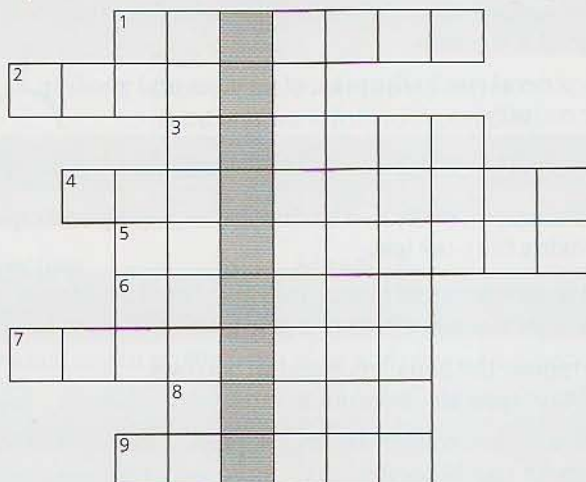
### 1 Complete the text using words from the box in the correct form.

clerk ✓ transfer charge responsibility involve challenging  
resign complaints elsewhere promote work deal



When I left school, I got a job as a ► clerk with an insurance company. It mainly (1) \_\_\_\_\_ filling in forms and typing lists of names, so it wasn't very (2) \_\_\_\_\_. After a few months, though, I was (3) \_\_\_\_\_ and they gave me a job where I was (4) \_\_\_\_\_ with the public, which was much more interesting. Eventually, I was (5) \_\_\_\_\_ to another department where I had to handle customers' (6) \_\_\_\_\_, which wasn't much fun. I hated it so I decided to (7) \_\_\_\_\_ and look (8) \_\_\_\_\_. In fact, that was rather stupid of me, because I was out of (9) \_\_\_\_\_ for several months. Anyway, in the end I got a fantastic job working in a zoo, and I'm still here. I'm in (10) \_\_\_\_\_ of the snakes, which is an enormous (11) \_\_\_\_\_ but I love it!

## 2 Complete the crossword. The letters in the grey squares spell out another word. What is it?



- 1 choose someone for a job
- 2 something you get when you have been helpful or worked hard
- 3 if you resign, you hand in your \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 out of work
- 5 chances of being successful in the future
- 6 the tasks you do when you are at work
- 7 connected with office work, such as keeping records and doing accounts
- 8 find a solution to a problem
- 9 deal with something or control it

The letters in the grey squares make the word \_\_\_\_\_.

## Unit 54

### 1 Complete the words in the sentences.

- She's been very ill, but she doesn't get any sick pay \_\_\_\_\_.
- 1 He always looks worried because he has such a s \_\_\_\_\_ job.
  - 2 Everyone has the r \_\_\_\_\_ to a lunch break – it's the law.
  - 3 I don't belong to a t \_\_\_\_\_ u \_\_\_\_\_ any longer.
  - 4 Are you e \_\_\_\_\_ to sick pay in your job?
  - 5 I often have to work nights, but I don't really like s \_\_\_\_\_ work.
  - 6 Bus drivers have a basic 35-hour week, but many of them work o \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 7 A lot of people get an annual b \_\_\_\_\_ in addition to their salaries.
  - 8 Some of the workers went on s \_\_\_\_\_ last year for higher pay.



## 55 I can talk about finance

### A Financial terms

Example	Meaning
We need to <b>raise capital</b> .	<b>capital</b> the money you need to start a business (to <b>raise capital</b> is to find the money you need).
The company has an <b>annual turnover</b> of \$20 million.	<b>turnover</b> the total value of goods or services that a company sells in a particular period of time ( <b>annual</b> = every year). <b>syn</b> sales revenue.
<b>Operating costs</b> have gone up this year.	<b>operating costs</b> the amount of money that a business needs to spend to continue as a business.
<b>Inflation</b> is now at 3 per cent.	<b>inflation</b> a general rise in the price of services and goods in a particular country.
We paid £1 million in <b>tax</b> .	<b>tax</b> money you have to pay to the government.
The company <b>made a pre-tax profit</b> of £2 million.	<b>profit</b> the money you make in a business after paying costs ( <b>pre-tax</b> is before paying tax). <b>opp</b> loss.
I think the company has <b>cash flow problems</b> .	<b>cash flow</b> the movement of money into and out of a business (a <b>cash flow problem</b> means more money is going out than coming in).
I need a <b>bank loan</b> . They <b>took out</b> a loan.	<b>bank loan</b> money the bank lends and sb borrows. <b>take out</b> obtain (you also <b>take out</b> insurance).
We <b>pay</b> a lot of <b>interest</b> . The <b>interest rate</b> is 4 per cent.	<b>interest</b> extra money you pay when you borrow money (the <b>interest rate</b> is the exact cost of borrowing).

#### 1 Match 1–8 with a–i.

- |                        |                |
|------------------------|----------------|
| ► annual <u>f</u>      | a a loan       |
| 1 operating <u>   </u> | b revenue      |
| 2 pay <u>   </u>       | c rate         |
| 3 raise <u>   </u>     | d a profit     |
| 4 interest <u>   </u>  | e costs        |
| 5 take out <u>   </u>  | f turnover ✓   |
| 6 sales <u>   </u>     | g capital      |
| 7 make <u>   </u>      | h flow         |
| 8 cash <u>   </u>      | i 10% interest |

#### spotlight *finance*

Finance can be:

1 the money somebody borrows or receives to operate a business (*They need to raise more **finance**.*) **finance** v.

OR

2 the activity of managing money in a company. **financial** ADJ. (*He's the new Director of **Finance** /**Financial** Director.*)

#### 2 Complete the sentences.

- We can't start the business unless we can raise more capital.
- If sales continue to rise, the annual                      could reach five million euros.
  - If we spend more money this month, we'll have a cash                      problem.
  - The current interest                      is 5 per cent.
  - It's been a good year; we've made a pre-                     of \$3.5 m.
  - has gone up this year because of the increase in the price of oil.
  - They needed more money so they                      another bank                     .
  - We usually make a profit, but if operating                      go up, we may make a                      this year.
  - They need the loan to                      the new business.

#### 3 Test yourself. Look at the examples and cover the meanings. What do the examples mean?

## B Financial trends

A **trend** is the general direction in which a situation is changing.

Trend	Common verbs + examples	Common nouns + examples
	<b>go up, rise, increase, grow</b> <i>Prices have <b>risen</b> by 10 per cent.</i>	<b>rise, increase, growth</b> <i>We saw some <b>growth</b> last year.</i>
	<b>go down, fall, drop</b> <i>Interest rates <b>fell</b> last month.</i>	<b>fall, drop</b> <i>There's been a <b>drop</b> in sales.</i>
	<b>remain unchanged/stable</b> SYN <b>stay the same</b> <i>Prices have <b>remained unchanged</b>.</i>	<b>stability</b> <i>There has been <b>stability</b> in the markets.</i>
	<b>peak</b> <i>Sales <b>peaked</b> in the third quarter.</i> (third quarter = July to September)	<b>peak</b> <i>Sales <b>reached a peak</b> in 2007.</i>
	<b>fluctuate</b> <i>Sales have <b>fluctuated</b> all year.</i>	<b>fluctuation</b> <i>There has been some <b>fluctuation</b> in prices.</i>

Adjective	Meaning	Adverb
a <b>slight</b> rise in costs	very small.	<i>Costs rose <b>slightly</b>.</i>
a <b>gradual</b> rise in profits	slow and over a long period of time.	<i>Profits have risen <b>gradually</b>.</i>
a <b>steady</b> increase in the interest rate	slow but regular and continuing.	<i>The interest rate has increased <b>steadily</b>.</i>
a <b>significant</b> fall in profits	noticeable and important.	<i>Profits fell <b>significantly</b>.</i>
a <b>sharp</b> fall in sales	very large and sudden.	<i>Sales have fallen <b>sharply</b>.</i>

### 4 Complete the sentences on the right. The meaning must stay the same.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| ► There has been a sharp fall in sales.  | Sales have <u>fallen sharply</u> .                |
| 1 There was significant growth in sales. | Sales <u>                    </u> .               |
| 2 There was a gradual rise in the price. | The price <u>                    </u> .           |
| 3 There was a slight fall in profits.    | Profits <u>                    </u> .             |
| 4 There has been stability in costs.     | Costs have remained <u>                    </u> . |
| 5 There has been a steady rise in sales. | Sales have <u>                    </u> .          |

### 5 Complete the text. Use a **different** word each time.

Last year started well. In the first quarter sales ► increased significantly. The second quarter was even better: sales increased (1)                     . They continued to (2)                      steadily in the third quarter and reached a (3)                      at 90,000. By the end of September, sales had (4)                      up (5)                      almost 50 per cent. In the last quarter there was a slight (6)                     , but it was still a good year. This year has been very different. Sales (7)                      in the first half of the year – up one month and down the next – but in the last three months they have remained (8)                     .

### 6 Look at the arrows and complete the sentences.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| ► There was a ➡ <u>slight</u> <u>fall</u> in 2003.   | 3 Sales ➡ <u>                    </u> in 2006.   |
| 1 Sales ➡ <u>                    </u> in 2004.       | 4 In 2007, sales ➡ <u>                    </u> . |
| 2 There was a ↗ <u>                    </u> in 2005. | 5 In 2008, sales ↘ <u>                    </u> . |



## 56 I can talk about companies Do Unit 55 first

### A Setting up a business

**Setting up a business** is a **risk**. Twenty per cent of new businesses **fail** within twelve months; fifty per cent **go out of business** in three years. It may be because of poor **quality** services or **goods**, or one of these common mistakes:

- **inadequate market research**
- poor control over **suppliers** and customers
- being **over-ambitious** and **over-optimistic**
- poor management of **stock** and **assets**
- inadequate knowledge of **rivals**
- **employing** the wrong people

#### spotlight Prefixes **over-** and **under-**

As prefixes, **over-** usually means *too much* and **under-** means *too little*.

He **overcharged** us. (He made us pay too much.)

Companies often **overestimate** sales figures. (Companies think that sales figures will be larger than they are.) **opp underestimate**.

With adjectives, they may be followed by a hyphen, e.g. **over-ambitious**.

#### Glossary

**set up a business** start a business.

**risk** the possibility that sth bad may happen in the future. **risky** ADJ.

**fail** (about a business) be unable to continue. **SYN go out of business**.

**quality** the good or bad condition or character of sth compared with similar things.

**goods** (PL) things that are made to be sold.

**inadequate** not sufficient; not good enough. **OPP adequate**.

**market research** the study of what people want to buy and why.

**supplier** a company that provides sth for another company. **supply** v.

**stock** everything a company has for sale at any particular time.

**asset** a thing of value that a person or company owns (e.g. a factory).

**rival** a person or company that competes with another. **SYN competitor**.

**employ sb** give sb a job (an **employer** is sb who does this; an **employee** is sb who works for an employer). **SYN take sb on** INF.

#### 1 Circle things in this list that you can own or sell.

competitor business employee asset market rival good supplier stock quality

#### 2 Complete the sentences. The meaning must be the same as in the sentences on the left.

► This business is **risky**.

1 When did she start the business?

2 Why did the business fail?

3 We are the main company that supplies them.

4 Their products aren't very good.

5 Do you still employ him?

6 When did you employ her?

This business is a risk .

When did she set \_\_\_\_\_ ?

Why did they go out \_\_\_\_\_ ?

We are their main \_\_\_\_\_ .

Their products are of poor \_\_\_\_\_ .

Are you still his \_\_\_\_\_ ?

When did you take \_\_\_\_\_ ?

#### 3 What mistakes do businesses make? Complete the sentences using words from the box.

rivals optimistic research assets estimates employs suppliers ✓

► The company doesn't have effective controls over its customers or its suppliers .

1 The company doesn't carry out adequate market \_\_\_\_\_ .

2 The company is poor at managing its stock and its \_\_\_\_\_ .

3 The company doesn't have a very good knowledge of its \_\_\_\_\_ .

4 The company \_\_\_\_\_ the wrong people.

5 The company is over-\_\_\_\_\_ , and it over-\_\_\_\_\_ what it can achieve.

## B Growth

The first years may be a **struggle**, but if a company can **survive** this difficult period, it may develop into a successful business:

- customer numbers grow and the company **gains a share** of the **market**
- turnover increases – the company **breaks even**
- the **brand** develops a **reputation**
- the company needs more capital and may sell **shares** to the public to obtain the finance
- eventually this growth may result in the company being **taken over**

### spotlight market

The **market** is the amount of buying and selling of a particular type of goods, e.g. *There is a large market for these computers.*

It also refers to an area or group of people who buy something, e.g. *the European market, the teenage market.*

The **market leader** is the company with the biggest share of a market.

### Glossary

<b>growth</b>	• the process of increasing in size or number. <b>grow</b> v.
<b>struggle</b>	• a period of action to achieve sth difficult. <b>SYN effort.</b> <b>struggle</b> v.
<b>survive</b>	• continue to exist in a difficult situation. <b>survival</b> N.
<b>gain sth</b>	• obtain sth. <b>OPP lose sth.</b>
<b>share</b>	• a part of sth that has been divided.
<b>break even</b>	• not make a profit or a loss.
<b>brand</b>	• the name under which one or more products are sold, e.g. 'Nike'.
<b>reputation</b>	• the opinion that people have about sth (it can be good or bad).
<b>shares</b>	• (usu PL) units of equal value that a company is divided into and which are then sold to raise money (the buyers then own part of the company).
<b>take over a company</b>	• take control of another company. <b>takeover</b> N.

#### 4 Complete the sentences. The meaning must be the same as in the sentences on the left.

- Will they continue to grow?
- 1 Will they take it over?
  - 2 People say the company is very good.
  - 3 They won't make a profit or a loss.
  - 4 It's the biggest company in the market.
  - 5 Are you worried they may not survive?
  - 6 They've survived, but it's been difficult.

Will there be continued growth ?

Will there be a \_\_\_\_\_ ?

The company has a very good \_\_\_\_\_ .

They will \_\_\_\_\_ .

It's the market \_\_\_\_\_ .

Are you worried about their \_\_\_\_\_ ?

They've survived, but it's been a \_\_\_\_\_ .

#### 5 Complete the sentences.

- It's been a struggle, but I think the business will survive .
- 1 The company now has a 10 per cent \_\_\_\_\_ of the market.
  - 2 I bought 1,000 \_\_\_\_\_ in that company. They are now worth over £10,000.
  - 3 People go on buying the same \_\_\_\_\_ of breakfast cereal because it's familiar.
  - 4 There has been considerable \_\_\_\_\_ in the soft drinks \_\_\_\_\_ : up 25 per cent in two years.
  - 5 I think the company may be \_\_\_\_\_ over by the end of the year.
  - 6 It's been a good year: we've \_\_\_\_\_ another 5 per cent of the market.

#### 6 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?



## 57 I can describe a successful business

GECKO HEADGEAR Ltd is a designer and **manufacturer** of safety helmets for use at sea. The company was **founded** in 1993 by Jeff Sacree and it started by selling surfboards. However, surfing is a seasonal business, and Jeff realized he needed to **diversify**. Fortunately, he was able to **exploit a gap in the market**.

'As a **surfer**<sup>1</sup>, I could see the **potential** for a light helmet that gave protection and **retained** heat.' He made one and sold a few to other surfers. He then **did** some **research** and discovered that men who worked in lifeboats might also be interested in his helmet. It would have to be **adapted** for their use, and for that he needed **investment**: he took out a bank loan and employed more staff. 'A good relationship with the bank is **crucial** if you're developing an **innovative** product. In our **case** the process took three years.'

After the **contract** to supply helmets for the lifeboats was successful, Jeff developed different types of helmet for different uses, and has always used customer **feedback** to **refine** the product.

'**Partnerships** with suppliers have also been a **key factor** in our success. We've worked closely with different manufacturers, and this has helped us to **keep ahead** of rivals.'



safety helmet



lifeboat

surfer<sup>1</sup>

### Glossary

<b>manufacturer</b>	• a person or company that makes things using machines. <b>manufacture</b> v. SYNS <b>producer</b> , <b>produce</b> v.	<b>investment</b>	• the activity of putting money into sth, hoping that you will make more money as a result. <b>invest in sth</b> v.
<b>found sth</b>	• start an organization (the person is the <b>founder</b> ).	<b>crucial</b>	• very important.
<b>diversify</b>	• introduce a wider range of products.	<b>innovative</b>	• introducing new ideas. <b>innovate</b> v. <b>innovation</b> n.
<b>exploit sth</b>	• make the best possible use of sth. <b>exploitation</b> n.	<b>case</b>	• situation.
<b>a gap in the market</b>	• an opportunity to create a new product, which has not been produced by other companies.	<b>contract</b>	• a written legal agreement (a person <b>signs a contract</b> ).
<b>potential</b>	• the ability to develop into sth or sth better in the future.	<b>feedback</b>	• information and comments from people who have used sth.
<b>retain sth</b>	• keep or continue to have sth. <b>retention</b> n.	<b>partnership</b>	• a relationship between two people or organizations.
<b>do research</b>	• do a careful study of sth to find out more information.	<b>key factor</b>	• very important. • one of the things that influences a decision or affects a situation.
		<b>keep ahead (of sb)</b>	• stay in front of sb.

### spotlight Verbs of change

To **alter** sth means to change sth, but not completely.

We've had to **alter** our plans.

To **adapt** sth means to change sth so you can use it in a different situation.

We've **adapted** the product for the Asian market.

To **refine** sth means to change sth a little to make it better.

They have **refined** the products over several years.

**1 Answer these questions (you may need to read the text again).**

- ▶ What is Gecko Headgear? A company that manufactures safety helmets.
- 1 When was it founded? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Why did Jeff need to diversify? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 What qualities did the helmet have to have?
  - a) it had to be light      b) \_\_\_\_\_
  - c) \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 How did Jeff discover that men in lifeboats were potential users? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 How did he get the money for extra staff? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 What does he say about the relationship with a bank? \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 What information has he used to refine the products? \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 What was a key factor in his success? \_\_\_\_\_

**2 Rearrange the letters on the left to make words. Use the definitions to help you.**

- ▶ ROTACF factor one of the things that influences a situation
- 1 TOCCARNT \_\_\_\_\_ a written legal agreement
- 2 NATERI \_\_\_\_\_ keep or continue to have something
- 3 RUCCLIA \_\_\_\_\_ very important
- 4 EFKABEDC \_\_\_\_\_ comments from people who use something
- 5 VINONTEA \_\_\_\_\_ introduce new ideas
- 6 REDYFIVIS \_\_\_\_\_ introduce a wider range of products
- 7 PERITNSARPH \_\_\_\_\_ a relationship between two organizations
- 8 LOPENITAT \_\_\_\_\_ the ability to develop into something

**3 Circle the correct answer(s). Sometimes both answers are correct.**

- ▶ We have to keep ahead of / retain our competitors.
- 1 His company has the ability to exploit/alter the market more fully.
- 2 They are the main producers/manufacturers.
- 3 It's only a small business now, but it has the feedback/potential to be very successful.
- 4 If we can't use the product like that, we may have to exploit/adapt it.
- 5 It was a key/crucial factor in the decision.
- 6 She invested/founded the company ten years ago.
- 7 They don't have enough money; they need more research/investment.
- 8 We may have to alter/adapt the product.

**4 Complete the sentences.**

- ▶ We may have to alter \_\_\_\_\_ a few things to get the product exactly as we want it.
- 1 They were lucky because they saw a \_\_\_\_\_ in the market.
- 2 Some people take out a loan. In my \_\_\_\_\_ I borrowed money from my parents.
- 3 They are one of the leading \_\_\_\_\_ of washing machines in this country.
- 4 If we want to find out, we'll have to do more \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 How much money did she \_\_\_\_\_ in the company?
- 6 Innovation helps a company to keep \_\_\_\_\_ of its competitors.
- 7 They can't change their minds now: they've signed the \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 We must \_\_\_\_\_ our most important customers. We can't afford to lose them.
- 9 Profit was not a big \_\_\_\_\_ in my decision to invest in the company.
- 10 It's only one product and it's very limited; the company needs to \_\_\_\_\_.

**5 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?**



## 58 I can discuss marketing

### A The basis of marketing

**S**  
**W**  
**O**  
**T**

**Marketing** is the activity of presenting, **advertising**, and selling a company's products. To do that, you need to understand the company's **strengths** and **weaknesses**, and be aware of possible **opportunities** and **threats**. This is called a 'SWOT analysis':

**S**trengths, e.g. specialist **skills** in the company

**W**eaknesses, e.g. **limited** financial **resources**

**O**pportunities, e.g. increased **demand** for a product from a particular market **sector**

**T**hreats, e.g. a **downturn** in the economy, **reducing** overall demand

#### spotlight *skill*

**Skill** (U) is the ability to do something well, usually needing practice. **skilful** ADJ. You often need a particular **skill** (C) for a job. **skilled** ADJ. OPP **unskilled**.

*He has the right management skills.*

*She's a skilful negotiator.*

*We had a number of highly skilled workers.*

#### Glossary

**advertising** the activity of telling people about a product to try to make them buy it. **advertise** V.

**strength** a good quality or feature. OPP **weakness**.

**opportunity** a situation in which it is possible to achieve sth.

**threat** a possible danger or problem.

**limited** small in number or amount. OPP **unlimited**.

**resources** (USU PL) the supply of sth that you need, such as money or skills.

**demand (for sth)** the need for sth from a particular group of people.

**sector** a part of an economy, society, or area of activity.

**downturn** a time when an economy or industry is weaker than normal. OPP **upturn**.

**reduce sth** make sth less or smaller. OPP **increase sth**. **reduction** N.

#### 1 Good news or bad news for the company? Write G or B.

► Limited demand B

1 A number of opportunities. ....

4 Unlimited financial resources. ....

2 They have a lot of skilled workers. ....

5 A reduction in demand. ....

3 There are a number of threats. ....

6 An upturn in the economy. ....

#### 2 Replace the underlined word or phrase with a single word. The meaning must stay the same.

► We only have a small number of products available at the moment. limited

1 There is a lot of competition in this part of the market. ....

2 There isn't much need for beach umbrellas in the winter. ....

3 They have a number of good qualities. ....

4 There is another company in the market, which could be a real danger. ....

5 Do we have the money and skills to make this product? ....

#### 3 Complete the sentences.

► New markets in Asia could be a great opportunity for us.

1 If you work with advanced technology, you need people with the right .....

2 More people will know about the product if we ..... it on TV.

3 Is there still a growing ..... for mobile phones?

4 If there is more competition, we may have to ..... the price.

5 First we must analyse our strengths and .....

## B Developing a marketing strategy

### Useful marketing tips

- Don't **assume** you know what your customers want
- **Target** the 20 per cent of your customers who provide 80 per cent of your profit
- Don't **ignore** the competition, and be ready to **respond** to it
- Don't try to compete on price alone: think about quality, reliability, etc.
- You need to **gather** reliable **data** to make accurate market **forecasts**
- You need to have **realistic objectives**
- Don't forget to **evaluate** your strategy; and if something isn't working, change it.

### Glossary

<b>strategy</b>	• a plan you make in order to achieve sth.
<b>tip</b>	• a piece of advice.
<b>assume sth</b>	• accept or believe sth is true without proof <b>assumption</b> N.
<b>target sb</b>	• decide on the people you want to sell to (your <b>target market</b> ).
<b>ignore sb/sth</b>	• pay no attention to sb/sth.
<b>respond to sb/sth</b>	• say or do sth as an answer to sb/sth. <b>response</b> N.
<b>gather sth</b>	• bring many things together, e.g. information or data.
<b>data</b>	• facts or information.
<b>forecast</b>	• a statement saying what will happen in the future. <b>forecast</b> V.
<b>realistic</b>	• sensible, and based on what is possible in a particular situation.
<b>objective</b>	• sth you are trying to achieve. <b>syn goal/aim</b> .
<b>evaluate sth</b>	• study the facts then form an opinion of sth.

#### 4 Cover the glossary, then match 1–5 with a–f.

- |                    |   |
|--------------------|---|
| ▶ respond <u>d</u> | a pay no attention to something             |
| 1 assume _____     | b choose somebody you want to sell to       |
| 2 evaluate _____   | c bring many things together                |
| 3 ignore _____     | d say or do something as an answer ✓        |
| 4 gather _____     | e study the facts and then form an opinion  |
| 5 target _____     | f accept or believe something without proof |

#### 5 Complete the dialogues without repeating the same words.

- ▶ Did she know it was true? ~ No, she just assumed it.
- Do they have a plan for this? ~ Yes, they've got a \_\_\_\_\_.
  - He doesn't have an aim. ~ No, he needs an \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Has he replied to you? ~ No, there's been no \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Do they have the information? ~ Yes, they've gathered all the \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Is it a sensible forecast? ~ Yes, I think it's quite \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Was it good advice? ~ Yes, it was a very useful \_\_\_\_\_.

#### 6 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ We contacted them, but so far they haven't responded.
- They got into trouble because they \_\_\_\_\_ all their competitors.
  - Have they given you a sales \_\_\_\_\_ for next year?
  - We don't know if they're competing for this contract, but we \_\_\_\_\_ they are.
  - The company has decided to \_\_\_\_\_ the youth market next year.
  - We've \_\_\_\_\_ all the information together. Now we need to evaluate it.

#### 7 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. Can you remember the meanings?



## Review: Business

### Unit 55

- 1 Find eleven more 'money' words or phrases. (You can go across and down.)

C	P	C	O	S	T	B	C
A	R	L	P	T	E	A	A
S	O	O	G	U	S	N	P
H	F	A	T	R	H	K	I
F	I	N	A	N	C	E	T
L	T	Y	L	O	S	S	A
O	T	A	X	V	D	I	L
W	R	E	V	E	N	U	E
I	N	T	E	R	E	S	T

- 2 Replace the underlined words with a word or phrase that has the same meaning.

- Sales went down quite a lot. Sales fell significantly.
- The price went up a little. The price \_\_\_\_\_.
  - The price went down a lot. The price \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Last year the price stayed the same. Last year the price \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Sales went down from \$3 m to \$2 m. Sales \_\_\_\_\_ \$1 m.
  - Sales went up and down. Sales \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Last year there was a very small rise. Last year there was a \_\_\_\_\_.

### Unit 56

- 1 Good news or bad news for the company? Write G or B.

- They went out of business. B
- They're gaining a share of the market. \_\_\_\_\_
  - They're struggling. \_\_\_\_\_
  - They're taking a lot of risks. \_\_\_\_\_
  - They have valuable assets. \_\_\_\_\_
  - There are more rivals. \_\_\_\_\_
  - They're taking people on. \_\_\_\_\_
  - Their shares are going up. \_\_\_\_\_

- 2 Complete the list of company objectives using words from the box.

quality risks set up ✓ market shares growth rivals even reputation

- Set up the business by the end of the year.
- In our first year we aim to break \_\_\_\_\_.
  - In years 2 to 5, we want to see continued \_\_\_\_\_ in our profit.
  - We don't want to take too many \_\_\_\_\_.
  - We have to watch our \_\_\_\_\_ very closely.
  - We want our products to be of the highest \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Within three years we want a 10 to 15 per cent share of the \_\_\_\_\_.
  - We want the company to develop a good \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Within five years we would like to sell \_\_\_\_\_ to the public.



## Unit 57

## 1 Match verbs 1–8 with definitions a–i.

- refine i  
 1 retain \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 manufacture \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 innovate \_\_\_\_\_  
 4 invest \_\_\_\_\_  
 5 alter \_\_\_\_\_  
 6 found \_\_\_\_\_  
 7 exploit \_\_\_\_\_  
 8 diversify \_\_\_\_\_

- a change something but not completely  
 b put money into something  
 c make the best possible use of something  
 d start a business/organization  
 e keep or continue to have something  
 f introduce a wider range of products  
 g introduce new ideas  
 h make things using machines  
 i change something a little to make it better ✓

## 2 Replace the underlined words with a single word that has the same meaning.

- You have to try to keep in front of others. ahead  
 1 The introduction of new ideas was crucial. \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 It was a very important decision. \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 We did a careful study to find the best product. \_\_\_\_\_  
 4 My partners were prepared to put money in the company. \_\_\_\_\_  
 5 They signed a written legal agreement. \_\_\_\_\_  
 6 I knew the product had the possibility to become better. \_\_\_\_\_  
 7 We try to get information and comments on our products. \_\_\_\_\_  
 8 They wanted to introduce a wider range of products. \_\_\_\_\_

## Unit 58

## 1 Find eight more pairs of words in the box that have a similar meaning.

small ✓ danger advice ability plan aim reply data need threat  
 information response limited ✓ strategy tip objective skill demand

- small / limited \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_

## 2 Complete the words in each sentence.

- Developing a marketing strategy.  
 1 Analyse the company's s\_\_\_\_\_ and w\_\_\_\_\_.  
 2 Analyse the o\_\_\_\_\_ for the company and the threats.  
 3 Make sure to g\_\_\_\_\_ reliable market d\_\_\_\_\_.  
 4 Don't a\_\_\_\_\_ you know what your customers want.  
 5 Make sure you have realistic o\_\_\_\_\_.  
 6 Don't i\_\_\_\_\_ your competitors.  
 7 Try to make accurate and reliable f\_\_\_\_\_ for future sales.  
 8 Remember to e\_\_\_\_\_ your marketing strategy to see if it is working.



## 59 I can express probability

Next week in the life of  
**pessimistic** Pamela, aged 15



- Sunday: I'm going to a barbecue next Saturday. I'll **definitely** see Max (the boy I **fancy**).
- Monday: My best friend Sarah said she's going. She's **bound to** speak to him first, and she's prettier than me, so Max is more **likely to** fancy her.
- Tuesday: I've got nothing to wear - I **doubt if** he'll even notice me.
- Wednesday: If he does speak to me, I **expect** he'll think I'm stupid.
- Thursday: I've heard there's another party on Saturday - Max **might** go there instead.
- Friday: There's a **good chance** it'll rain tomorrow. The barbecue will be a **disaster**.
- Saturday: Woke up with a **spot** on my face - I'm definitely not going.

### Glossary

**pessimistic** always believing bad things will happen. **OPP optimistic.**

**definitely** certainly; for sure.

**fancy sb** INF be attracted to sb.

**bound to do sth** If sb is **bound to do sth**, they will almost certainly do it.

**likely to do sth** If sb is **likely to do sth**, they will probably do it. **OPP unlikely to do sth.**

**doubt (if/that ...)** If you **doubt if** or **that sth** will happen, you think it probably won't happen.

**expect sth** think or believe sth will happen.

**might** used to say that sth is possible. **SYN may.**

**a chance** a possibility (**a good chance** is a more than 50 per cent possibility).

**disaster** INF If sth is a **disaster**, it is terrible.

**spot** an unpleasant red or yellow mark on the skin (teenagers have them).

### 1 Complete the definitions.

- If something is a disaster, it is terrible.
- If something is bound to happen, it will \_\_\_\_\_ certainly happen.
  - If something is likely to take place, it will \_\_\_\_\_ take place.
  - If something might happen, you can also say that it \_\_\_\_\_ happen.
  - If there's a chance that something will happen, it means it is \_\_\_\_\_ that it will happen.
  - If you expect something to happen, it means you \_\_\_\_\_ it will happen.
  - If you think that something is unlikely, it means it is \_\_\_\_\_ not going to happen.
  - If you doubt that something will happen, it means you \_\_\_\_\_ think it is going to happen.
  - If you are pessimistic, you always believe that \_\_\_\_\_ things will happen.

### 2 A friend is taking an exam next week. Will she pass? Look at the percentage (%) on the right and write sentences with a similar meaning. Don't use the verb **think**.

- She'll definitely pass.
- |         |          |
|---------|----------|
| 1 _____ | PASS?    |
| 2 _____ | 100% yes |
| 3 _____ | 95% yes  |
| 4 _____ | 75% yes  |
| 5 _____ | 50% yes  |
|         | 25% yes  |
|         | 100% no  |

### 3 ABOUT YOU Use the vocabulary to write sentences about your life next week.

## 60 I can explain similarities and differences

### Labradors

In looks, Boss and Sam are almost **identical except that** Sam is a bit bigger. Jake and Boss are **similar except for** their colour. The **similarity between** Sam and Jake is that they both have large ears. In character though, they're not **alike**. **Compared with** Jake and Boss, Sam is very lazy. In fact, he's **completely different** from the other two, **apart from** the fact that he's **greedy** – all labradors are greedy given the opportunity. With the other two, the **main difference** is that Boss is rather quiet in **comparison with** Jake.



Boss



Sam



Jake

### Glossary

**identical** without a single difference. **SYN exactly the same.**  
**except** not including sb/sth (**except that** + clause or **except for** + noun).  
**similar (to sb/sth)** like sb/sth but not the same. **similarity** N (a **similarity between** things).  
**alike** very similar (don't use **alike** before a noun).  
**completely different** different in every way.  
**apart from sb/sth** **SYN except for sb/sth.**  
**greedy** wanting to take more than you need (usually food).  
**the main difference** the most important difference.

### spotlight **compare** V, **comparison** N

When you **compare** people or things, you say how they are different.  
*If you **compare** dogs **and/with** cats, dogs are usually more greedy.*  
**Compared with/to** dogs, cats are very clean.  
**In comparison with** dogs, cats are more independent.

### 1 Replace the underlined words with a different word or phrase with the same meaning.

- Barley is like my other dog. similar to  
 1 She's very tall compared with Elena. \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 I liked all of them except for the blue one. \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 The two boys aren't very similar. \_\_\_\_\_  
 4 The most important difference is colour. \_\_\_\_\_  
 5 Poland is very big in comparison with Hungary. \_\_\_\_\_  
 6 The twins are exactly the same. \_\_\_\_\_

### 2 Complete the sentences.

- If you compare the two books, it's amazing how different they are.  
 1 She is very \_\_\_\_\_ to her mother; they both laugh all the time.  
 2 \_\_\_\_\_ with his last album, the new one's a bit boring.  
 3 There is a \_\_\_\_\_ between the two tables: they're both made of the same wood.  
 4 This chair is like the one in your bedroom, \_\_\_\_\_ that this one's a bit softer.  
 5 Max always tries to eat his brother's food as well as his own; he's a \_\_\_\_\_ dog.  
 6 Some people say my brother and I are \_\_\_\_\_, but I think we're \_\_\_\_\_ different.  
 7 I didn't like the film, \_\_\_\_\_ from the ending, which was great.  
 8 The main \_\_\_\_\_ between the two students is that Carlo has better pronunciation.

### 3 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write sentences about the similarities and differences between two members of your family or two cities in your country.

## 61 I can make arrangements to meet

- A Mike, we need to talk about the project.  
Can we **get together** next week? = meet
- B Yes, sure.
- A **Can you make it** on Monday morning, **say**? = Are you able to come?  
= for instance / for example
- B No, I'm not **available** then. = **free** to see you  
**How about** Tuesday afternoon? = **What about** ...?
- A I'd like to, but I'm **afraid** I'm **tied up** then. = I'm sorry, but ...  
= busy  
Can we make it Friday morning **instead**? = **as an alternative**
- B I'm **supposed to** see Jo then, = I'm **meant to**  
but I think I can **postpone** that. = **put that off**  
I'll **confirm it with you** tonight. = tell you definitely / for sure
- A Great, well, I'll wait to hear from you.



### Glossary

**How about ...?** is ... suitable? SYN **What about ...?**  
**instead (of sth)** in the place of sth (e.g. *We could take the train, or we could hire a car instead.*). SYN **as an alternative**.  
**postpone sth** decide that sth you had planned will happen at a later time. SYN **put sth off**.

### 1 Replace the underlined word or phrase with a word or phrase with the same meaning.

- I'll confirm it later. tell you definitely
- 1 I'm supposed to meet him at six. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 He's tied up tomorrow. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 How about Friday? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 He's not available now. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 I'll postpone it. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Can you come, say, at five? \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 Can you make it tomorrow? \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 We must get together soon. \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 I'm sorry but I'm busy. \_\_\_\_\_

### spotlight *be supposed to, be meant to* + verb

If you **are supposed to**, or **are meant to** do something, another person thinks you will do it because you have agreed to do it.

*I'm **supposed to** meet David later, but I don't really want to go.*


*She's **meant to** finish that job today. ~ She's so slow; I don't think she will.*

### 2 There's a mistake in each sentence. Write the correct sentence at the end.

- She supposed to be here at 3.00. She's supposed to be here at 3.00.
- 1 Shall we make together for a meeting? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 I'll tell you definite tomorrow. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I could put the meeting out until Friday. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 I'm afraid but I'm tied up then. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 A Let's meet at a restaurant, saying? \_\_\_\_\_  
B No, what about the station in place? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 For an alternative, we could meet on Tuesday. \_\_\_\_\_

### 3 Test yourself. Look at the dialogue and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meaning of each word or phrase in bold?

## 62 I can discuss my likes and dislikes

MISCHA BARON: the food king!	Meaning	
I'm <b>mad about</b> food. I spend a lot of time thinking about it.	<b>be mad about sth/sb</b> INF like sth/sb very much. SYN <b>be crazy about sth/sb</b> INF.	
I <b>adore</b> cooking, though I'm <b>not</b> very <b>keen on</b> washing up afterwards.	<b>adore (doing) sth</b> INF love (doing) sth. <b>be keen on (doing) sth</b> INF (usually used in the negative) like or enjoy (doing) sth.	
I'm very <b>fond of</b> Asian food, particularly Thai and Korean.	<b>be fond of (doing) sth</b> like or enjoy (doing) sth, especially over a long time.	
I <b>don't</b> like takeaway food <b>at all</b> .	<b>not at all</b> not in any way. (If you <b>don't</b> like sth <b>at all</b> , you dislike it very much.)	
As a child, I <b>loathed</b> cabbage (I hated the smell), but I've <b>got to</b> like it now.	<b>loathe (doing) sth</b> dislike (doing) sth very much (also <b>loathe sb</b> ). <b>get to like sth/sb</b> start to like sth/sb.	
There are only a couple of things I <b>can't</b> stand: one is snails. The other thing I absolutely <b>detest</b> is yoghurt. I'd <b>rather</b> die <b>than</b> eat yoghurt.	<b>can't stand (doing) sth</b> INF strongly dislike (doing) sth. SYN <b>can't bear (doing) sth</b> . <b>detest (doing) sth</b> , hate (doing) sth (also <b>detest sb</b> ). SYN <b>loathe sth/sb</b> . <b>would rather ... than</b> would prefer.	

### spotlight Verb + -ing

Many verbs meaning 'like' or 'dislike' (= not like) can be followed by an **-ing** form.

#### 1 Complete the table using the words and phrases in the box.

can't stand ✓ detest mad about fond of adore  
loathe keen on crazy about can't bear not like at all

like very much	like	dislike very much
_____	_____	can't stand _____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____

#### 2 Correct the mistakes in the sentence beginnings.

#### ABOUT YOU

► I'm not keen for ... I'm not keen on \_\_\_\_\_

- I fond of ... \_\_\_\_\_
- I don't stand ... \_\_\_\_\_
- I loathe to cook ... \_\_\_\_\_
- I'm mad in ... \_\_\_\_\_
- I can't bearing ... \_\_\_\_\_
- I'm detest ... \_\_\_\_\_
- I adore eat ... \_\_\_\_\_
- I've crazy about ... \_\_\_\_\_
- Recently, I've got for like ... \_\_\_\_\_
- I'm rather eat ... than ... \_\_\_\_\_

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

#### 3 ABOUT YOU Complete the sentences in Exercise 2. Write about food, drinks, cooking, things you like doing, etc. If possible, tell another student.



## 63 I can give my opinion

### A Asking for and giving opinions

- A **Apparently**, the government wants to increase the number of young people going to university. **What do you think about** that?
- B **Personally, I think** it's a good idea. People should have the chance to go to university.
- A Maybe, but **it seems to me** we need more people with manual skills, not more academics. And why haven't we got those people? It's the government's **fault**.
- B You think the government **is to blame for** everything. But don't you **reckon** it's a good idea, **in principle**, for more young people to have a better education?
- A Yes, I think education is an incredibly important **issue**, but **the point is**, what kind of education do we want young people to have?

#### Glossary

**apparently** based on what you have heard or read.

**What do you think about . . . ?** is used to ask sb's opinion about a general topic (also **How do you feel about . . . ?**). We usually use **think of** when asking about a person or thing, e.g. *What do you think of his new book?*

**fault** responsibility for a mistake.

**be to blame for sth** be responsible for sth bad (e.g. *He's to blame for the accident.* = The accident **is his fault**.)

**reckon (that) sth** INF think or have an opinion about sth.

**in principle** in general, but perhaps not in all the details.  
SYN **in theory**.

**issue** a problem or subject for discussion.

**the point is** the most important part of what I'm saying is.

#### 1 Write the words in the correct order.

► issue / reckon / it's / important / I / an  
I reckon it's an important issue.

1 think / this / you / idea / do / what / of ?  
\_\_\_\_\_

2 I / it's / think / good / personally / a / idea  
\_\_\_\_\_

3 agree / in / it / principle / I / with \_\_\_\_\_

4 choice / to / it / no / seems / we / have / me \_\_\_\_\_

5 it / disaster / if / me / ask / a / you / was \_\_\_\_\_

#### 2 Rewrite the opinions using the words on the right. The meaning must stay the same.

► I think it'll be difficult.

EASY I don't think it'll be easy.

1 I think we should do something.

SEEMS \_\_\_\_\_

2 What do you think about that?

FEEL \_\_\_\_\_

3 I think we should help them.

OPINION \_\_\_\_\_

4 It's my fault.

BLAME \_\_\_\_\_

5 I think it'll be a problem.

RECKON \_\_\_\_\_

#### 3 Complete the sentences.

► Personally, I thought the film was awful.

1 \_\_\_\_\_, the government made the mistake, so it's their \_\_\_\_\_.

2 As far as I'm \_\_\_\_\_, the most important thing is to find a new manager.

3 I think climate change is one of the most important \_\_\_\_\_ of the 21st century.

4 We both think it's important, but the \_\_\_\_\_ is, what are we going to do about it?

5 In \_\_\_\_\_, I quite like his suggestion, but I don't know if it'll work.

#### spotlight Giving opinions

**I think (that) . . .**, **Personally I think (that) . . .**, and **It seems to me . . .**, are common ways of giving opinions. You may also hear **In my opinion . . .** FML, **As far as I'm concerned . . .**, and **If you ask me . . .**

## B For or against?

The government's **considering** a **proposal** to increase the legal age to drive a car from 17 to 21. What do you think of this idea?

### FOR

- Personally, I think it's very **sensible**. Too many young people are killed on our roads.
- Yes, I'm **in favour of** it, because it would reduce the number of cars on the road.
- I would **support** it, too. I don't think 17 year-olds are **mature** enough to drive a car.

### AGAINST

- I'm **not in favour of** this. I reckon more young people will just drive illegally.
- I'm **against** it, too. I **believe that** if young people are old enough to vote, then they're old enough to drive.
- I'm **opposed to** it. It'll make teenagers more **dependent on** their parents.

## Glossary

**consider sth** think about sth carefully before making a decision.

**proposal** a plan that is formally suggested.

**propose** v.

**sensible** practical and intelligent. **opp** **silly**.

**in favour of sth** in agreement with sth. **opp** **against sth**.

**reduce sth** make sth smaller or less in quantity or size. **opp** **increase sth**.

**support sth** agree with sth and sometimes offer help. **support** n.

**mature** acting in a sensible, adult way.

**believe that** have the opinion that.

**opposed to sth** believing that sth is wrong.

**dependent on sb/sth** needing sb/sth to help you.

### 4 Replace the underlined words with a single word that has the same meaning.

► She is not in favour of it.

1 I think it's a practical and intelligent idea.

2 They're going to think carefully about the new plan.

3 We can make it less.

4 I agree with them and think they're right.

5 Do you have the opinion that he's innocent?

6 What do you think of the plan that was formally suggested?

against

.....

.....

..... it .

..... them.

.....

.....

### 5 Complete the dialogues.

► Are you going to help them? ~ Yes, I'm going to support the plan.

1 Is he in favour of it? ~ No, he's ..... it.

2 Will it increase the problem? ~ No, it'll ..... it.

3 Do they like the idea? ~ No, they're ..... to it.

4 Are you going to support her? ~ Yes, I ..... that she's right.

5 Do you think it's sensible? ~ No, I think it's very .....

6 Are they against the idea? ~ No, they're in ..... of it.

7 Does she really need our help? ~ Yes, she's completely ..... on us.

8 Is he old enough to look after the shop? ~ Yes, he's a very ..... young man.



## 64 I can talk about rules

### A Rules at school

The school I went to in the 1930s was very **strict**. We had to wear a uniform, and the headteacher **insisted that** we even wore it to church on Sundays. We **weren't allowed to** talk to the girls at the school next to ours, but of course nobody **obeyed that rule**. Smoking was **banned** everywhere. The teachers **made us work** very hard, and we **were forced to** stay after school some evenings to do four or five hours' homework. One day I laughed during a test, and the teacher made me write to all 40 students in the class and apologize for my bad **behaviour**. How silly! I was very **disobedient**, and always being **punished**.



#### Glossary

**strict** expecting people to do what you say.

**insist that** say strongly that sth must be done.

**allow sb to do sth** (often passive) tell sb that they can do sth.

**obey sb/sth** do what sb/sth tells you to do.  
OPP **disobey**.

**rule** an official statement which says what you must or must not do.

**ban sth** (often passive) say officially that sth is not allowed.

**make sb do sth** tell sb that they must do sth which they do not want to do. SYN **force sb to do sth**.

**behaviour** the way you do and say things. **behave** v.

**disobedient** A **disobedient** child doesn't obey rules. OPP **obedient**.

**punish sb** make sb suffer for sth they have done wrong. **punishment** n.

#### 1 Cross out one word to make each sentence correct.

▶ Will the government ~~ban~~ fast food?

1 Did she ~~force~~ to you to eat it?

2 They ~~made~~ us to sit there for an hour.

3 I ~~wasn't~~ be allowed to eat anything.

4 Did he ~~always~~ obey with the rules?

5 She ~~punished~~ to me because I was late.

6 She ~~insisted~~ on that she didn't do it.

#### 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words on the right.

▶ She's very bad; she always disobeys the rules.

1 The children \_\_\_\_\_ very well yesterday.

2 You aren't \_\_\_\_\_ to walk on the grass.

3 My dog is very \_\_\_\_\_; he never comes when I call him.

4 They have \_\_\_\_\_ alcohol at football matches.

5 What was her \_\_\_\_\_ for breaking the rules?

6 His \_\_\_\_\_ was terrible yesterday.

OBEY

BEHAVIOUR

ALLOW

DISOBEY

BAN

PUNISH

BEHAVE

#### 3 Complete the questions with a suitable word.

##### ABOUT YOU

When you were at school at the age of 11,

▶ were girls allowed to wear make-up?

1 were you an o\_\_\_\_\_ child?

2 what happened if you d\_\_\_\_\_ the rules?

3 were the rules very s\_\_\_\_\_?

4 what did teachers f\_\_\_\_\_ you to do that you didn't like?

5 did children b\_\_\_\_\_ better or worse than nowadays?

#### 4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.

## B Can you choose?



I'm a bus driver. In my job . . .	
... wearing a uniform is { <b>compulsory</b> <b>obligatory</b> FML }.	= you must do it because of a rule or a law.
I <b>have no choice/option</b> ; I have to wear one.	
... smoking { <b>is forbidden</b> <b>isn't permitted</b> FML } when I'm working.	= you mustn't do it; it's against a rule or against the law.
I'm <b>not allowed to</b> smoke at work.	
... working at night is { <b>optional</b> <b>not compulsory</b> }.	
If I want to work at night, { <b>it's my choice</b> <b>it's up to me</b> INF }.	= you can decide or choose what to do; you needn't / don't have to do it.
I have the <b>option of</b> working on Sunday twice a month.	
My boss <b>lets</b> me go home early on Fridays.	= you are allowed to go home early.

### 5 Are the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.

- He allowed me to do it. | He permitted me to do it. S
- 1 It's not compulsory. | It's up to you. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 She has no choice. | It's optional. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 It's his choice. | It's up to him. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 Is it compulsory? | Is it forbidden? \_\_\_\_\_
  - 5 It's obligatory. | It's allowed. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 6 It's optional. | It's not compulsory. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 7 He lets me do it. | He allows me to do it. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 8 It's not optional. | It's obligatory. \_\_\_\_\_

### 6 Complete each of the dialogues with one word.

- Do you have to wear a uniform? ~ No, it's not compulsory.
- 1 Can you leave the building at lunchtime? ~ Yes, they \_\_\_\_\_ you do what you want.
  - 2 Do you have to work at the weekends? ~ Yes, I have no \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 3 Are you \_\_\_\_\_ to use the phone for personal calls? ~ No, it's \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 4 Can he work at home some days? ~ Yes, he can; it's \_\_\_\_\_ to him.
  - 5 Do you have to do extra training for the job? ~ No, you don't – it's \_\_\_\_\_, but I probably will.
  - 6 Is today's meeting optional or \_\_\_\_\_? ~ Well, it's your \_\_\_\_\_, but I think you should go.
  - 7 There's a café at work; you're not \_\_\_\_\_ to eat your own food there.
  - 8 I have the \_\_\_\_\_ of working in different departments if I want to move around.

### 7 Test yourself. Cover the left-hand column in the table and look at the explanations. Can you remember the words and phrases in bold?

## 65 I can discuss hopes and plans

### A Making plans

- A Ramiro says you're **making plans** for your grandmother's 100th birthday in July.
- B Yes, we've still got a few things to **sort out**.
- A So you're **going to** have a big party, are you?
- B Yes, we're **expecting** about a hundred people, **actually**.
- A Wow! And where do you **intend** to have it?
- B On a river boat, and I'm **hoping** to get a jazz band too.
- A That sounds great! I hope it all **goes smoothly**.
- B Yeah, I don't want anything to **go wrong** because she's really **looking forward to** it.

#### Glossary

- make plans (for sth)** • prepare for sth you want to do in the future. **syn plan sth.**
- sort sth out** • organize sth.
- be going to do sth** • plan to do sth in the future.
- expect sth** • think that sth will happen because it is probable or has been planned.
- intend to do sth / doing sth** • plan to do sth. **intention** n. **opp have no intention of doing sth.**
- hope to do sth** • want to do sth and think that it is possible.
- go smoothly** • happen without difficulties or delays.
- go wrong** • If sth **goes wrong**, there is a problem and the plan might fail.
- look forward to (doing) sth** • feel happy about sth that is going to happen.

#### spotlight **actually**

**Actually** is often used when adding new information or being more exact. **syn in fact.** Be careful: **actually** does not mean 'at the moment'.

*He's German, isn't he? ~ Yes, he's from Berlin, **actually**.*

### 1 Same or different? Write S or D.

- She's looking forward to seeing John. | She's expecting to see John. D
- 1 Did the wedding go smoothly? | Did the wedding go wrong? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 He plans to go to Ireland. | He intends to go to Ireland. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I live in Poland at the moment. | I live in Poland, actually. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 I'm hoping to get the job. | I'm going to get the job. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 I don't intend to buy the car. | I've no intention of buying the car. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Have you planned anything for tonight? | Have you made any plans for tonight? \_\_\_\_\_

### 2 Complete the email.

We're ► going to take six months off work and go travelling this winter. At the moment we're (1) making plans and trying to decide exactly where to go. We (2) intend to spend most of the time travelling round Australia and New Zealand as we both have family there. I'm (3) hoping to be able to get hotel work there, which will cover the cost of our accommodation. I'm not (4) expecting anything very smart, but at the same time, I've no (5) intention of sleeping in a tent for the whole time. At the moment we're trying to sell our car to help pay for the adventure: I just hope nothing goes (6) wrong with the sale. In (7) fact, if everything goes (8) smoothly, we'll be in Sydney on Christmas Day, which will be fabulous; I'm really looking (9) forward to it.

### 3 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What do the words mean?

## B Spoken responses

*Are you going to move house?*

	Responses	Meaning
✓	Definitely.	= Yes, I'm sure it will happen.
✗	Definitely not.	= No, I'm sure it won't happen.
✓	I think so.	= I think it will probably happen.
✗	I doubt it. / I don't think so.	= I think it probably won't happen.
✓	I hope so.	= I want it to happen, but I don't know if it will.
✗	I hope not.	= I don't want it to happen, and I don't know if it will.
✓	I'm afraid so.	= I think it will happen and I'm unhappy about it.
✗	I'm afraid not.	= I don't think it'll happen and I'm unhappy about it.
✓	I assume so.	= I think it will happen, but I have no proof.
✓	I expect so. I imagine so. I suppose so. I guess so.	= I think it will happen.

### 4 Correct the mistakes. Write the correct sentence on the right.

- I'm assume so. I assume so.      4 I guess it. \_\_\_\_\_
- 1 I doubt so. \_\_\_\_\_      5 I afraid so. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 I'm not afraid. \_\_\_\_\_      6 I don't hope. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I don't think. \_\_\_\_\_      7 Definitely no. \_\_\_\_\_

### 5 Complete the dialogues with the correct words or phrases.

- Is everything going smoothly with your holiday plans? ~ Yes, I hope so.
- 1 Are they going to have a party? ~ Yes, I am. It's their fortieth wedding anniversary.
- 2 Is Ravi going to cook for us tonight? ~ I don't think. Mina always seems to do the cooking.
- 3 Is Melissa going to get married? ~ I hope not. I really don't like the guy she's going out with.
- 4 Are you going on holiday this summer? ~ I'm afraid not. We can't afford it.
- 5 Do you think Omar will get promoted? ~ I assume so. He's the best candidate and everyone likes him.
- 6 Do you think they'll win? ~ I doubt it. They're playing very badly this season.
- 7 Are you going to buy that CD player? ~ I don't think so. It's the best one on the market.
- 8 Are you going to take the exam? ~ Yes, I do, but I'd rather wait another year.

### 6 Test yourself. Cover the responses and look at the meanings. What are the responses?



## 66 I can express dissatisfaction

### A How to complain

- **Make sure** you know how you want the situation to be **resolved** after you **complain**.
- Collect as much evidence as possible, e.g. photos, **guarantees**, etc.
- Expressing **dissatisfaction in person** can be the most effective.
- Always **keep calm** when you complain. **There is no point in losing your temper.**
- **Back up** your **claim in writing**.
- **Consider** getting an **expert's** opinion to back up your claim.

#### spotlight point

**Point** can mean 'reason' or 'purpose', and is used in several expressions:

**What's the point of doing that?** (What's the reason for doing that?)

**There's no point in doing that.** (There's no reason to do that.)

#### 1 Match 1–6 with a–g.

- |                          |                 |
|--------------------------|-----------------|
| ► make <u>c</u>          | a in person     |
| 1 a written .....        | b calm          |
| 2 lose .....             | c a claim ✓     |
| 3 make .....             | d guarantee     |
| 4 keep .....             | e the situation |
| 5 speak to someone ..... | f your temper   |
| 6 resolve .....          | g sure          |

#### 2 Complete the sentences.

- Make sure you keep your receipt.
- We were very ..... with the slow service, and in the end we ..... about it.
  - You often get a two-year ..... with a new washing machine.
  - There's no ..... in complaining without a good reason.
  - It helps to have someone to ..... you up when you make a complaint.
  - If you want to make a claim, you will need to back it up in .....
  - I tried to ..... calm but I'm afraid I lost my .....
  - You sometimes need to find an ..... who really knows the subject.
  - Have you ..... seeing a lawyer to get some legal advice?

#### 3 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?

#### Glossary

- |                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <b>make sure</b>            | • be certain.   |
| <b>resolve sth</b> FML      | • find an answer to a problem.<br>SYN <b>settle sth</b> .   |
| <b>complain (about sth)</b> | • say you are not satisfied with sth. <b>make a complaint (about sth)</b> N.  |
| <b>guarantee</b>            | • a written promise by a company that it will repair or replace sth that stops working within a specific period of time.            |
| <b>dissatisfaction</b>      | • the annoyed feeling you get when sth is not as good as you expected it to be. OPP <b>satisfaction</b> . <b>dissatisfied</b> ADJ.  |
| <b>in person</b>            | • speaking to sb face to face.  |
| <b>keep calm</b>            | • stay quiet and not get excited, worried, or angry.  |
| <b>lose your temper</b>     | • be unable to control your anger. OPP <b>keep your temper</b> .  |
| <b>back sth up</b>          | • support sth; say or show that sth is true.  |
| <b>claim</b>                | • a demand for sth, often money, that you think you have a right to, often from a company or the government. <b>make a claim</b> v. |
| <b>in writing</b>           | • in a letter, email, etc.  |
| <b>consider doing sth</b>   | • think about doing sth. <b>consideration</b> N.  |
| <b>expert</b>               | • a person who has a lot of knowledge of a subject.   |

## B Having a moan

A I'm **fed up with** the painting course this term.

B I'm not **happy with** it either. The room they've given us is **dreadful** – it's too small.

A Actually, I'm **not** so **bothered** about the room. It's the man who **joined** the course last month – he really **gets on my nerves**. He's always **moaning**.

B Yes, he's **spoilt** it for the rest of us, really. And next week someone else is starting.

A Oh what a **nuisance**! I don't think they should let people join the course late. I might **mention** it to the teacher.

### Glossary

<b>fed up with sth</b>	♦ bored or unhappy with sth.
<b>happy with sth</b>	♦ feeling that sth is good or right.
<b>dreadful</b>	♦ very bad. SYNS <b>terrible, atrocious, appalling</b> .
<b>join sth</b>	♦ become a member of a group such as a class or club.
<b>get on sb's nerves</b>	♦ INF irritate sb or make sb angry.
<b>moan</b>	♦ INF keep saying what is wrong or bad about sth. <b>moan</b> N.
<b>spoil sth</b>	♦ change sth good into sth bad or unpleasant. SYN <b>ruin sth</b> .
<b>PT, PP spoilt/spoiled</b>	
<b>nuisance</b>	♦ a person, thing, or situation that annoys you.
<b>mention sth</b>	♦ talk about sth, usually quickly and without saying much.

### spotlight **bother**

The verb **bother** is used in several expressions:

**I'm not bothered about what I wear.** INF = I don't care about what I wear.

**(I'm) sorry to bother you.** = I'm sorry to disturb you. (Used when sb is busy.)

**Don't bother to buy the milk.** = Don't trouble yourself; it's not necessary.

## 4 Cross out one more word in this list that does not have a negative meaning.

atrocious   ► join   fed up   ruin   moan   dreadful  
nuisance   spoil   mention   appalling

## 5 Complete the dialogues with a suitable word.

- What dreadful weather. ~ Yes, absolutely atrocious.
- What's the matter? ~ Oh, I'm \_\_\_\_\_ up with this essay.
  - Oh Brian, I'm sorry to \_\_\_\_\_ you. ~ That's OK. Come on in.
  - We can't watch TV. It's not working. ~ Oh no! What a \_\_\_\_\_.
  - There was too much salt on the meat. ~ Yes I know. It really \_\_\_\_\_ it.
  - Shall I close the gate? ~ No, don't \_\_\_\_\_. Leave it open.
  - I've decided to \_\_\_\_\_ a chess club. ~ I didn't know you played chess.
  - Do you want to go out? ~ No, I'm not \_\_\_\_\_. Let's stay here.
  - Did you say anything about the course? ~ Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ it to the director.

## 6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- Is there anything you're fed up with at the moment? \_\_\_\_\_
- Is there anything or anyone that gets on your nerves? \_\_\_\_\_
- Do you moan about anything in particular? \_\_\_\_\_
- Can you think of anything in your town that's dreadful? \_\_\_\_\_
- Are you bothered about the level of your English at the moment? \_\_\_\_\_

## 7 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

## 67 I can understand warnings 🎧



### Glossary

**mind** (your head, leg, etc.) used to tell sb to be careful of sth.

**danger** the possibility of sth happening that will injure, harm, or kill sb.

**beware of sth** (usually on written signs) be careful of sth.

**warning** a notice or statement that tells you to be careful. **warn sb (of/about sth)** v.

**cross** (sth) go from one side of sth to the other.

**in case of sth** if sth happens.

**caution** (used in notices) be careful.

**swallow sth** make food or drink go down your throat and into your stomach.

**seek sth** EML try to find sth or ask sb for sth.

**assistance** EML help or support.

**premises** (pl) the building and land around it belonging to a business.

### 1 Write the words in correct sentences.

► mind / is / dish / your / that / hot / fingers Mind your fingers. That dish is hot.

1 assistance / any / need / do / you / ? \_\_\_\_\_

2 help / seek / symptoms / Caution / if / continue / medical \_\_\_\_\_

3 beware / bites / the / of / it / dog \_\_\_\_\_

4 is / when / don't / the / down / Warning / cross / barrier \_\_\_\_\_

5 building / the / fire / case / in / of / leave / immediately \_\_\_\_\_

6 police / ring / of / case / in / the / emergency \_\_\_\_\_

### 2 Complete the sentences.

► Look out! There's a car coming!

1 If someone \_\_\_\_\_ the liquid, take them to hospital and take the bottle with you.

2 \_\_\_\_\_ of falling rocks. In \_\_\_\_\_ of emergency, call the police.

3 \_\_\_\_\_ the step when you leave the building.

4 Watch \_\_\_\_\_ ! There's a big spider.

5 The river was flooded, and a policeman \_\_\_\_\_ us about the \_\_\_\_\_ ahead.

6 Be \_\_\_\_\_ when you're driving there. There are often low flying \_\_\_\_\_ !

7 If you need any \_\_\_\_\_, please ring the office.

8 There are usually guard dogs on the business \_\_\_\_\_ at night.

## Review: Social English

### Unit 59

1 Complete the sentences on the right, keeping the same meaning as in the sentences on the left.

- It's possible he'll go.
- 1 He's sure to go.
- 2 I don't think he'll fancy her.
- 3 I'm almost sure it'll be a disaster.
- 4 He might go.
- 5 I expect it'll rain later.
- 6 He always thinks the worst will happen.

He might go .  
 He'll \_\_\_\_\_ .  
 I \_\_\_\_\_ he'll fancy her.  
 It's bound \_\_\_\_\_ .  
 There's a chance \_\_\_\_\_ .  
 It's \_\_\_\_\_ to rain later.  
 He's very \_\_\_\_\_ .

### Unit 60

1 Complete the text.

## The twins and me



My sisters, Lucy and Ellie, are twins. To look at they are absolutely ► identical , (1) \_\_\_\_\_ for their hair: Lucy's is long, and Ellie's is shoulder-length. They adore being twins and they love people to know they are twins. When they go out, they make sure that their clothes are (2) \_\_\_\_\_ the same.

In character, though, they're not (3) \_\_\_\_\_. Ellie is confident and optimistic (4) \_\_\_\_\_ with Lucy, who is much more reserved and quiet. When they are at university, their behaviour is also (5) \_\_\_\_\_ different. Ellie is friends with everyone, but Lucy doesn't spend time with anyone (6) \_\_\_\_\_ from her sister. The (7) \_\_\_\_\_ difference between the twins and me is the way we look, of course. I'm very dark in (8) \_\_\_\_\_ with them: they both have beautiful blonde hair.

### Unit 61

1 Complete the conversation.

- A Jun, we must get \_\_\_\_\_ together next week. Can you (1) \_\_\_\_\_ it on Tuesday?
- B I'm (2) \_\_\_\_\_ I'm busy on Tuesday. (3) \_\_\_\_\_ about Wednesday?
- A No, I don't think I'm (4) \_\_\_\_\_ then. I'm supposed (5) \_\_\_\_\_ see Chris about the computer.
- B Oh dear. Wednesday's the only day next week that I'm not (6) \_\_\_\_\_ up. Could you possibly (7) \_\_\_\_\_ your computer meeting until the following week?
- A I'm not sure; I'll have to talk to Chris. Can I (8) \_\_\_\_\_ that with you tomorrow?
- B OK, Jun, that's fine. I'll wait to hear from you.



## Unit 62

## 1 Complete the sentences with suitable words.

**Things or people that I like:**

- 1 I'm very \_\_\_\_\_ on physical exercise.
- 2 I'm \_\_\_\_\_ of the people in my class.
- 3 I'm \_\_\_\_\_ about dancing.
- 4 I absolutely \_\_\_\_\_ chocolate.

**Things or people that I don't like:**

- 5 I don't like shellfish at \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 I can't \_\_\_\_\_ waiting in queues.
- 7 I'm not very \_\_\_\_\_ on cheese.
- 8 I absolutely \_\_\_\_\_ cold weather.

**ABOUT YOU**

## 2 ABOUT YOU Do you agree with the sentences in Exercise 1? Write your own sentences or ask another student.

## Unit 63

## 1 Which two phrases have a similar meaning? Tick (✓) them.

- I support it ☐ | personally, I think ☒ | if you ask me ☒
- 1 not in favour of ☐ | the issue ☐ | against ☐
  - 2 is to blame ☐ | it seems to me ☐ | is his fault ☐
  - 3 in my opinion ☐ | as far as I'm concerned ☐ | I'm considering ☐
  - 4 in favour ☐ | in principle ☐ | in theory ☐
  - 5 is opposed to ☐ | is against ☐ | is mature ☐
  - 6 I believe ☐ | I reckon ☐ | I blame ☐

## 2 Circle the correct word or phrase.

- It seems / reckons to me that we need this.
- 1 Is he in favour/against of the proposal?
  - 2 It's not your blame/fault.
  - 3 Give him a key; he's quite sensible/silly.
  - 4 What do you think about/of my new car?
  - 5 I need to consider/reckon this issue.
  - 6 Do you agree in favour/in principle?
  - 7 Do you support/opposed to the idea?

## Unit 64

## 1 Rewrite the sentence using the correct form of the word in capitals. The meaning should stay the same.

- Smoking isn't allowed. BAN Smoking is banned.
- 1 He doesn't do what I say. DISOBEY \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 They make us work hard. FORCE \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 You can't eat here. ALLOWED \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 You have to wear a uniform. COMPULSORY \_\_\_\_\_
  - 5 She allowed us to sit down. LET \_\_\_\_\_
  - 6 The boss says we have to go. INSIST \_\_\_\_\_
  - 7 The way he acts in class is terrible. BEHAVIOUR \_\_\_\_\_
  - 8 He makes us suffer if we're late. PUNISH \_\_\_\_\_



## Unit 65

## 1 Complete the dialogue.

- A You must be busy ► making plans for your wedding.  
 B Yes, I am, in (1) fact, I seem to do nothing else.  
 A Are you (2) expecting a lot of guests?  
 B Oh, yes, (3) definitely – it's going to be enormous. We've both got big families.  
 A And is Barry (4) invited to come?  
 B Goodness, I really (5) hate not – he's the last person I want at my wedding. Anyway, I have no (6) chance of inviting him.  
 A And how about Auntie June – is she coming?  
 B No, I'm (7) afraid not – she's not very well, (8) unfortunately. Her operation didn't go as (9) well as expected, so she won't be able to make it. She's ok, though.  
 A That's a relief. And what about Grandpa – is he (10) going to be there?  
 B Well, I (11) doubt so – it wouldn't be a wedding without him, would it?

## Unit 66

## 1 Is the speaker happy or unhappy in the sentences? Write H or U.

- The rain didn't spoil my holiday. H  
 1 I was really fed up with her. \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 The weather's atrocious, isn't it? \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 We've resolved the problem. \_\_\_\_\_  
 4 Billy's moaning again. \_\_\_\_\_  
 5 Judi didn't lose her temper. \_\_\_\_\_  
 6 I've got a complaint about the room. \_\_\_\_\_  
 7 The noise doesn't bother me. \_\_\_\_\_  
 8 That dog's a nuisance. \_\_\_\_\_  
 9 My day's been ruined. \_\_\_\_\_

## 2 Rewrite the sentence using the correct form of the word in capitals. The meaning must stay the same.

- Don't get angry. TEMPER Don't lose your temper.  
 1 There's no reason to go out. POINT There's \_\_\_\_\_.  
 2 You should speak to her face-to-face. PERSON You \_\_\_\_\_.  
 3 I would ask someone who knows a lot about it for advice. EXPERT I \_\_\_\_\_.  
 4 Have you ever thought about going to live abroad? CONSIDER Have \_\_\_\_\_.  
 5 She became a member of the tennis club. JOIN She \_\_\_\_\_.  
 6 Waiting in queues really irritates me. NERVES Waiting \_\_\_\_\_.  
 7 I don't think the cost of the meal is important. BOTHER I \_\_\_\_\_.  
 8 Did she say anything to you about the divorce? MENTION Did \_\_\_\_\_?

## Unit 67

## 1 Complete the warnings.

**WARNING**  
Do not cross the railway line when the barrier is down.

**LOW DOOR.**  
YOUR HEAD.

**Watch**  
for thieves.

**OF DOGS!**

**IN** \_\_\_\_\_ **OF THEFT,**  
**PHONE THIS NUMBER.**

**If swallowed,**  
**seek medical**  
**immediately.**

**Broken glass on the path**  
**– please be** \_\_\_\_\_.



## 68 I can use link words

### A Reason, result, and addition

A **link between A and B** is a connection between two or more people or things. The words in bold in this unit all **link** one idea (A) **with** another idea (B).

#### Glossary

**as a result** because of sth that happened before.

SYN **so**.

**due to sth** because of sth.

**what's more** INF used when you are adding information in spoken English or informal written English. SYN **plus** INF (and see spotlight).

**as** used to say why sth happens, or why sb does sth. SYNS **since**, **because**.

**consequently** because of sth that happened before. SYN **therefore**. (Both words are more formal than **as a result** or **so**.)

... and everything went wrong. I forgot to set the alarm, and **as a result**, I overslept and had to get a taxi to the station. Of course, all the trains were delayed **due to** the snow. **What's more**, when the train arrived, it was absolutely freezing **as** the heating wasn't working. A bit later the ticket inspector came round, and I discovered I'd bought the wrong kind of ticket, **so** I had to pay again, **plus** I had to pay a fine, which was very annoying. And when I finally got off the train, I slipped on the ice and broke my ankle. **Consequently** I spent the rest of the day, not at the meeting, but in hospital having x-rays. Not my best day.

#### spotlight **in addition, moreover, furthermore**

These are more formal ways of adding more information or arguments.

*The business was in trouble. **In addition**, his activities had attracted the attention of the police.*

*Teacher numbers have risen by 12%. **Moreover/ Furthermore**, extra money is being spent on books.*

#### 1 Circle the correct word.

► **(As)** In addition I had no money, I couldn't pay.

1 It snowed heavily, and **as a result/plus**, we had to stay in for two days.

2 It was an old armchair, and **because/what's more**, it smelled horrible.

3 He had to give up his job **consequently/due to** stress.

4 People are richer these days and **therefore/since** they spend a lot more.

5 It was a long way to the station, **so/plus** I had a suitcase.

6 **Since/Furthermore** he had no money, I ended up paying the bill.

7 Zoltan saw a man standing in the shadows. **Therefore/Moreover**, he was holding a knife.

8 The town has a good transport system. **Furthermore/As a result**, it is very cheap.

#### 2 Write the circled link words in Exercise 1 in the table below.

reason	result	addition
As		

#### 3 Complete the sentences in a logical way.

► I had a very bad night's sleep: the bed was uncomfortable, **plus** the room was hot.

1 In winter, schools sometimes have to \_\_\_\_\_ due to bad weather.

2 Ulla lost her passport on the way to the airport; **consequently**, \_\_\_\_\_ fly that day.

3 The hotel was dirty and the service was poor. **Furthermore**, the food \_\_\_\_\_.

4 As I \_\_\_\_\_ much money to spend, I decided to stay at home that evening.

5 He forgot his key and **therefore** he couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ the flat.

6 Jeans are extremely practical; **what's more** \_\_\_\_\_ expensive.

## B Contrasting ideas

A **contrast** is a difference between two or more people or things that are being compared. The words in bold below are used to introduce an idea which **contrasts** with something you have just said.

Contrasting two ideas in <u>one</u> sentence:	Notes
We got a ticket, <b>although</b> it wasn't easy. <b>even though</b> <b>though</b>	The clause with <b>although</b> , <b>even though</b> , and <b>though</b> can come at the beginning or the end, e.g. <b>Although</b> it wasn't easy, we got a ticket.
I went to work <b>despite</b> feeling very unwell. <b>in spite of</b> the bad weather. <b>despite the fact that</b> I had flu.	<b>Despite</b> and <b>in spite of</b> are followed by an <i>-ing</i> form or a noun.
Contrasting two ideas in <u>two</u> separate sentences:	
The car was old. <b>Despite that,</b> I still bought it. <b>In spite of that,</b>	In <b>despite that</b> and <b>in spite of that</b> , the word <i>that</i> refers back to the fact that the car was old.
She didn't work hard. <b>However,</b> she still passed. <b>Nevertheless,</b> <b>All the same,</b>	<b>However</b> and <b>nevertheless</b> are more formal; <b>all the same</b> is more informal.
He says he's rich. I don't believe him, <b>though.</b> <b>however.</b>	At the end of a sentence, <b>however</b> is more formal than <b>though</b> .

### spotlight *still*

**Still** can be used to emphasize that the second part of a sentence is surprising, especially after what was said in the first part of the sentence.

*She felt ill, but she **still** went to work.*

*He left an hour early, but he **still** missed the train.*

### 4 Match 1–8 with a–i.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| ▶ He says nice things about you. ...g          | a he got to work on time in the morning. |
| 1 He got the job in spite of ____              | b he wasn't feeling very well.           |
| 2 I saw the film last night. ____              | c although the main course was nice.     |
| 3 He went out despite the fact that ____       | d though the weather wasn't very good.   |
| 4 The soup was disgusting, ____                | e his lack of experience.                |
| 5 We had a nice day even ____                  | f the fact that the heating was on.      |
| 6 He felt really cold despite ____             | g However, you can't trust him. ✓        |
| 7 He went to bed very late. All the same, ____ | h I'd rather have a car.                 |
| 8 The bike's useful. Nevertheless, ____        | i I didn't think much of it, though.     |

### 5 Complete the sentences with one word. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

- ▶ We had quite a nice day there. All the same, I wouldn't go back again.
- I could just see the house \_\_\_\_\_ the fog.
  - Jun has very little money. In spite of \_\_\_\_\_, he's really generous.
  - You'll find it hard to get work there. \_\_\_\_\_, it's worth trying.
  - I wanted to see the exhibition. When I got there, it was closed, \_\_\_\_\_.
  - There was more snow today, \_\_\_\_\_ I think it's warmer this evening.
  - In \_\_\_\_\_ of leaving two hours early, we \_\_\_\_\_ missed the plane.
  - I didn't feel sleepy \_\_\_\_\_ though it was very late.
  - \_\_\_\_\_ the fact that we thought we knew the way, we got lost twice.



## C Other link words

Word or phase	Example	Meaning/usage
<b>whereas</b>	I enjoy tennis, <b>whereas</b> my father prefers rugby.	used for comparing two people, things, etc. and saying there is a difference between them.
<b>on the one hand ... on the other (hand)</b>	<b>On the one hand</b> , it's lovely here in summer, but <b>on the other</b> , the winter is terrible.	used for showing opposite points of view.
<b>otherwise</b> SYN <b>or (else)</b>	Put your cake on the table, <b>otherwise</b> the dog will eat it.	used to say that if sth doesn't happen or isn't true, sth else will happen, sometimes sth bad.
<b>provided (that)</b> SYN <b>as long as</b>	I'll go <b>provided</b> you come with me.	only if.
<b>unless</b>	I'll accept the job at the BBC <b>unless</b> they offer me a job at Sky.	used to say that sth will happen or be true if sth else does <i>not</i> happen or is <i>not</i> true.
<b>in case</b>	Take a map <b>in case</b> you need it.	because sth might happen.
<b>so (that)</b>	He got there early <b>so that</b> he could speak to her before the lesson.	used to talk about the <b>purpose</b> of an action.

### spotlight *purpose*

A **purpose** is a reason for doing something, or a thing that someone wants to achieve.

What's the **purpose** of your trip?

The **purpose** of the meeting is to discuss the figures.

### 6 Is the meaning of the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.

- He speaks German, whereas I don't. | I don't speak German, but he does. S
- 1 If you leave it here, someone will steal it. | Don't leave it here, or someone will steal it. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 I won't go to the party if Chica's going. | I won't go to the party unless Chica's going. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I took some money so that I could pay. | I took some money in case I had to pay. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 She'll get there provided she leaves now. | She'll get there as long as she leaves now. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 I always put sugar in, otherwise it's not sweet. | I always put sugar in unless it's sweet. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 What was the purpose of his letter? | What was his reason for writing the letter? \_\_\_\_\_

### 7 Complete the sentences with words from the box.

whereas on the one hand so that otherwise in case unless ✓ as long as

- She won't use a towel unless it's just been washed.
- 1 The children can go out \_\_\_\_\_ they don't cross the main road.
- 2 You should get there early \_\_\_\_\_ you get a good seat.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ flying can save time, but on the other, it's not good for the environment.
- 4 Teachers' salaries have gone up \_\_\_\_\_ nurses' salaries have fallen.
- 5 Take some chocolate with you \_\_\_\_\_ you're hungry on the journey.
- 6 Plug it in, \_\_\_\_\_ it won't work.

### 8 Test yourself. Look at the words in the first column and cover the examples and meanings. What are the meanings?

## 69 I can use a range of adjectives

### A Describing places

Hidden away in this **remote** part of **rural** France is the village of La Toque. It's a **curious, old-fashioned** sort of place. There's only one hotel, so it's **vital** to book in advance, but don't expect anything **grand**. The accommodation and food are very **simple**, but the prices are **reasonable** and I was **impressed with the overall** quality. The local people are still a bit **suspicious of** tourists, but I found them very **polite**. However, you may not meet many, as the streets are usually **deserted** by 10 p.m.!



#### Glossary

<b>remote</b>	• far away from where many people live.
<b>rural</b>	• connected with the country, not the town. <b>OPP urban.</b>
<b>curious</b>	• unusual or strange.
<b>old-fashioned</b>	• typical of the past but not of the present. <b>OPP modern.</b>
<b>vital</b>	• necessary and important. <b>SYN essential.</b>
<b>grand</b>	• impressive and large or important.
<b>simple</b>	• including the things you need but no extra things. <b>SYN basic.</b>
<b>reasonable</b>	• If prices are <b>reasonable</b> , they are not too high. <b>SYN fair.</b> <b>OPP unreasonable.</b>
<b>impressed with sth/sb</b>	• feeling that sth/sb is good or of a high standard.
<b>overall</b>	• general; considering everything.
<b>suspicious of sth/sb</b>	• feeling that sth/sb is dishonest and cannot be trusted.
<b>polite</b>	• behaving in a good or correct way. <b>OPP rude.</b>
<b>deserted</b>	• empty because everyone has left. <b>OPPS busy, crowded.</b>

#### 1 Find seven more pairs of synonyms or opposites in the box.

simple✓ modern curious fair polite essential busy old-fashioned  
rural basic✓ urban rude deserted vital strange reasonable

- simple / SYN basic / SYN / OPP / OPP / OPP

#### 2 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

- It's a rural area. | It's an urban area. **D**  
1 No one was there. | It was deserted. \_\_\_\_\_  
2 It's expensive. | The price is reasonable. \_\_\_\_\_  
3 She's good. | I'm impressed with her. \_\_\_\_\_  
4 It's essential. | It isn't vital. \_\_\_\_\_  
5 It wasn't grand. | It was quite basic. \_\_\_\_\_  
6 I'm suspicious of him. | I don't trust him. \_\_\_\_\_  
7 It was fair. | It was unreasonable. \_\_\_\_\_

#### 3 Complete the words in the sentences.

- It gets very busy, so it's **vital** to arrive early.  
1 The others found him normal, but I thought he was a c\_\_\_\_\_ man.  
2 It's a long way from town, so it's quite a r\_\_\_\_\_ place.  
3 I was s\_\_\_\_\_ of the man when he refused to give his name.  
4 I like the restaurant, and what's more, the prices are r\_\_\_\_\_.  
5 I was very i\_\_\_\_\_ with the hotel: it's clean, comfortable, and very friendly.  
6 There were one or two things I didn't like, but the o\_\_\_\_\_ standard was good.

#### 4 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. Say the words and their synonyms and opposites.



## B Describing feelings

Adjectives	Example(s)	Meaning
<b>terrifying/terrified</b>	It was a <b>terrifying</b> film. I was <b>terrified</b> watching that film.	very frightening. very frightened.
<b>disappointed/disappointing</b>	I was <b>disappointed</b> with my results. My results were <b>disappointing</b> .	feeling unhappy because sth is not as good as you hoped.
<b>amazing/amazed</b>	Some of the dancers were <b>amazing</b> .	surprising and difficult to believe, often in a positive way.
<b>shocking/shocked</b>	It was <b>shocking</b> to see so many people with nowhere to live.	upsetting and very surprising in a negative way.
<b>alarming/alarmed</b>	When the police arrived, it was a bit <b>alarming</b> .	frightening or causing worry.
<b>disgusting/disgusted</b>	Last night's meal was <b>disgusting</b> .	very unpleasant.
<b>amusing/amused</b>	We all thought the film was quite <b>amusing</b> .	funny in a gentle way.
<b>embarrassed/embarrassing</b>	I was <b>embarrassed</b> when I got his name wrong.	feeling uncomfortable because of sth silly you have done.
<b>astonishing/astonished</b>	It's <b>astonishing</b> how much she has changed in the last five years.	very surprising.
<b>satisfying/satisfied</b> <small>OPP</small> <b>dissatisfied</b>	Cooking for others is very <b>satisfying</b> .	making you feel pleased or happy.

### 5 Circle the correct answer.

- The beaches were really amazing/amazed.
- 1 I was shocking/shocked when I saw it.
- 2 He was satisfying/satisfied with the course.
- 3 The hotel didn't have a restaurant, which was rather disappointing/disappointed.
- 4 It was a terrifying/terrified experience.
- 5 The smell was disgusting/disgusted.
- 6 José felt a bit embarrassing/embarrassed.

### spotlight **-ed/-ing endings**

We use adjectives that end with **-ed** to describe our feelings. We use adjectives that end with **-ing** to describe the person or thing that makes us have these feelings.

*We were **shocked** by his behaviour.  
His behaviour was **shocking**.*

### 6 Complete the dialogues with adjectives from the table.

- Were you frightened? ~ Yes, absolutely terrified.
- 1 Was the film funny? ~ Yes, it was quite \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 You wore jeans to a smart party! ~ Yes, it was a bit \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 He steals money from old people. ~ I know. It's absolutely \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 Was he pleased with his marks? ~ No, he was \_\_\_\_\_ with them.
- 5 Was the wine unpleasant? ~ Yes, it was absolutely \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 Were you surprised? ~ Yes, absolutely \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 Were you very frightened? ~ Yes, it was a bit \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 Were you happy with the work? ~ No, I wasn't \_\_\_\_\_ with it.

### 7 Test yourself. Look at the words in the first column and cover the examples and meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

## C Describing qualities

People have **mixed feelings** about the new city hotel. Here are some comments.

The rooms were **adequate** but I didn't like the **artificial** flowers.

I like the **contemporary** design – simple but **effective**.

The bed was a bit **firm** for my liking.

Most of the staff were **temporary** but they seemed very **efficient**.

I was able to take my dog. It's **rare** for a hotel to allow them.

I was **glad** we had one of their best rooms. Some looked a bit **cramped**.

They put champagne in our room, which was very **unexpected**.



### Glossary

<b>mixed feelings</b>	• both <b>positive</b> (+) and <b>negative</b> (–) feelings about sth.
<b>adequate</b>	• just good enough but nothing more. OPP <b>inadequate</b> .
<b>artificial</b>	• made by people and used instead of sth natural. OPPS <b>real</b> , <b>natural</b> .
<b>contemporary</b>	• of the present time. SYN <b>modern</b> . OPP <b>old-fashioned</b> .
<b>effective</b>	• successful and giving the result you want. OPP <b>ineffective</b> .
<b>firm</b>	• quite hard. OPP <b>soft</b> .
<b>temporary</b>	• employed or continuing for only a limited period of time. OPP <b>permanent</b> .
<b>efficient</b>	• working well, quickly, and without mistakes. OPP <b>inefficient</b> .
<b>rare</b>	• not done, seen, or happening very often. OPP <b>common</b> .
<b>glad</b>	• pleased; quite happy. SYN <b>pleased</b> .
<b>cramped</b>	• small, and not having enough space. OPP <b>spacious</b> .
<b>unexpected</b>	• If sth is <b>unexpected</b> , it surprises you because you didn't know it was going to happen. OPP <b>expected</b> .

### 8 Replace the underlined adjective with a word that means the opposite.

- I had positive feelings. negative
- The food was adequate.
  - We had a firm mattress.
  - The service was efficient.
  - My room was cramped.
  - Is that real snow?
  - It's a rare disease.
  - It was an effective method.
  - The visit was expected.
  - It's a temporary arrangement.

### 9 Complete the sentences with suitable adjectives.

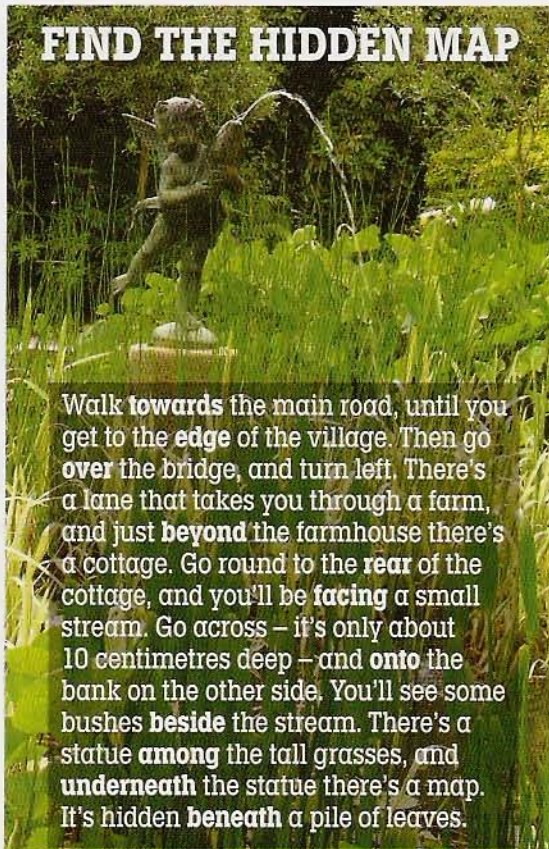
- You couldn't move round in the bathroom; it was very cramped.
- I have \_\_\_\_\_ feelings about working abroad: I'd like to, but I'd miss my family.
  - It's a fantastic climate here. It's very \_\_\_\_\_ to have bad weather in the summer.
  - I'm \_\_\_\_\_ your mother is feeling better now. She was quite ill last week.
  - She wears very old-\_\_\_\_\_ clothes.
  - My sister's having a baby. It was completely \_\_\_\_\_, but we're all very happy.
  - This machine does the work of ten men; it's very \_\_\_\_\_.
  - I think his work is \_\_\_\_\_, but it could be better.
  - A lot of people don't like \_\_\_\_\_ art because they don't understand it.
  - Sometimes Ava is very positive, but she can also be quite \_\_\_\_\_.
  - She's only a \_\_\_\_\_ member of staff. I think she's leaving next week.

### 10 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings? Can you remember the synonyms and opposites?

## 70 I can express place and time

### A Place 🎧

**FIND THE HIDDEN MAP**



Walk **towards** the main road, until you get to the **edge** of the village. Then go **over** the bridge, and turn left. There's a lane that takes you through a farm, and just **beyond** the farmhouse there's a cottage. Go round to the **rear** of the cottage, and you'll be **facing** a small stream. Go across – it's only about 10 centimetres deep – and **onto** the bank on the other side. You'll see some bushes **beside** the stream. There's a statue **among** the tall grasses, and **underneath** the statue there's a map. It's hidden **beneath** a pile of leaves.

#### Glossary

**towards** in the direction of (also **toward**).

**edge** the place where sth, e.g. a table, a cliff, or a town, ends.

**beyond** past a place and further away.

**rear** the back of sth, especially a car or a building.  
OPP **front**.

**face sth** look towards sth. OPP **have your back to sth**.

**onto** moving to or on a particular place or position.

**beside** next to. SYN **by**.

**among** surrounded by things (also **amongst**).

**underneath** under (when sth is hidden or covered).

**beneath** FML under.

#### spotlight over

**Over** has different meanings:

1 up and across to the other side of something.

Go **over** the bridge.

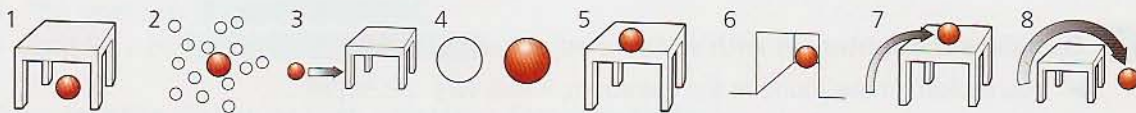
2 used to express location at a distance from the speaker.

Sit **over there**.

3 **all over**: in all or most parts of sth.

His clothes were **all over** the floor.

### 1 Match the pictures with the words below.



► towards 3 over \_\_\_\_\_ the rear \_\_\_\_\_ beside \_\_\_\_\_ beneath \_\_\_\_\_ onto \_\_\_\_\_ the edge \_\_\_\_\_ among \_\_\_\_\_

### 2 Complete the sentences with words from the glossary.

► The front seats are great, but there isn't much room for your legs in the rear.

1 The glass fell \_\_\_\_\_ the floor and smashed.

2 I could see a few of my friends \_\_\_\_\_ the crowd.

3 Don't sit \_\_\_\_\_ there. Come and sit \_\_\_\_\_ me.

4 I'm not surprised I couldn't find my pen; it was \_\_\_\_\_ all those books.

5 We didn't stay in one town – we went all \_\_\_\_\_ the place.

6 I couldn't see what was happening because I had my \_\_\_\_\_ to the window.

7 Don't stand so close to the \_\_\_\_\_ of the road – it's dangerous.

8 There's a village in the valley, and \_\_\_\_\_ it, you can see the mountains in the distance.

## B Time

We'd **already** played 85 minutes and we were losing. Bob suddenly shouted, 'Come on, there are still five minutes **to go** - it's **not over yet**.'

The children were woken **during** the night by a loud bang. It was followed by heavy rain which **lasted throughout** the night.

Guy said he'd be back at three this afternoon. **In the meantime**, I took Martha shopping. She spent all morning looking for a black dress and **eventually** found something she liked.

I used to play a bit, but **these days** I just watch football on TV. I go to a game **now and again** with my son. **Recently** we saw Arsenal play Spurs.

### Glossary

<b>already</b>	• before now or before a particular point in time.
<b>to go</b>	• If there are five minutes <b>to go</b> , then five minutes remain before sth will happen.
<b>over</b>	• finished.
<b>not . . . yet</b>	• used for talking about sth that has not happened, but will probably happen in the future.
<b>during</b>	• at some point in the period of time mentioned.
<b>last</b>	• continue for a period of time.
<b>throughout</b>	• from the beginning to the end of sth.
<b>in the meantime</b>	• during the time between two events. <b>SYN meanwhile</b> .
<b>eventually</b>	• after a long period of time (often after some difficulty).
<b>these days</b>	• in the present time. <b>SYN nowadays</b> .
<b>now and again</b>	• <b>SYNS occasionally, from time to time</b> .
<b>recently</b>	• not long ago. <b>recent ADJ</b> .

### 3 Replace the underlined phrases with a single word that has the same meaning.

- I saw Petra not long ago. recently
- Do you see your uncle much these days? \_\_\_\_\_
  - The play continued for about two hours. \_\_\_\_\_
  - I go to the theatre from time to time. \_\_\_\_\_
  - The train wasn't due for two hours. In the meantime we went for lunch. \_\_\_\_\_
  - He slept from the beginning to the end of the film. \_\_\_\_\_
  - We waited at the hotel and after a long period of time Danny arrived. \_\_\_\_\_

### 4 Complete the dialogues.

- They want us to meet them later this afternoon. ~ Well, in the meantime, let's go to the market.
- He's writing a book, but it's not finished \_\_\_\_\_. ~ Yes I know, he showed it to me \_\_\_\_\_. It looked very interesting.
  - Is 'Love in Amsterdam' his most \_\_\_\_\_ film? ~ Yes, it came out \_\_\_\_\_ the summer. I think he's working on another film now.
  - Is the match \_\_\_\_\_ yet? ~ No, there are still ten minutes to \_\_\_\_\_.
  - How long does the film \_\_\_\_\_? ~ About two hours, but Candy doesn't want to go. She's \_\_\_\_\_ seen it.
  - I used to go to Rome \_\_\_\_\_ for work, just a couple of times a year. ~ Oh, really? I lived there \_\_\_\_\_ the 1990s - I loved it.

### 5 Test yourself. Look at the glossary meanings and cover the words. What are the words?

## 71 I can use prepositions in phrases

### A Preposition + word(s)

Phrase	Example	Meaning
<b>by chance</b>	We met in the shop <b>by chance</b> .	without it/sth being planned.
<b>on board</b>	Are all the passengers <b>on board</b> ?	on a plane or ship or bus.
<b>on purpose</b>	She broke my watch, but she didn't do it <b>on purpose</b> .	with a definite intention; not accidentally. SYN <b>deliberately</b> .
<b>at least</b>	It takes <b>at least</b> an hour to get home.	not less than, and probably more.
<b>at first</b>	I didn't understand him <b>at first</b> .	at the beginning.
<b>in a hurry</b>	He got up late and left <b>in a hurry</b> .	quickly, and usually because you haven't enough time. SYN <b>in a rush</b> .
<b>in advance</b>	Can I buy tickets <b>in advance</b> ?	before a particular time or event.
<b>in charge of sth/sb</b>	Who's <b>in charge of</b> the office while Matt's on holiday?	in a position of control over sth/sb. SYN <b>responsible for sth/sb</b> .
<b>in general</b>	<b>In general</b> , I don't work on Saturdays.	usually; in most cases. SYN <b>generally</b> .
<b>in public</b>	I don't like it when people argue with each other <b>in public</b> .	when other people are present. OPP <b>in private</b> .

- 1 Make eight more phrases using *in*, *at*, *by*, or *on*, and one of the words from the box.

general	purpose	advance ✓
least	private	public
first	board	chance

- *in advance* \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

#### spotlight *in the end* and *at the end*

**In the end** can mean 'finally', 'after a period of time', or 'in conclusion'.

*All the restaurants closed early, so **in the end** we went home.*

**At the end** can mean 'in the final part', or 'when sth finishes'.

***At the end of** the film, they go to live in New York.*

- 2 Replace the underlined words with a prepositional phrase that has the same meaning.
- We'll need not less than two hours to get there. at least
  - 1 Generally, he's very helpful. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 I think he took my dictionary deliberately. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 All the passengers are on the plane. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 In the final part of the story, the old woman dies. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 5 Who's responsible for these noisy children? \_\_\_\_\_
  - 6 I had to have breakfast quickly. \_\_\_\_\_

- 3 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

- He made the comment in private, but the journalist still reported it.
- 1 All the buses were full, so \_\_\_\_\_ the end we took a taxi.
- 2 If you want to get seats on the train, you'll have to book \_\_\_\_\_ advance.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ first I didn't like the book, but actually it got better.
- 4 I found the shoes I wanted \_\_\_\_\_ chance.
- 5 Like many actors, he doesn't like talking about his private life \_\_\_\_\_ public.

## B Word(s) + preposition

Phrase	Example	Meaning
<b>access to sth</b>	Do you have <b>access to</b> the internet?	the chance to use or have sth.
<b>make the most of sth</b>	If he lets you use the gym, you must <b>make the most of</b> it.	make the best use of sth that will help you. SYN <b>take advantage of sth</b> .
<b>capable of (doing) sth</b>	She's <b>capable of</b> passing the exam if she works hard.	having the ability or qualities to do sth.
<b>involved in sth</b>	He's become very <b>involved in</b> local politics.	connected with sth or taking an active part in it.
<b>approve of sb/sth</b>	My mother doesn't <b>approve of</b> men who smoke.	think that sb/sth is good or suitable. OPP <b>disapprove of sb/sth</b> .
<b>get rid of sth/sb</b>	We <b>got rid of</b> our old sofa. They <b>got rid of</b> two workers.	throw sth away, or make yourself free of sth/sb you don't want.
<b>care about sth/sb</b>	She <b>cares about</b> people. He doesn't <b>care about</b> money.	be interested in sb/sth and think it or they are important.
<b>take care of sb/sth</b>	After their mother died, they <b>took care of</b> their father.	help and protect sb/sth. SYN <b>look after sb/sth</b> .
<b>insist on (doing) sth</b>	He <b>insisted on</b> paying for dinner.	say strongly that you must have or do sth, or that someone else must.
<b>cope with sth/sb</b>	I'll have more work next year, but I think I can <b>cope with</b> it.	take action successfully with a difficult situation. SYN <b>manage</b> .

### spotlight *depend on sb/sth*

- 1 be able to trust someone or something. SYN **rely on sb/sth**.  
*You can never **depend on** the trains in this country.*
- 2 be decided or influenced by someone or something.  
*We may go out – it **depends on** the weather.*

#### 4 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

- We can look after the children.      5 Don't get rid of that lovely dress.  
 1 She approves of my new boyfriend.      6 Can you depend on him?  
 2 Is he still involved in the company?      7 Mark is capable of doing very well.  
 3 They can't cope with all this work.      8 I don't have access to email.  
 4 He insisted on doing the cooking.      9 We must take advantage of the weather.

#### 5 Complete the word in each sentence.

- Does she really care about Conrad?  
 1 How do you cope with three children and a full-time job?  
 2 I had to get rid of all my old records.  
 3 We're taking care of the house while they're away.  
 4 It's your only chance to speak English, so make the most of it.  
 5 Do you want me to look after the dog when you go shopping?  
 6 I want to go out, but it depends on the amount of homework we have to do.  
 7 He wants us to get involved in making arrangements for the conference.  
 8 Lucy's friends strongly disapprove of her decision to marry Jack.



## 72 I can use prefixes

### A Negative prefixes

Adjective/OPP	Example	Meaning	Other words
<b>insecure</b> OPP <b>secure</b>	She's very <b>insecure</b> about her appearance.	not confident about yourself.	informal inflexible
<b>immoral</b> OPP <b>moral</b>	She stole money from my children. That's <b>immoral</b> .	thought to be wrong or dishonest by most people.	impossible impatient
<b>illegible</b> OPP <b>legible</b>	My doctor's writing is <b>illegible</b> .	very difficult or impossible to read.	illegal
<b>irrelevant</b> OPP <b>relevant</b>	I need some new shoes. The colour's <b>irrelevant</b> .	not important to what you are discussing or doing.	irregular irresponsible
<b>unfair</b> OPP <b>fair</b>	His office is bigger than mine. It's so <b>unfair</b> !	not treating each person in the same way or equally.	unpleasant unsuccessful
<b>unacceptable</b> OPP <b>acceptable</b>	The player hit the ref. That's <b>unacceptable</b> .	so bad that you think it should not be allowed.	uncertain unkind
<b>disloyal</b> OPP <b>loyal</b>	They were very <b>disloyal</b> to the family.	not supporting your friends, family, country, etc.	dishonest disorganized
<b>non-alcoholic</b> OPP <b>alcoholic</b>	Is this drink <b>non-alcoholic</b> ?	Juice is <b>non-alcoholic</b> , beer and wine are <b>alcoholic</b> .	non-smoking non-fiction

#### spotlight Prefixes

A prefix is a letter or group of letters that you put at the beginning of a word to change its meaning. The prefixes in the table above have the meaning 'not', e.g. **insecure** = not secure, **illegible** = not legible.

#### 1 Cover the table. Write prefixes that add the meaning 'not' to the adjectives.

- |                        |                         |                     |                       |
|------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| ▶ <u>im</u> moral      | 3 <u>il</u> legal       | 6 <u>il</u> formal  | 9 <u>il</u> regular   |
| 1 <u>un</u> kind       | 4 <u>ir</u> responsible | 7 <u>un</u> smoking | 10 <u>un</u> honest   |
| 2 <u>non</u> alcoholic | 5 <u>un</u> certain     | 8 <u>un</u> secure  | 11 <u>un</u> relevant |

#### 2 Complete the dialogues with one word from the table.

- ▶ Did your company find a new manager? ~ No, we were unsuccessful.
- 1 Is stealing from the rich the right thing to do? ~ No, it's unfair.
- 2 Has it got alcohol in it? ~ No, it's non-alcoholic.
- 3 Is your age important for this kind of work? ~ No, it's irrelevant.
- 4 Is she confident with other people? ~ No, she's quite insecure.
- 5 Men and women don't earn the same in this job, do they? ~ No, and that's unfair.
- 6 He didn't support his country, did he? ~ No, he was disloyal.

#### 3 Complete the questions, then write your own answers, or ask another student.

##### ABOUT YOU

- Do you think life is generally fair or unfair?
- Is teenagers' behaviour nowadays acceptable or unacceptable?
- Are your friends generally loyal or disloyal?
- Is your handwriting legible or illegible?
- Do you think it should be legal or illegal to drive at 17?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## B Reversing an action



**do** your jacket **up**  
 SYN **fasten** your jacket  
 OPP **undo/unfasten**



**tie** your shoelace **(up)**  
 SYN **fasten**  
 OPP **untie/unfasten**



**pack** your suitcase  
 OPP **unpack**



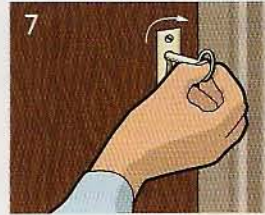
**load** the van **(up)**  
 OPP **unload**



**plug** the kettle **in**  
 OPP **unplug**



**wrap** the parcel **(up)**  
 OPP **unwrap**



**lock** the cupboard  
 OPP **unlock**



**get** dressed  
 OPP **get undressed**

### 4 Circle two correct words in each sentence.

- You can wrap a) a parcel b) a present c) water.  
 1 You can unload a) a ship b) a saucepan c) a lorry.  
 2 You can pack a) your luggage b) a suitcase c) a handbag.  
 3 You can unplug a) a room b) a printer c) a washing machine.  
 4 You can untie a) a dog b) a boat c) a newspaper.  
 5 You can do up a) a pair of trousers b) a hat c) a seat belt.  
 6 You can unlock a) a suitcase b) a car c) a bottle.

### 5 Complete the table using a synonym of the verb on the left, then write the opposite.

Sentence	Synonym	Opposite
► Take the bags out of the car.	Unload the car.	Load the car.
1 Take the paper off the present.		
2 Shut the suitcase with a key.		
3 Put your clothes on.		
4 Put your things in your suitcase.		
5 Fasten the buttons on your shirt.		
6 Fasten your shoelaces.		

### 6 Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Say the words and opposites.



## 73 I can use suffixes

### A Noun suffixes

Suffix	Verb	Noun	Verb	Noun
+ <i>ment</i>	<b>judge</b>	<b>judgement</b>	<b>measure</b>	<b>measurement</b>
+ <i>ion / sion</i> + <i>ation / ition</i>	<b>react</b> <b>interpret</b>	<b>reaction</b> <b>interpretation</b>	<b>extend</b> <b>define</b>	<b>extension</b> <b>definition</b>
+ <i>ance / ence</i>	<b>disappear</b>	<b>disappearance</b>	<b>prefer</b>	<b>preference</b>
Suffix	Adjective	Noun	Adjective	Noun
+ <i>ty / ity</i>	<b>cruel</b>	<b>cruelty</b>	<b>real</b>	<b>reality</b>
+ <i>ness</i>	<b>gentle</b>	<b>gentleness</b>	<b>kind</b>	<b>kindness</b>

#### 1 Circle the nouns.

disappear definition gentleness react prefer kindness  
disappearance extension cruel reality define  
preference interpret measure judgement extend

#### 2 Look at the verbs and adjectives, which you did not circle, in Exercise 1. Write them below with the correct noun form.

- disappear      disappearance
- \_\_\_\_\_
  - \_\_\_\_\_
  - \_\_\_\_\_
  - \_\_\_\_\_
  - \_\_\_\_\_
  - \_\_\_\_\_
  - \_\_\_\_\_

#### 3 Complete the sentences using a word from the table above.

- She cooked for me when I was ill; I really appreciated her kindness.
- Could I have the \_\_\_\_\_ of the room so that I can order the new carpet?
  - I get very upset when I hear about \_\_\_\_\_ towards animals.
  - He lives in a dream world and doesn't want to face the \_\_\_\_\_ of the situation.
  - The police are investigating the \_\_\_\_\_ of the young man, who was last seen in 2007.
  - I told the boss I was leaving; her \_\_\_\_\_ was very surprising. She laughed!
  - She chose the wrong person for the job. That's just poor \_\_\_\_\_.
  - I like most types of novel, but my \_\_\_\_\_ is for crime stories and murder mysteries.
  - We're planning a new \_\_\_\_\_ for the old building; it'll be twice the size.

#### Glossary

**judgement** an opinion you form after thinking carefully about sth (in a court of law, the **judgement** is the judge's official decision).

**measurement(s)** the height, weight, etc. of sth.

**reaction** sth that you do or say as a result of sth that has happened.

**extension** a part that is added to sth to make it bigger or longer.

**interpretation** an understanding or explanation of the meaning of sth.

**definition** an exact statement of what a word or phrase means.

**disappearance** a situation in which sb or sth becomes impossible to see or find.

**preference** an interest in or liking of one thing more than another.

**cruelty** behaviour that deliberately causes a person or animal to suffer.

**reality** the way life really is.

**gentleness** kind and calm behaviour towards other people.

**kindness** behaviour that shows you care about others and want to help them.

## B Adjective suffixes

Suffix	Examples	Meaning
-less -ful	Feel <b>powerless</b> in your job? Want to be <b>powerful</b> ? Buy our <b>POWERGUY</b> video!	<b>powerless</b> not able to influence or control people or things. <b>OPP</b> <b>powerful</b> .
-proof	The world's only <b>waterproof</b> and <b>shockproof</b> digital camera. Great for underwater photography!	<b>waterproof</b> not allowing water to enter. <b>shockproof</b> made so that it isn't easily damaged if it is hit or dropped.
-ical	Cool, <b>practical</b> , <b>economical</b> clothing for <b>tropical</b> conditions. Go to practicalgear.com	<b>practical</b> useful and suitable. <b>economical</b> using money, goods, etc. carefully and without wasting any. <b>tropical</b> from or in the hottest parts of the world.
-able	<i><b>Fabulous fashionable shoes – and they're machine washable too!</b></i>	<b>fashionable</b> popular at the moment. <b>washable</b> able to be washed.
-ous	Get our T-shirts with <b>ridiculous</b> or <b>humorous</b> slogans	<b>ridiculous</b> very silly. <b>humorous</b> funny; amusing.
-y	Try our <b>spicy</b> curry or fish with a <b>creamy</b> sauce.	<b>spicy</b> with a strong, hot flavour. <b>creamy</b> containing cream, or smooth like cream.

4 Tick (✓) the correct form. Both forms may be correct.

- ridiculous ☒ ridicical ☒  
 1 waterproof ☐ proofwater ☐  
 2 careful ☐ careless ☐  
 3 creamful ☐ creamy ☐  
 4 humorful ☐ humorous ☐  
 5 practicy ☐ practical ☐  
 6 washable ☐ washless ☐  
 7 powerful ☐ powerless ☐

### spotlight Adjectives ending in -ful and -less

There are several pairs of opposites ending in **-ful** and **-less**:

*He's a **careful** student.* = He doesn't make mistakes. **OPP** **careless**.

*It was a **useful**/useless suggestion.*

*This gas is **harmful**/harmless.*

*It's a **painful**/painless treatment.*


5 Are these things generally good or bad? Write G or B.

- a powerful speaker G      3 harmful medicine \_\_\_\_\_      6 an economical car \_\_\_\_\_  
 1 washable trousers \_\_\_\_\_      4 painless medical treatment \_\_\_\_\_      7 a powerless government \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 a shockproof watch \_\_\_\_\_      5 tropical fruit \_\_\_\_\_

6 Complete the sentences using adjectives formed from the nouns in the box below.

spice   pain   practice   fashion   ridicule   use   harm   humour✓   economy

- The article wasn't supposed to be humorous, but it made me laugh all the same.  
 1 Don't leave that powder there – it could be \_\_\_\_\_ to the children.  
 2 The price of the meal was \_\_\_\_\_. I just couldn't afford it.  
 3 Throw that thing away – it's absolutely \_\_\_\_\_.  
 4 A bike is much more \_\_\_\_\_ than a car in the centre of town.  
 5 These shoes may be \_\_\_\_\_, but they're incredibly uncomfortable.  
 6 My car uses less petrol than my sister's, so it's a lot more \_\_\_\_\_.  
 7 Is your toothache very \_\_\_\_\_?  
 8 I couldn't eat the meal; it was much too \_\_\_\_\_ for me.

7  Test yourself. Look at the examples and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?



## 74 I can use verb patterns

Verb + infinitive	Example	Meaning
<b>intend</b> to do sth	We <b>intend</b> to leave early tonight.	plan or mean to do sth.
<b>manage</b> to do sth	I <b>managed</b> to get a job, but it wasn't easy.	succeed with sth that is often difficult.
<b>tend</b> to do sth	I <b>tend</b> to get up late on Sundays.	usually do sth. <b>tendency</b> n.
<b>pretend</b> to do or be sth	He <b>pretended</b> to be ill because he just didn't want to go to school.	act in a particular way to make people believe sth that isn't true.
<b>refuse</b> to do sth	Why did she <b>refuse</b> to help you?	say that you won't do sth that sb has asked you to do.

Other common verbs used in this way: *expect, promise, offer, decide, hope, want, mean.*

### Verb + -ing form

<b>imagine</b> doing sth	I can't <b>imagine</b> working without a computer.	think what sth will be like.
<b>admit</b> doing sth <b>deny</b> doing sth	He <b>admitted</b> taking the vase. She <b>denied</b> taking his watch.	agree that you have done sth wrong. OPP <b>deny</b> doing sth.
<b>recall</b> doing sth	I don't <b>recall</b> meeting them.	remember sth you did in the past.
<b>mind</b> doing sth	Do you <b>mind</b> working late?	feel unhappy that you have to do sth.
<b>regret</b> doing sth	I <b>regret</b> leaving school at 16.	feel sorry that you did sth.

Other common verbs used in this way: *enjoy, avoid, keep, risk, regret, consider, suggest.*

### Verb + object + infinitive

<b>persuade</b> sb to do sth	He <b>persuaded</b> me to buy a new car.	make sb do sth by giving them a good reason to do it.
<b>encourage</b> sb to do sth	My sister <b>encouraged</b> me to have dancing lessons.	give sb help and support so that they feel confident to do sth.
<b>warn</b> sb not to do sth	He <b>warned</b> me not to go into that area.	tell sb not to do sth that might be unpleasant or dangerous.
<b>remind</b> sb to do sth	I had to <b>remind</b> her to post the letter.	help sb to remember sth that they have to do.
<b>enable</b> sb to do sth	His map <b>enabled</b> me to find it.	make it possible for sb to do sth.

Other common verbs used in this way: *want, ask, tell, beg, advise, expect, force, help, allow.*

### Verb + object + preposition

<b>accuse</b> sb <b>of</b> sth	The teacher <b>accused</b> the boy <b>of</b> cheating.	say that sb has done wrong or broken the law.
<b>blame</b> sb <b>for</b> sth	They <b>blamed</b> the teachers <b>for</b> the bad exam results.	think or say that sb is responsible for sth bad.
<b>remind</b> sb <b>of</b> sb/sth	You <b>remind</b> me <b>of</b> my dad.	cause sb to remember sb/sth.
<b>introduce</b> sb <b>to</b> sb	I <b>introduced</b> Miss Anderson <b>to</b> my boss.	tell sb another person's name when they meet for the first time.

Other common verbs used in this way: *ask sb for, forgive sb for, prevent sb from (doing sth), spend sth on.*



# 1 Cross out the verb that cannot be used in each sentence.

- They \_\_\_\_\_ to go.  
a) wanted b) ~~enjoyed~~ c) refused d) intended
- 1 She \_\_\_\_\_ me to do it.  
a) encouraged b) persuaded c) reminded d) pretended
- 2 He \_\_\_\_\_ losing the money.  
a) managed b) admitted c) regretted d) denied
- 3 We \_\_\_\_\_ to go away in the summer.  
a) hope b) enjoy c) tend d) intend
- 4 I don't \_\_\_\_\_ staying there.  
a) recall b) mind c) tend d) regret
- 5 Did they \_\_\_\_\_ to spend all the money?  
a) deny b) intend c) refuse d) mean
- 6 They \_\_\_\_\_ me not to go there.  
a) reminded b) accused c) persuaded d) warned

# 2 Circle the correct verb.

- He said he was at the meeting, but denied/admitted causing the trouble.
- 1 The extra money I earn will warn/enable me to have a holiday this year.
- 2 The roads will be busy, so we intend/pretend to leave early.
- 3 I can't recall/imagine living in another country.
- 4 He said it was dangerous and warned/encouraged me not to go there.
- 5 The girl behind the bar accuses/reminds me of your sister.
- 6 Actually, I don't mind/admit going to the dentist.

# 3 Match 1–6 with a–g.

- She suggested e a making any mistakes.
- 1 She accused \_\_\_\_\_ b me to her sister.
- 2 She persuaded \_\_\_\_\_ c to be an actress.
- 3 She denied \_\_\_\_\_ d me for the mistakes.
- 4 She pretended \_\_\_\_\_ e going out. ✓
- 5 She introduced \_\_\_\_\_ f me of lying.
- 6 She blamed \_\_\_\_\_ g me to go.

# 4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

Is there anything:

- 1 you managed to do recently that was difficult? What? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 you intended to do recently but didn't? What? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 you regret doing recently? What? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 you have refused to do recently? What? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 someone has persuaded you to do recently? What? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 someone has warned you not to do recently? What? \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 someone has blamed you for recently? What? \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 someone has reminded you to do recently? What? \_\_\_\_\_

# 5 Test yourself. Cover the third column of each table and look at the verbs and examples. Can you remember the meanings?



# 75 I can use phrasal verbs

## A Grammar

Verb	Example	Meaning
<b>give up</b> [no object]	They <b>gave up</b> when the other team scored the second goal.	accept you cannot do sth and so stop trying.
<b>go up</b>	Sales <b>went up</b> last month.	increase in price, level, etc. OPP <b>go down</b> .
<b>run out</b>	My visa <b>runs out</b> next week.	come to an end.
<b>take after sb</b> [object goes after the verb and particle]	I <b>take after</b> my father in looks but my mother in character.	look or behave like an older member of your family.
<b>get over sth</b>	She's been very ill, but she's <b>getting over</b> it now.	recover from an illness or bad experience.
<b>give sth away</b> [object can go between or after the verb and particle]	I had a bike but I <b>gave it away</b> . He's <b>given away</b> his old CDs.	give sth to sb without wanting money for it.
<b>make sth up</b>	I couldn't remember the story, so I <b>made</b> something <b>up</b> .	invent sth, often sth that you pretend is true.
<b>switch sth on</b>	Could you <b>switch</b> the light <b>on</b> ? Could you <b>switch on</b> the light?	press sth to start electric power. OPP <b>switch sth off</b> .
<b>put sth out</b>	They <b>put out</b> the fire quickly. They <b>put it out</b> quickly.	make sth stop burning. SYN <b>extinguish</b> FML.
<b>get on with sb</b> [verb with 3 parts, object at the end]	Do you <b>get on with</b> your brother?	have a good relationship with sb.
<b>run out of sth</b>	We've <b>run out of</b> bread.	finish your supply of sth.

### 1 Is the grammar in these sentences right or wrong? Write R or W.

- She gave away it. W
- The numbers have gone up. \_\_\_\_\_
  - Did he make the story up? \_\_\_\_\_
  - Does he take his father after? \_\_\_\_\_
  - Don't put out it. \_\_\_\_\_
  - He'll get over it. \_\_\_\_\_
  - You can't switch off it. \_\_\_\_\_
  - She couldn't do it, so she gave up. \_\_\_\_\_

### 2 Circle the correct answer.

- Prices have gone up / given up.
- He definitely takes after / gets over his dad.
  - It's not true: he made it up / took after it.
  - Do you get on with / run out of his cousin?
  - My passport runs out / gets over soon.
  - I switched on / got over the cooker.
  - Did he give away / take after any food?

### spotlight Separable phrasal verbs

With separable phrasal verbs, the object can go after the verb and particle (see 1 below) or between the verb and the particle (2), but a pronoun **must** go in the middle (3).

- He gave away **the bike**. ✓
- He gave **the bike** away. ✓
- He gave **it** away. ✓ (NOT He gave away **it**.)

### 3 Complete the sentences.

- He didn't want his bike, so he gave it away.
- The price went \_\_\_\_\_ from €5 to €6.
  - You can't smoke in here – you'll have to put that cigarette \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Let's watch TV. Will you switch it \_\_\_\_\_?
  - She was disappointed not to get the job, but she'll get \_\_\_\_\_ it.
  - She gets \_\_\_\_\_ well \_\_\_\_\_ my parents.
  - Oh no! We've run \_\_\_\_\_ rice.

### 4 Test yourself. Look at the meanings and cover the examples and verbs. What are the verbs?



## B In the classroom

STUDENT I can't work out number seven.

TEACHER OK. Leave it out and go on with the next one.

S I can't see the board, Miss.

T Well, put your glasses on.

T How are you getting on, Suki?

S Fine, thank you.

T Could you pick up those bits of paper and put them in the bin?

T I'll give out the dictionaries, but could you put them back when you've finished?

T If you get through the exercises today, we can go over them tomorrow in class.

### Glossary

**work sth out** find an answer to sth.

**leave sth out** not include sth. **SYN omit sth.**

**go on (with sth)** continue (with sth). **SYN carry on (with sth).**

**put sth on** begin wearing sth. **OPP take sth off.**

**get on** make progress with sth you are doing.

**pick sth up** take hold of sth and lift it to a higher place. **OPP put sth down.** (See spotlight.)

**give sth out** give one of sth to each person in a group. **SYN hand sth out.**

**put sth back** return sth to its place (see spotlight).

**get through sth** complete a task or activity.

**go over sth** examine and check sth carefully.

### spotlight Different meanings

Many phrasal verbs have more than one meaning.

**Pick sth** or **sb up** also means 'go and collect sth or sb':

*I have to **pick** the car **up** this morning.*

*Can you **pick** me **up** at 5.00?*

**Put sth back** also means 'move sth to a later time':

*We **put** the wedding **back** until the spring.*

### 5 Replace the underlined words with a phrasal verb with the same meaning.

- ▶ When are you going to collect the tickets? pick up
- 1 Do you want us to omit the next exercise? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Do you think we'll complete the book by the end of term? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I couldn't find an answer to the last question. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Do the exercise for homework and we'll check it on Thursday. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 I asked her about her course yesterday. She's not doing very well. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Let's finish this first, then we can continue with Exercise 9. \_\_\_\_\_

### 6 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ If you don't want to do it, you can leave it out.
- 1 Could you give \_\_\_\_\_ the books to the students, Claude?
- 2 I'd like to get \_\_\_\_\_ Unit 5 by Friday, then go \_\_\_\_\_ with Unit 6 on Monday.
- 3 I don't know why the dictionaries aren't there. I put them \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.
- 4 You had a job interview yesterday, didn't you? How did you get \_\_\_\_\_?
- 5 She took her boots \_\_\_\_\_ and left them on the steps.
- 6 I couldn't read it until I put my glasses \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 We're very busy this week, so I had to put the meeting \_\_\_\_\_ to next Monday.
- 8 The suitcase was very heavy; I had to keep picking it \_\_\_\_\_ and putting it \_\_\_\_\_.



## 76 I can use a range of adverbs

### A Other ways of saying very

Some adverbs are used with particular adjectives or verbs to mean *very*, *a lot*, or *to a large degree*.

Phrase	Meaning	Other examples
I was <b>bitterly disappointed</b> with my results.	very disappointed.	<b>bitterly cold</b>
He was <b>desperately unlucky</b> to lose his job.	very unlucky.	<b>desperately need</b>
Jack was <b>seriously injured</b> in the crash.	badly injured.	<b>seriously ill</b>
He was <b>terribly sorry</b> he couldn't come.	very sorry.	<b>terribly sad</b>
It's <b>vitaly important</b> we remember.	very important.	
It's <b>highly unlikely</b> that she'll be late.	very unlikely.	<b>highly intelligent</b>
He <b>feels strongly</b> that the war is wrong.	has a strong belief.	<b>strongly oppose</b>
Prices have <b>risen sharply</b> .	risen a lot.	<b>fall sharply</b>
This expression is <b>widely used</b> .	used a lot.	<b>travel widely</b>
I love Lucy, but she's <b>completely mad</b> .	<b>completely</b> is used to emphasize an adjective or verb. <b>syn totally</b> . <b>convinced</b> 100 per cent sure.	<b>completely bald</b>
I <b>completely forgot</b> about the party.		<b>completely ruined</b>
Her first book was <b>totally different</b> .		<b>totally sure</b>
I'm not <b>totally convinced</b> he's innocent.		

#### 1 Add a suitable adverb to each sentence. Show where it should go.

- It's / important to go. vitaly
- 1 They're intelligent boys. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 It's cold outside. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 That man is mad. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Paula's been ill. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Their profits have fallen. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 We need to earn more money. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 It was unnecessary to do that. \_\_\_\_\_

#### 2 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- They were all bitterly disappointed to lose the match.
- 1 The cost of coffee has \_\_\_\_\_ sharply since last year. It's almost double now.
- 2 The accident happened this morning, and several people were seriously \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 I'm terribly \_\_\_\_\_. I completely \_\_\_\_\_ to bring my homework.
- 4 He \_\_\_\_\_ widely when he was in South America.
- 5 We both \_\_\_\_\_ strongly that the government should change its policy.
- 6 I'm not totally \_\_\_\_\_ that he knows what he's doing with that camera.

#### 3 Replace very with a different adverb in each sentence.

- She's ~~very~~ sorry about the mistake. terribly
- 1 A good dictionary is very important. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 It's very unlikely that he'll come. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 We were very unlucky to lose the match. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 It used to be quiet but it's very different now. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 He was very disappointed he didn't win. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 That story of the missing girl is very sad. \_\_\_\_\_



## B Frequency and degree

- AXEL Do you and Mac still go to concerts together **regularly**?
- HARRY No, we **rarely** see each other these days. The last time was **roughly** a year ago.
- AXEL Oh. Why's that?
- HARRY Well, he lives in Watford now, which is miles away. That's **mainly** the reason.
- AXEL But you still go to concerts, don't you?
- HARRY No, **actually** I don't. I think I'm getting a bit old for rock concerts. **Generally** I just listen to music at home.
- AXEL Don't you miss the excitement of live concerts?
- HARRY That's **partly** why I don't go. I find the noise and hysteria **rather** annoying, actually.

### spotlight **rather, fairly, quite, pretty**

These words are all used to say that something is true to some extent. **Rather** and **pretty** INF are usually stronger, **quite** and **fairly** are usually weaker.

He's **fairly/quite** lazy.

The film was **pretty** good.

With positive words, **rather** suggests a positive opinion is unexpected.

It was a very cheap restaurant, but surprisingly the food was **rather** good.

### Glossary

- regularly** • happening quite often.
- rarely** • not happening often. SYN **seldom**.
- roughly** • about; not exactly. SYN **approximately**.
- mainly** • mostly. SYN **largely**.
- actually** • really (often used when you are saying the opposite of what sb expects). SYN **in (actual) fact**.
- generally** • usually; most of the time. SYN **on the whole**.
- partly** • to some degree but not completely. SYN **to some / a certain extent** (**To some extent** I agree. OR I agree **to a certain extent**).

### 4 Same or different? Write S or D.

- The town is largely industrial. | The town is mainly industrial. S
- 1 It's quite good. | It's fairly good. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Generally it's very quiet here. | On the whole it's very quiet here. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 The house is actually very nice. | The house is very nice at the moment. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 It's approximately ten kilometres. | It's roughly ten kilometres. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 We go there regularly. | We rarely go there. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 I partly agreed with him. | I agreed with him to some extent. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 The book was rather good. | The book was pretty good. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 They seldom work late. | They rarely work late. \_\_\_\_\_

### 5 Replace the underlined word with a different word or phrase with the same meaning.

- I go to the gym regularly. quite often
- 1 Generally I enjoyed the play. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 The students were largely Italian. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 There were roughly 30 at the party. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 We go there mainly for the skiing. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 It's a nice flat but it's pretty small. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 I wasn't sure about Leo at first, but in fact he's very nice. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 We seldom go out during the week. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 Your sister is quite tall, isn't she? \_\_\_\_\_

### 6 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings and synonyms?



## Review: Language

### Unit 68

#### 1 Circle the word or phrase that is different.

► as / since / due to

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 despite / because / in spite of                | 5 though / so / therefore              |
| 2 as a result / all the same / consequently      | 6 in addition / moreover / however     |
| 3 what's more / still / plus                     | 7 so / nevertheless / however          |
| 4 although / despite the fact that / furthermore | 8 provided that / whereas / as long as |

#### 2 Complete the texts with appropriate link words.

- 1 I stayed with a delightful family last summer when I was studying German in Heidelberg.  
 ► Despite the fact that my German was quite basic to start with, they helped me with conversation, and as a (1) \_\_\_\_\_, I made a lot of progress. And what's (2) \_\_\_\_\_, by the end of my stay I felt I had made new friends. I'll go back and stay with them next summer (3) \_\_\_\_\_ that they don't have other guests.
- 2 The first day of the holiday was a disaster. There was a huge storm and we couldn't leave the hotel (4) \_\_\_\_\_ to the bad weather. In (5) \_\_\_\_\_, there was no electricity in the evening (6) \_\_\_\_\_ the storm had brought down the power lines. (7) \_\_\_\_\_, the following morning the sun came out, and things started to improve.

### Unit 69

#### 1 Complete the table.

Definition	Word	Opposite
► working well and quickly, and without mistakes	efficient	inefficient
1 not done or seen or happening very often	r _____	_____
2 just good enough, but nothing more	a _____	_____
3 <i>typical of the past, but not now</i>	o _____	_____
4 connected with the town, not the country	u _____	_____
5 full of people	c _____	_____
6 made by people and used instead of something natural	a _____	natural or
7 behaving in a bad and offensive way	r _____	_____
8 feeling pleasure from what you have achieved	s _____	_____
9 quite hard	f _____	_____
10 successful and giving the result you want	e _____	_____

### Unit 70

#### 1 Tick (✓) the correct words. Be careful: one or both may be correct.

- We live on *the edge* ☒ *the rear* ☐ of the village.
- 1 The cat was sitting *underneath* ☐ *over* ☐ the chair.



- 2 We don't play cards very often *nowadays* ☐ *these days* ☐.
- 3 The man behind us coughed *during* ☐ *throughout* ☐ the film. It was so annoying.
- 4 We knocked on nearly every door, and *now and again* ☐ *eventually* ☐ found Lisa's house.
- 5 She jumped down from the window *beneath* ☐ *onto* ☐ the grass.
- 6 I go there *occasionally* ☐ *recently* ☐ to get some peace and quiet.
- 7 I could see her in the distance as she was running *beside* ☐ *towards* ☐ me.
- 8 We were working hard in the lesson. *Meanwhile* ☐ *In the meantime* ☐, Darren was sitting outside, chatting to his girlfriend.

## Unit 71

### 1 Complete the table with words from the box and their prepositions.

a hurry ✓ get rid involved ✓ capable insist general rely favour of  
take care purpose public approve depend a rush board

in	on	of
<i>in a hurry</i>		
<i>involved in</i>		

## Unit 72

### 1 Cross out the wrong word, and write the correct word at the end.

- We ~~outloaded~~ the car and put the shopping away. unloaded
- 1 Margo's behaviour is completely non-acceptable. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 His opinion is irrelevant; I'm going to leave anyway. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I think she's feeling a bit dissecure – let's look after her. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Could I have an unalcoholic drink, please? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 You can disfasten your seat belt now. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 My boss is very dishonest; I just don't trust him. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 I hate it when people are impatient. \_\_\_\_\_

## Unit 73

### 1 Complete the dialogues.

- Is it OK to put this jacket in the washing machine? ~ No, it isn't washable.
- 1 He judges situations well, doesn't he? ~ Yes, he has very good \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 Do you know what this word means? ~ No, I can't give you a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 How would you react if you saw a tiger? ~ I don't know what my \_\_\_\_\_ would be.
- 4 That's a woman with a lot of power. ~ Yes, she's extremely \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 This mobile comes in grey, silver, and black. ~ Any colour's OK for me; I don't have a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 That's cruel to animals. ~ Yes, I hate that kind of \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 Why are you building an \_\_\_\_\_? ~ We need a bigger kitchen.
- 8 Will this stuff do me any harm? ~ No, it's completely \_\_\_\_\_.



## Unit 74

## 1 Rewrite the sentences using verbs from the box and the correct construction.

deny ✓ accuse remind tend recall persuade pretend regret admit refuse blame

- She said she didn't take the ring. She denied taking the ring.
- 1 I don't remember meeting your parents. I don't \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 He wouldn't leave. He \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Carrie said she stole the necklace. Carrie \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 Mario said I took all the food. Mario \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 She's sorry she moved to London. She \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 When I see Boris I think of your brother. Boris \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 He said the mistake was my fault. He \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 I usually work in the evening. I \_\_\_\_\_.
- 9 Cal said he was a doctor, but he wasn't. Cal \_\_\_\_\_.
- 10 She gave me good reasons to leave. She \_\_\_\_\_.

## Unit 75

## 1 One word is missing in each sentence. Where from? Write it at the end.

- I'd like to try and / through this chapter today. get
- 1 My brother is very like my dad, but I take my mother. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 If you don't need the money, why don't you give it? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I don't get very well with my boss. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 If you can't answer one of the questions, just it out. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 He put his coat and ran out of the house. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 I can't work how to use this camera. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 Could you the TV on? I'd like to see the news. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 I've done my essay, but I need to go it again. \_\_\_\_\_

## Unit 76

## 1 Complete the sentences with a word from the box.

seriously widely sharply totally roughly highly ✓ rather rarely strongly

- He's got a PhD from Harvard; he's highly intelligent – and he's charming too.
- 1 Salaries have risen \_\_\_\_\_ in the last three years.
- 2 I feel very \_\_\_\_\_ about the need to improve public transport.
- 3 The garden is \_\_\_\_\_ thirty metres long.
- 4 I didn't enjoy the food very much, and the place was \_\_\_\_\_ expensive.
- 5 I'm always saying I'm going to do more exercise, but I \_\_\_\_\_ go to the gym.
- 6 This kind of tool was \_\_\_\_\_ used by farmers in the nineteenth century.
- 7 I fell off a wall and hurt myself, but I wasn't \_\_\_\_\_ injured.
- 8 I'm \_\_\_\_\_ convinced that better communication can change the world.

## 77 I can recognize informal English

### A Formal and informal English

Most words and expressions are **neutral**, and can be used in most situations. Occasionally we use formal language in spoken English, e.g. announcements (The play will **commence** in three minutes.), but more commonly in written English, e.g. business letters or official documents (Keep your receipt as proof of **purchase**). Informal language is very common in spoken English, especially in conversation. Certain types of language are often informal:

- many phrasal verbs, e.g. **turn sb/sth down**
- uses of **get**, e.g. Could you **get** me a pen?
- many **idioms**, e.g. **keep an eye on sth, out of the blue**
- many examples of **vague** language, e.g. thing(s), **stuff, sort of**.

#### Glossary

**neutral** not having any strong qualities (so in this context, neither formal nor informal).

**commence** FML begin.

**purchase** FML the act of buying sth. **purchase** v.

**turn sb/sth down** INF refuse an offer.

**get sth** INF go to a place and bring sth back. SYN **fetch sth**.

**idiom** an expression in which the meaning is different from the meanings of the individual words in it. **idiomatic** ADJ.

**keep an eye on sth** INF look after sth and make sure it is safe.

**out of the blue** INF suddenly and unexpectedly.

**vague** not clear or definite.

**sort of** INF not exactly, but partly (e.g. Are you busy? Yes, sort of.)

#### 1 Formal, informal, or neutral? Write F, I, or N.

- |                  |                         |
|------------------|-------------------------|
| ▶ get <u>I</u>   | 4 commence _____        |
| 1 sort of _____  | 5 vague _____           |
| 2 purchase _____ | 6 out of the blue _____ |
| 3 stuff _____    | 7 neutral _____         |

#### spotlight **stuff**

**Stuff** INF is used to refer to something without using its name. We usually use **stuff** to replace uncountable nouns or plural countable nouns. Do you need much of this **stuff**? (e.g. washing powder, soy sauce) Put that **stuff** over there. (e.g. books, papers, files)

#### 2 Replace the underlined word with a suitable word or phrase that has the same meaning in the context.

- ▶ I made him a good offer but he refused it. turned it down
- 1 Do you want me to get your coat for you? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 [announcement] The film will start in five minutes. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Where can I leave my clothes? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 [business letter] There is a discount if you buy a certain quantity. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Then my parents arrived unexpectedly. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Could you look after my suitcase for a minute while I get a coffee? \_\_\_\_\_

#### 3 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ My brother arrived out of the blue.
- 1 Do you understand? ~ Yes, sort \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 I don't know exactly where she lives, but I have a \_\_\_\_\_ idea.
- 3 Could you get some of that organic \_\_\_\_\_ the children like to drink?
- 4 'Keep an eye on something' is quite a common \_\_\_\_\_ in English.
- 5 I offered him a lot of money but he still \_\_\_\_\_ it down.
- 6 The walls are \_\_\_\_\_ of green, but it's not a strong colour; it's quite \_\_\_\_\_.



## B Common exchanges

A Hi. How's it going?

B Not bad. And you?

A Could you give me a hand?

B Yeah sure, no problem.

A What's up with Mark?

B I haven't a clue.

A What've you been up to lately?

B Nothing much.

A Take care. See you soon.

B Yeah. Cheers.

A Hang on. I'll be with you in a minute.

B OK, but hurry up.

### 4 Same or different? Write S or D.

- Yeah | Yes S
- 1 no problem | nothing much \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 cheers | goodbye \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 recently | lately \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 late | lately \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 I don't know | I haven't a clue \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 How's it going? | How are things? \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 What've you been up to? | What's up? \_\_\_\_\_

### 5 Put these words and expressions in more informal English.

- Hello. Hi
- 1 Yes. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Wait a moment. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 What's the matter? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 I don't know. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 How are you? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 What've you been doing? \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 Thank you. \_\_\_\_\_

### 6 Complete the dialogues.

- What's up? ~ Nothing. Why?
- 1 See you soon. ~ Yeah. Take \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 Hi. How's it \_\_\_\_\_? ~ Fine, thanks. And you?
- 3 Could you \_\_\_\_\_ me a hand? ~ Sure. No \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 We have to go. Hurry \_\_\_\_\_. ~ OK. Just \_\_\_\_\_ on a minute.
- 5 What've you been up \_\_\_\_\_? ~ Nothing much.

### 7 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

#### Glossary

<b>Hi</b>	• INF hello.
<b>How's it going?</b>	• INF = How are you? SYN <b>How are things?</b>
<b>give sb a hand</b>	• help sb. SYN <b>lend sb a hand.</b>
<b>yeah</b>	• INF yes.
<b>no problem</b>	• INF used to say that you are happy to do sth.
<b>What's up (with sb)?</b>	• INF = What's the matter (with sb)?
<b>I haven't a clue</b>	• INF = I don't know.
<b>What've you been up to?</b>	• INF = What've you been doing?
<b>lately</b>	• recently.
<b>nothing much</b>	• INF nothing of importance.
<b>take care</b>	• INF used when saying goodbye.
<b>hang on</b>	• INF wait a moment. SYN <b>hold on.</b>
<b>hurry up</b>	• INF move or do sth quickly.

#### spotlight **cheers**

We use **cheers** to express good wishes when we have an alcoholic drink. It is also used in informal situations to mean either 'thank you' or 'goodbye'.

## C An everyday conversation

A Do you **fancy** a drink?

B No, I'd **better be off** in a minute.

A Really? I thought you had **loads of** time.

B No, I've got to get to Mark's to **pick up** a tent!

A What for?

B It's for a **mate** of mine. He wants to take his **kids** camping this weekend.

A At this time of the year? **You're joking!**

B I'm not. He **reckons** the weather's going to be fine.

A That's **nonsense**. The forecast is awful.

B Oh well. If it's a **disaster**, they'll just have to come back home.



### Glossary

**fancy sth**

• INF want sth. SYN **feel like (doing) sth.**

**I'd better be off**

• INF I have to leave now.

**loads (of sth)**

• INF a lot of sth. SYN **masses (of sth)** INF.

**pick sth/sb up**

• go and collect sth/sb.

**What for?**

• INF Why are you doing sth? or What do you need sth for?

**mate**

• INF a friend.

**kid**

• INF a child.

**reckon**

• INF think.

**nonsense**

• ideas or statements that you think are stupid or not true. SYN **rubbish** INF.

**disaster**

• INF a complete failure.

### 8 Match 1–6 with a–g.

► disaster e

a child

1 mate     

b want

2 loads     

c a lot

3 rubbish     

d think

4 fancy     

e failure ✓

5 kid     

f nonsense

6 reckon     

g friend

### 9 Complete the dialogues with a single word.

► Do you fancy going out tonight? ~ Yes. Where shall we go?

1 Sam's going to get a snake. ~ What! You must be           .

2 What was the party like? ~ Terrible. An absolute           .

3 Are you going camping? ~ Yes, but I've got to buy a new           .

4 He said he had            of money. ~ Don't believe him. He talks           .

5 I'd            be off now. ~ Why? What time's your train?

6 I'm going to Sweden tomorrow. ~ Really? What           ?

7 Where's Leyla? ~ She's            up the kids from school.

8 Do you feel            going out? ~ Yes, good idea.

### spotlight *joke*

A **joke** is something said or done to make you laugh, especially a funny short story.

We use the expression **you're joking** or **you must be joking** to express surprise, when we don't believe what someone is saying.

### 10 Test yourself. Look at the glossary meanings and cover the words. What are the words?



## 78 I can write a formal letter

### Notes

If you are writing to a **stranger** or you don't know the person's name, use the phrases on the right.

If you know the person, use *Mr, Mrs, Miss, Ms, Dr*, etc. and their surname.

If you know them quite well, you can use their first name.

For an **informal** letter to a good friend or family member, use the first name.

Note: *Love (from)* is not normally used by a man writing to another man.

### Beginnings

**Dear Sir**  
**Dear Madam**  
**Dear Sir or Madam**

Dear Mr Wu  
Dear Miss Gilberto

Dear Rosa  
Dear Conrad

Dear Min Ho  
Hi, Pavel

### Endings

**Yours faithfully**  
*your name*

**Yours sincerely**

**(With) best wishes**  
**Kind regards**

**Love (from)**  
**All the best / Take care**

45 Muswell Rd  
London NW4

15 April 2008

Sunshine Holiday Cottages  
Fore St  
Truro

Dear Mr Ellison

**Further** to our telephone conversation of last Friday, I **enclose** a cheque for £50 as a **deposit** for the rental of Rainbow Cottage for one week, **commencing** 21 August. I **would be grateful if you could** send me **further** information about the property, **in particular, whether** there is parking **nearby**.

We are planning to bring our dog. If this is a problem, please **don't hesitate** to contact me.

I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours sincerely  
*Louise Robertson*

Louise Robertson

### Glossary

- stranger** • a person that you do not know.
- enclose sth** • put sth in an envelope or packet with sth else.
- deposit** • a sum of money which is your first payment for sth (you will pay the rest later). (You pay a **deposit on** or **for** sth.)
- commence** • FML begin.
- I would be grateful if you could ...** • used when you request sth. SYN I would appreciate it if you could ...
- in particular** • SYNS especially, particularly.
- whether** • if.
- nearby** • not far away. SYN close by.
- don't hesitate to do sth** • don't feel worried about doing sth.
- look forward to sth** • think with pleasure about sth that is going to happen.
- hearing from you** • receiving your letter.

### spotlight further, further to

**Further** ADJ has several meanings:

1) comparative of *far*: The station is **further** than the bank.

2) (only before a noun) more: Have you any **further** questions?

**Further to** ... FML is used in letters to mention a previous letter or conversation about the same subject:

**Further to** my letter of 5 July, I am happy to ...

**1** Cover the letter and answer these questions.

- ▶ Is Louise Robertson going to rent a cottage? Yes, she is.
- 1 Is this the first time she has contacted Mr Ellison? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Why is she sending him £50? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Will she be leaving or arriving on 21 August? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Are there any other things she needs to know? If so, what? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Whose address did she write on the right-hand side? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Whose address did she write on the left-hand side? \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 Did she write the date? If so, where? \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 Which beginning did she use? \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 Which ending did she use? \_\_\_\_\_
- 10 Could she end it 'Take care, Louise'? Why/Why not? \_\_\_\_\_

**2** Tick (✓) the sentences that are correct and add a cross (X) to the sentences that are wrong.

- ▶ If you're writing to a family member, you can end it with 'Love' and your signature. ✓
- 1 If you begin 'Dear Maria', you can end it with 'Kind regards'. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 If you begin your letter 'Dear Sir', you can end it with 'With best wishes'. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 If you don't know the name of the person you are writing to, you begin 'Dear Sir or Madam'. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 If you write 'All the best' at the end, you could also write 'Take care'. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 If you begin 'Dear Miss Periskic', you should end 'Yours faithfully'. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 'Yours faithfully' is a common ending when you are writing to a stranger. \_\_\_\_\_

**3** Which words are missing where the slashes (/) are? Write them at the end.

- ▶ Could you send me / details of the accommodation? further
- 1 I look forward / hearing / you. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 If there's a problem, please / hesitate / ring me. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I / a photocopy / my identity card with the application form. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 I would be / if you / phone me about the meeting. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Further / your letter / 7 April, I wish to confirm my booking. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 I would / it if / could help me. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 Please let me know / particular / there is a beach nearby. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 I enclose a cheque for €30 as a / for the rental of the room. \_\_\_\_\_

**4** Complete the letter.

40 Lincoln Rise, Churchfield, Yorkshire  
14 January 2008

Hot Property Rentals  
Barton St  
Weatherfield

▶ Dear Mrs Stephens  
(1) \_\_\_\_\_ to your letter of 12 January,  
I (2) \_\_\_\_\_ a cheque for £500 as a (3) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ on Flat 7, Walsingham Buildings.  
As we agreed, my rental contract will (4) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ on 1 February and run for one  
year. I would be (5) \_\_\_\_\_ if you could

send me a receipt for the amount enclosed.  
I would also (6) \_\_\_\_\_ it if you could let  
me know (7) \_\_\_\_\_ I will be able to park  
in the basement of the building. If not, will I be  
able to find parking (8) \_\_\_\_\_?  
If you need any (9) \_\_\_\_\_ information  
from me, please don't (10) \_\_\_\_\_ to call  
me.  
Yours (11) \_\_\_\_\_,  
Jurek Gorzy

**5** Test yourself. Look at the glossary meanings and cover the words. What are the words?



## 79 I can understand abbreviations and short forms

### A Numbers and measurements

<b>metric weight</b> 1 g / <b>gm</b> (gram) = 1000 <b>mg</b> (milligrams) 1000 g = 1 <b>kg</b> (kilo/kilogram) 1000 kg = 1 <b>t (tonne)</b>	<b>metric length</b> 1 <b>cm</b> (centimetre) = 10 <b>mm</b> (millimetres) 100 cm = 1 <b>m</b> (metre) 1000 m = 1 <b>km</b> (kilometre)
<b>metric capacity</b> 1 <b>cl</b> (centilitre) = 10 <b>ml</b> (millilitres) 100 cl = 1 <b>l</b> (litre)	<b>money</b> UK £1 ( <b>pound</b> ) = 100 <b>p (pence)</b> (a sum of money); <b>penny</b> PL <b>pennies</b> (coins) USA \$1 ( <b>dollar</b> ) = 100 <b>c/ct (cents)</b>
<b>speed</b> <b>metric:</b> 80 <b>kph</b> (kilometres per hour) = <b>non-metric:</b> 50 <b>mph</b> (miles per hour)	

#### 1 Write the correct abbreviation or symbol for each word.

- litre l
- |                    |                        |                              |                     |
|--------------------|------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1 metre _____      | 5 tonne _____          | 9 centimetre _____           | 13 gram _____       |
| 2 pence _____      | 6 miles per hour _____ | 10 milligram _____           | 14 millimetre _____ |
| 3 kilometre _____  | 7 centilitre _____     | 11 cents _____               | 15 pound _____      |
| 4 millilitre _____ | 8 kilogram _____       | 12 kilometres per hour _____ | 16 dollar _____     |

#### 2 Complete the sentences with an appropriate measurement or amount of money.

- For sale: 20 l petrol cans at reduced prices.
- In Italy you can do a maximum speed of 130 \_\_\_\_\_ on the motorway, or 81 \_\_\_\_\_.
  - You need a piece of card 20 \_\_\_\_\_ thick.
  - To make pasta for one, cook about 70–80 \_\_\_\_\_ of spaghetti.
  - The cheapest thing you can buy in the café is a coffee for 85 \_\_\_\_\_.

### B Shortened forms

The shortened forms in the table are used commonly in spoken English.

Short form	Full form / Meaning	Short form	Full form / Meaning
<b>ad, advert</b>	advertisement	<b>paper</b>	newspaper
<b>pub</b>	<b>public house</b> FML a place where you can buy and drink alcohol and meet friends.	<b>deli</b>	<b>delicatessen</b> a shop or part of a supermarket that sells special or unusual foreign food.
<b>flu</b>	<b>influenza</b> FML	<b>TV, telly</b> INF	<b>television</b>
<b>gym</b>	gymnasium	<b>board</b>	blackboard; notice board.
<b>lab</b> INF	<b>laboratory</b> a place used for scientific research, testing, etc.	<b>vet</b>	veterinary surgeon, a doctor for animals.
<b>pop (music)</b>	popular music	<b>bike</b> <b>motorbike</b>	bicycle or motorbicycle motorbicycle
<b>fridge</b>	refrigerator	<b>plane</b>	aeroplane

### 3 Write the short form of these words.

- television TV, telly      4 bicycle \_\_\_\_\_      8 newspaper \_\_\_\_\_  
 1 veterinary surgeon \_\_\_\_\_      5 gymnasium \_\_\_\_\_      9 public house \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 popular music \_\_\_\_\_      6 aeroplane \_\_\_\_\_      10 delicatessen \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 refrigerator \_\_\_\_\_      7 blackboard \_\_\_\_\_      11 laboratory \_\_\_\_\_

### 4 Complete the dialogues with shortened words from the table.

- Have you taken the cat to the vet yet? ~ Yes, I'm waiting for test results from the \_\_\_\_\_.  
 1 Could you buy some cheese from the \_\_\_\_\_? ~ I got some earlier – it's in the \_\_\_\_\_.  
 2 Are you still looking for a job? ~ Yes, I'm just looking at some \_\_\_\_\_ in the \_\_\_\_\_.  
 3 Do you fancy a drink at the \_\_\_\_\_ tonight? ~ Well, I was planning to watch the \_\_\_\_\_.  
 4 How are you? ~ I feel awful; I think I've got \_\_\_\_\_.

## C Abbreviations

The abbreviations marked \* are pronounced like words, e.g. **AIDS** is pronounced 'aids'. Other abbreviations are pronounced as individual letters, e.g. **BBC** is pronounced 'b-b-c'. It **stands for** British Broadcasting Corporation.



<b>NATO*</b>	North Atlantic Treaty Organization	<b>UFO<sup>1</sup></b>	unidentified flying object
<b>AIDS*</b>	acquired immune deficiency syndrome (often called 'SIDA' in other languages)	<b>PIN*</b>	personal identification number (you use this with a credit card, for instance)
<b>UEFA*</b>	Union of European Football Association	<b>VAT</b>	value added tax (a tax added to goods and services)
<b>ATM</b>	automatic teller machine (a cash machine)	<b>ISP</b>	internet service provider, e.g. AOL
<b>EU</b>	the European Union	<b>DVD<sup>2</sup></b>	digital versatile disc
<b>UN</b>	the United Nations	<b>IT</b>	information technology
<b>CV</b>	<b>curriculum vitae</b> (a formal list of your education or work experience that you need when you apply for a job)	<b>ID card</b>	<b>identity card</b> (a card with your name and photo which is proof of who you are)










### 5 Complete the abbreviations.

- NATO is a European and North American organization.  
 1 If you use an AT\_\_\_\_, you'll need your \_\_\_\_IN.      7 Millions are suffering from \_\_\_\_IDS in Africa.  
 2 If you apply for a job, send in a C\_\_\_\_.      8 We watched a DV\_\_\_\_ about UF\_\_\_\_s last night.  
 3 I showed my I\_\_\_\_ card to the police.      9 There are over 25 countries in the \_\_\_\_U.  
 4 You have to pay VA\_\_\_\_ on those goods.      10 The \_\_\_\_N is an international organization.  
 5 Who won the U\_\_\_\_A Cup last year?      11 An \_\_\_\_ SP provides access to the internet and email.  
 6 He's good with computers: he's in I\_\_\_\_.

### 6 Test yourself. Cover the full forms and meanings in the tables in sections B and C, and look at the short forms and abbreviations. What are the full forms?



## 80 I can understand American English

US English	British English		US English	British English	
<b>candy</b>	<b>sweets</b>		<b>elevator</b>	lift	
<b>cellphone</b>	mobile (phone)		<b>faucet</b>	tap	
<b>closet</b>	cupboard		<b>French fries</b>	chips	
<b>cookies</b>	biscuits		<b>truck</b>	lorry	
			<b>billfold</b>	wallet	

US English	British English	Meaning
<b>apartment</b>	flat	a set of rooms that is used as a home ( <b>apartment</b> is sometimes used in British English for a smart holiday flat).
<b>attorney</b>	lawyer or <b>barrister</b>	a lawyer, especially one who represents people in court ( <b>barrister</b> in British English).
<b>datebook</b>	<b>diary</b>	a book in which you write what you have to do in the future.
<b>drugstore</b>	chemist	a shop that sells medicines and other goods.
<b>garbage/trash</b> <b>garbage/trash can</b>	rubbish <b>dustbin</b>	waste food, paper, etc. that you throw away. a container outside your home, in which you put the waste.
<b>gasoline/gas</b>	<b>petrol</b>	fuel used in a car (e.g. <i>We stopped for more <b>gas</b> on the way.</i> ).
<b>high school</b>	secondary school	a school for children aged 14 to 18 (a British secondary school is for children aged 11 to 16 or 18).
<b>mall</b>	<b>shopping mall</b> / shopping centre	shops, cinemas, etc. in a large covered area.
<b>movie theater</b>	cinema	a place where you see a <b>movie</b> ( <b>film</b> in British English).
<b>purse</b>	handbag	a bag for money, keys, etc., used especially by women (in British English, a <b>purse</b> is mainly used for carrying coins).
<b>railroad</b>	railway	a system of trains and the tracks on which they run.
<b>round trip</b>	return (ticket)	a journey to a place and back.
<b>sidewalk</b>	pavement	the part of the road where people walk.
<b>store</b>	shop	a shop (large or small).
<b>subway</b>	underground	an underground railway system.
<b>vacation</b>	holiday	a period of time away from work or school, often spent travelling for pleasure.



- 1 Combine words from the box to form five more American English words.

free ✓ side cell date drug rail  
phone way ✓ walk store road book

- freeway \_\_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_\_  
1 \_\_\_\_\_ 4 \_\_\_\_\_  
2 \_\_\_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_\_\_

**spotlight** highway, freeway, expressway

The American English words **highway**, **freeway**, and **expressway** all refer to **main roads** (British English) used for travelling long distances. A **motorway** (British English) is sometimes called an **interstate (highway)** in American English.

- 2 Complete the missing letters.

- m o v i e \_\_\_\_\_ 3 c \_\_\_\_\_ s \_\_\_\_\_ t \_\_\_\_\_ 6 g \_\_\_\_\_ s \_\_\_\_\_ l \_\_\_\_\_ e \_\_\_\_\_  
1 g \_\_\_\_\_ b \_\_\_\_\_ g \_\_\_\_\_ 4 c \_\_\_\_\_ d y \_\_\_\_\_ 7 t r \_\_\_\_\_ p \_\_\_\_\_ t \_\_\_\_\_ t \_\_\_\_\_ n \_\_\_\_\_  
2 s \_\_\_\_\_ b \_\_\_\_\_ y \_\_\_\_\_ 5 a t \_\_\_\_\_ n \_\_\_\_\_ y \_\_\_\_\_ 8 b \_\_\_\_\_ l \_\_\_\_\_ l \_\_\_\_\_ d \_\_\_\_\_

- 3 Complete the American English words.

- What age do you start high school \_\_\_\_\_ in America?  
1 Put that stuff in the trash \_\_\_\_\_.  
2 We went to the movie \_\_\_\_\_ last night.  
3 You can buy these things at the drug \_\_\_\_\_.  
4 Do you want French \_\_\_\_\_ with your steak?  
5 I go on Tuesday and come back on Thursday, so I'll need a round \_\_\_\_\_.  
6 We drove over 200 miles on the interstate \_\_\_\_\_.

- 4 Replace the British English words with American English words.

- When does the shop open? store \_\_\_\_\_  
1 Where are you going for your holiday? \_\_\_\_\_  
2 It's upstairs, so we'll need to take the lift. \_\_\_\_\_  
3 Where shall I put this rubbish? \_\_\_\_\_  
4 She keeps the note in her handbag. \_\_\_\_\_  
5 I put the appointment in my diary. \_\_\_\_\_  
6 Do we have any more sweets? \_\_\_\_\_  
7 He drives a big lorry. \_\_\_\_\_  
8 Would you like another biscuit? \_\_\_\_\_  
9 Could you turn on the tap? \_\_\_\_\_  
10 We can't use the pavement here. \_\_\_\_\_

- 5 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 How often do you use the subway? \_\_\_\_\_  
2 How often do you use the railroad? \_\_\_\_\_  
3 How often do you go to a movie theater? \_\_\_\_\_  
4 What was the last movie you saw? \_\_\_\_\_  
5 How often do you eat French fries? \_\_\_\_\_  
6 Where did you go for your last vacation? \_\_\_\_\_  
7 When was the last time you went to a mall? \_\_\_\_\_  
8 When did you leave high school? \_\_\_\_\_

- 6 Test yourself. Cover the US and British English words and look at the pictures and meanings. Can you remember the words?



# Review: Styles of English

## Unit 77

### 1 Change the underlined words to make them informal.

- T Hello, Suki. Hi \_\_\_\_\_  
 S Hey, Tomas! How (1) are you? \_\_\_\_\_  
 T Oh, not bad. What've you been (2) doing lately? \_\_\_\_\_  
 S Oh, nothing (3) important. \_\_\_\_\_  
 T Listen, Suki, what's (4) the matter with Jodie? \_\_\_\_\_  
 S Well, she went for that job at NDC, but they (5) rejected her. \_\_\_\_\_  
 T (6) I don't believe you! \_\_\_\_\_  
 S No, it's true. She (7) thinks someone doesn't like her there. \_\_\_\_\_  
 T That's (8) nonsense. Everyone likes Jodie. \_\_\_\_\_  
 S I know. Anyway, there are (9) lots of other jobs around. \_\_\_\_\_  
 T (10) Yes, you're right. \_\_\_\_\_  
 S Sorry, Tomas, (11) I have to leave now. \_\_\_\_\_  
 T OK, see you later. (12) Bye! \_\_\_\_\_

### 2 Cross out the answer which is not correct.

- These are idiomatic: a) *out of the blue* b) *I haven't a clue* c) ~~neutral~~  
 1 These verbs are formal: a) *commence* b) *fancy* c) *purchase*  
 2 These mean 'go and bring something back': a) *get* b) *fetch* c) *reckon*  
 3 These can mean 'goodbye': a) *hang on* b) *cheers* c) *take care*  
 4 These mean 'wait': a) *hang on* b) *hold on* c) *hurry up*  
 5 These are used to express surprise: a) *Tell me a joke* b) *You're joking* c) *You must be joking*  
 6 These are examples of vague language: a) *stuff* b) *keep an eye on someone* c) *sort of*

## Unit 78

### 1 Circle the correct word.

- Dear/Hi Mr Bruzzzone  
 1 Dear Mr/Sir or Mrs/Madam  
 2 Kind regard/regards  
 3 Your/Yours faithfully  
 4 I'd like further/further to details.  
 5 I close/enclose a self-addressed envelope.  
 6 I'm not sure whether/weather it will be sunny.  
 7 I need some information, particular/in particular the size of the garage.  
 8 I look forward to hear/hearing from you.  
 9 Please hesitate/don't hesitate to contact me.  
 10 All the best/All best, Jamila



## 1 Complete the letter.

## Hot Property Rentals, Barton St, Weatherfield

25 March 2008

Dear Mr Buerk

(1) to your letter of 23 March, I am writing to confirm that I have received your cheque for £90 as a  
 (2) on Sunnybank Villa, Southstoke, for two weeks (3) 1 July.

You asked for (4) details about the cottage; it has four bedrooms, two bathrooms, a kitchen, a sitting room, and a small garden. You have parking (5), about 30 m from the front door.

I would be (6) if you could let me know a few days before your visit (7) you will be using all four bedrooms so that I can let the cleaner know. I would also (8) it if you could send me the balance of £345 at least four weeks before your arrival.

Please don't (9) to contact me if you have any (10) questions. I look (11) to seeing you at Sunnybank Villa in July.

Yours (12),

Judy Kelveton

Judy Kelveton

## Unit 79

## 1 What do these abbreviations stand for?

EU = European Union

1 ID =

2 UN = United

3 PIN = personal

4 VAT = value

5 CV = curriculum

6 ISP = internet

7 IT =

## 2 Can you shorten these words? If 'Yes', what is the short form?

delicatessen Yes (deli)

supermarket No

1 refrigerator

2 wardrobe

3 veterinary surgeon

4 washing machine

5 advertisement

6 influenza

7 laboratory

8 receptionist

9 gymnasium

10 scientific

## Unit 80

## 1 Complete the table with nine more pairs of British and American English words from the box.

sweets ✓ sidewalk  
 garbage drugstore  
 biscuit candy ✓  
 lift diary  
 truck rubbish  
 pavement cookie  
 chemist gasoline  
 elevator datebook  
 lorry closet  
 petrol faucet  
 tap wardrobe

British English	American English
sweets	candy



# Vocabulary building

All the words in **bold** are in the units.

## 1 Verbs and nouns

Verb	Noun
<b>avoid</b>	avoidance
<b>approve</b>	approval
<b>breathe</b>	breathing
<b>celebrate</b>	celebration
<b>communicate</b>	communication
<b>consider</b>	consideration
<b>contain</b>	container
<b>criticize</b>	criticism
<b>decorate</b>	decoration
<b>disapprove</b>	disapproval
<b>divide</b>	division
<b>evaluate</b>	evaluation
<b>exhibit</b>	<b>exhibition</b>
<b>govern</b>	<b>government</b> /governor
<b>interrupt</b>	interruption
<b>investigate</b>	investigation
<b>involve</b>	involvement
<b>kill</b>	killing
propose	<b>proposal</b>
<b>recognize</b>	recognition
refer	<b>reference</b>
<b>remove</b>	removal
<b>require</b>	requirement
<b>shoot</b>	shot
<b>trade</b>	trade, trading



Test yourself

## 2 Adjectives and verbs

Adjective	Verb
<b>amusing/amused</b>	amuse
<b>amazing/amazed</b>	amaze
<b>complicated</b>	complicate
<b>concerned</b>	concern
<b>cracked</b>	crack
<b>delighted</b>	delight
<b>depressed/ depressing</b>	depress
devoted	<b>devote</b>
<b>frightening/ frightened</b>	frighten
<b>irritating/irritated</b>	irritate
repeated	<b>repeat</b>

## 3 Adjectives and nouns

Adjective	Noun
accidental	<b>accident</b>
allied	<b>ally</b>
<b>anxious</b>	anxiety
artistic	<b>artist</b>
<b>basic</b>	basis
<b>determined</b>	determination
<b>disgusting</b>	disgust
<b>electrical</b>	<b>electrician</b> /electricity
mysterious	<b>mystery</b>
<b>national</b>	nation
<b>proud</b>	pride
regional	<b>region</b>
sexual	<b>sex</b>
<b>suspicious</b>	suspicion
<b>sympathetic</b>	sympathy
<b>thick</b>	thickness
<b>traditional</b>	tradition
valuable	<b>value</b>
<b>wealthy</b>	wealth
<b>willing</b>	willingness

## 4 Nouns, verbs, and adjectives

Noun	Verb	Adjective
<b>contrast</b>	contrast	contrasting
embarrassment	embarrass	<b>embarrassing</b>
entertainment	entertain	<b>entertaining</b>
disappointment	disappoint	<b>disappointed</b>
imagination	<b>imagine</b>	imaginary
<b>infection</b>	infect	<b>infectious</b> /infected
impression	impress	<b>impressive</b>
preparation	<b>prepare</b>	<b>prepared</b>
relation	relate	<b>related</b>
sailing, sailor	sail	<b>sailing</b>
separation	separate	<b>separate</b>
swelling	swell	<b>swollen</b>
variation	<b>vary</b>	varied

# Answer key

## Unit 1

- |                            |                |
|----------------------------|----------------|
| 1 1 gist                   | 4 foreign      |
| 2 identify                 | 5 context      |
| 3 construct                | 6 translate    |
| 2 1 guess                  | 4 foreigners   |
| 2 gist                     | 5 go           |
| 3 recognize/know           | 6 note, record |
| 3 1 repetition             | 4 revision     |
| 2 pronunciation            | 5 chat         |
| 3 explanation              |                |
| 4 1 study it again         |                |
| 2 successful               |                |
| 3 try something            |                |
| 4 make                     |                |
| 5 a way of doing something |                |
| 6 an informal              |                |
| 5 1 discussion             | 4 works        |
| 2 opportunity              | 5 chance       |
| 3 chat                     |                |

## Unit 2

- |                       |                     |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| 1 1 encouragement     | 4 frustrating       |
| 2 improving           | 5 motivation        |
| 3 accurately          | 6 enthusiastic      |
| 2 1 getting better    | 5 accurately        |
| 2 while               | 6 is aware of       |
| 3 progress            | 7 express           |
| 4 obvious             | 8 frustrating       |
| 4 1 fluently          | 4 expanded          |
| 2 everyday            | 5 appropriate/right |
| 3 relevant            | 6 aim               |
| 5 1 detail            | 5 expanding         |
| 2 inappropriate       | 6 specialized       |
| 3 complicated/complex | 7 includes          |
| 4 contain             | 8 range             |
- 6 *Answers from a Polish person*  
I'm learning English at the moment. My **goal** is to speak it **fluently**. I want to **expand** my vocabulary and be able to speak **on** a **wide range** of topics. I would like to learn **complex** structures and **specialized** vocabulary **relevant to** my job.

## Unit 3

- 1 1 S 2 D 3 S 4 D 5 D 6 S 7 S 8 S
- |                           |                     |
|---------------------------|---------------------|
| 2 1 instance              | 5 symbols, syllable |
| 2 selection               | 6 idiom, entry      |
| 3 build, provide, related | 7 collocation       |
| 4 offending               | 8 stress            |

- |  |
|--|
| 3 1 error, do sth wrong, fault   |
| 2 two  |
| 3 informal   |
| 4 <i>no, it's informal</i>   |
| 5 / gaɪ /  |
| 6 a) <i>correct</i>  |
| b) <i>not correct (it should be 'My dad earns a lot of money in his job.')</i> |

## Unit 4

- |                                      |                    |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------|
| 1 1 full stop                        | 5 question mark    |
| 2 colon                              | 6 exclamation mark |
| 3 hyphen                             | 7 semicolon        |
| 4 brackets                           | 8 apostrophe       |
| 2 1 comma                            |                    |
| 2 question mark                      |                    |
| 3 exclamation mark                   |                    |
| 4 apostrophe                         |                    |
| 5 semicolon                          |                    |
| 6 brackets                           |                    |
| 7 hyphen, dash                       |                    |
| 8 quotation marks, apostrophe, comma |                    |
| 4 1 list                             | 7 such             |
| 2 instead                            | 8 leave            |
| 3 connect/join                       | 9 separate/divide  |
| 4 details                            | 10 interrupt       |
| 5 pause                              | 11 connect/join    |
| 6 abbreviation                       | 12 alternative     |
- 5 'Comma' and 'full stop' are both punctuation marks.  
'p.m.' is an abbreviation.  
'Omit' and 'leave out' mean the same thing.  
'Join' and 'connect' mean the same thing.  
'Information' and 'details' mean the same thing.  
'Separate' and 'divide' mean the same thing.
- 6 1 'She' needs a capital letter (not a small letter).  
2 A comma is missing after 'tall'.  
3 A slash is missing between 'in' and 'on'.  
4 A colon is missing after 'choices'.  
5 A comma is missing after 'arrived'.  
6 An apostrophe is missing after 'boyfriend' and before 's'.  
7 Commas are missing before and after 'fortunately'.

**Unit 5**

- 1 1 eyebrows 5 stubble  
2 fattish 6 clean-shaven  
3 scar 7 in good shape  
4 broad shoulders
- 2 1 D 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 D 7 S 8 S 9 D
- 3 1 shape 5 built  
2 bald 6 skinny  
3 clean 7 skinned  
4 shoulders 8 scar
- 4 *Answers from an Italian person*  
1 My mother.  
2 My father.  
3 My cousin.  
4 My brother.  
5 My sister.  
6 My aunt.  
7 My whole family is dark-skinned.  
8 My boyfriend has a scar on his neck.
- 6 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 F 5 T 6 F 7 F 8 T
- 7 1 hair, appearance 4 smooth, rough  
2 tell, expecting 5 slim/slender  
3 wrinkles 6 tell, tan

**Unit 6**

- 1 1 N 2 N 3 P 4 P 5 P 6 B 7 N 8 B
- 2 1 energy 5 energetic  
2 responsible 6 aggressive  
3 generous 7 patient  
4 cheerful 8 tolerant
- 3 1 f 2 a 3 g 4 h 5 e 6 b 7 i 8 d
- 4 honest dishonest  
responsible irresponsible  
lazy hard-working  
generous mean  
ambitious unambitious  
self-confident insecure  
honest honesty  
tolerant tolerance  
aggressive aggression  
arrogant arrogance  
generous generosity  
patient patience
- 5 1 crazy 5 self-confident  
2 easy-going 6 hard-working  
3 sense of humour 7 responsible  
4 modest 8 energy
- 6 *Answers from a German person*  
1 Yes, I am a very ambitious person. I like to do well in most things that I try.  
2 I am a hard-working person but I also enjoy letting my hair down.  
3 I'm not an intolerant person but I don't like people imposing things on me.

- 4 I get impatient when passport control only has one lane open at the airport.  
5 I'm a self-confident, easy-going person with a good sense of humour.  
6 I think honesty and tolerance are the most important qualities.

**Unit 7**

- 1 1 anxious 5 heartbroken  
2 furious 6 fed up  
3 astonished 7 scared stiff  
4 thrilled 8 kiss/kissed
- 2 1 delighted 4 amazed  
2 miserable 5 jealous  
3 terrified
- 3 *Answers from a Colombian person*  
1 I'd be amazed as I don't usually study for exams!  
2 I'd be delighted for him; after all, he is my best friend.  
3 I'd be miserable, but everything has to end some time, so I would be fine after a while.  
4 I'd be furious and would probably react violently.  
5 I'd be envious of my friends who could go out.  
6 I'd be heartbroken and would get another girlfriend.  
7 I'd be anxious as it is always hard to speak in front of people.  
8 I'd be proud that I actually got into the plane in the first place.
- 5 1 hide 4 moody  
2 sympathetic 5 insensitive  
3 sensitive 6 emotions
- 6 1 mood 4 sympathetic  
2 upset 5 in  
3 supportive 6 hurt

**Unit 8**

- 1 a close friend, get on well with someone, make friends, keep in touch, depend on someone
- 2 1 reliable 4 disloyal  
2 depend on 5 friendship  
3 antisocial 6 close
- 3 1 He's friendly with Ruben.  
2 She never keeps in touch. / She doesn't keep in touch.  
3 I don't get on with my father.  
4 I made friends with her at university. / We made friends at university.  
5 I can rely on my boss.  
6 Donna's an old friend.



- 5 1 in  
2 out  
3 get
- 6 1 argue, row  
2 know, common
- 7 1 another  
2 common  
3 relationship  
4 wrong  
5 argument/row
- 4 in  
5 went  
6 get
- 3 split, regrets  
4 realize, go out
- 6 split  
7 go  
8 regretted  
9 realized

**Unit 9**

- 1 1 an only child  
2 half-sister  
3 foster parents  
4 stepfather
- 5 get divorced  
6 adopt a child  
7 single parent  
8 bring somebody up
- 2 1 S 2 D 3 S 4 D 5 D 6 D
- 3 1 brought  
2 only  
3 half
- 4 single  
5 divorced

**4 Answers from a Spanish person**

- 1 I was brought up in Salamanca, in Spain.  
2 I've got a younger sister.  
3 No, I don't have any half-brothers or -sisters.  
4 One of my friends is a single parent.  
5 One of my colleagues has recently got divorced.

- 5 1 ancestors  
2 looks like  
3 emigrated
- 4 relations  
5 originally  
6 member

- 6 1 related  
2 royal, queen  
3 previous
- 4 member, like  
5 after

**7 Answers from a Japanese person**

- 1 No, I'm not related to anyone famous.  
2 Yes, we have a royal family. The current monarch is Emperor Akihito.  
3 Previous generations of my family have lived in Kyoto and Osaka in Japan.  
4 I'm often told that I look like my grandmother.  
5 I take after my dad. We're both good with our hands.

**Unit 10**

- 1 1 anniversary  
2 I've chosen it  
3 traditional  
4 civil  
5 bridesmaid  
6 celebrate correct  
7 wedding
- 8 honeymoon correct  
9 speech  
10 guest  
11 ceremony  
12 reception  
13 religion

- 2 1 groom  
2 bridesmaid  
3 chosen  
4 guests
- 5 after  
6 best man  
7 reception  
8 husband and wife
- 3 1 go on your honeymoon  
2 drink a toast  
3 wish someone a happy marriage  
4 make a speech  
5 bride and groom  
6 celebrate your anniversary  
7 a religious ceremony  
8 the best man  
9 a wedding reception

- 4 1 choose, civil  
2 best  
3 bridesmaids  
4 rings  
5 reception
- 6 guests  
7 traditional, make  
8 toast  
9 couple, honeymoon  
10 celebrate

**5 Answers from a Norwegian person**

- 1 Yes, you can choose either.  
2 Yes, he does, and the bride has a best woman.  
3 Sometimes younger family members act as bridesmaids.  
4 Yes, they do.  
5 Yes. The wedding traditionally takes place in the late afternoon, and there's often a sit-down meal after that.  
6 It could be any number.  
7 Yes, very much so. The best man, best woman, bridegroom, bride's father, and sometimes the bride all make speeches. After that, anyone else who wants to speak can do so, and some guests write a song which is performed by all the guests for the couple.  
8 Yes, they do.  
9 Yes, normally the day after.  
10 Yes, they do.

- 7 1 widower  
2 gravestone  
3 funeral  
4 bury
- 5 inherit  
6 death  
7 cemetery  
8 coffin
- 8 1 died  
2 will, gravestone  
3 funeral, burial
- 4 buried, cremated  
5 widow, mourner  
6 grave, coffin
- 9 1 of  
2 in  
3 widow  
4 death
- 5 funeral  
6 buried  
7 will  
8 inherited

**Unit 11**

- |                  |                                 |
|------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1 1 space system | 5 star planet                   |
| 2 moon sun       | 6 planes rockets                |
| 3 planet star    | 7 earth universe / solar system |
| 4 sun moon       |                                 |
- 
- |                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| 2 1 space                      |  |
| 2 words                        |  |
| 3 roughly/approximately, reach |  |
| 4 fetched                      |  |
| 5 gained                       |  |
| 6 revolves/circles             |  |
| 7 knowledge                    |  |
| 8 satellite                    |  |
- 
- |             |               |
|-------------|---------------|
| 4 1 exist   | 4 carried out |
| 2 explore   | 5 discovered  |
| 3 invention | 6 analyse     |
- 
- |                |               |
|----------------|---------------|
| 5 1 scientists | 4 analysis    |
| 2 discovery    | 5 exploration |
| 3 confirmation | 6 existence   |
- 
- |              |             |
|--------------|-------------|
| 6 1 exists   | 4 carry     |
| 2 explore    | 5 invented  |
| 3 satellites | 6 confirmed |

**Unit 12**

- |             |             |
|-------------|-------------|
| 1 1 flood   | 6 narrow    |
| 2 high tide | 7 puddle    |
| 3 shallow   | 8 drown     |
| 4 float     | 9 waterfall |
| 5 surface   | 10 ocean    |
- 
- 2 1 c 2 d 3 h 4 g 5 b 6 e 7 f 8 a
- 3 1 N 2 Y 3 Y 4 Y 5 N 6 Y 7 N 8 Y 9 N 10 N
- 
- |                    |           |
|--------------------|-----------|
| 4 1 on the surface | 5 stream  |
| 2 lake             | 6 drowned |
| 3 capsized         | 7 shallow |
| 4 width            | 8 floods  |
- 
- |            |            |
|------------|------------|
| 5 1 burst  | 5 lake     |
| 2 caused   | 6 capsized |
| 3 deep     | 7 sink     |
| 4 floating | 8 drowned  |
- 
- |             |           |
|-------------|-----------|
| 6 1 horizon | 6 shore   |
| 2 rock      | 7 harbour |
| 3 beach     | 8 cave    |
| 4 cliff     | 9 coast   |
| 5 ship      | 10 bay    |
- 
- |            |         |
|------------|---------|
| 7 1 rough  | 4 sandy |
| 2 wave     | 5 steep |
| 3 protects | 6 on    |

**Unit 13**

- |                    |                         |
|--------------------|-------------------------|
| 1 1 a gale         | 4 It poured for an hour |
| 2 a frosty morning | 5 fog                   |
| 3 a muggy evening  | 6 I got soaked          |

- |             |            |
|-------------|------------|
| 2 1 soaking | 6 drops    |
| 2 rainbow   | 7 drizzled |
| 3 mild      | 8 heatwave |
| 4 bitterly  | 9 muggy    |
| 5 frost     |            |
- 
- |                 |               |
|-----------------|---------------|
| 4 1 predictable | 6 environment |
| 2 disappear     | 7 pollution   |
| 3 famine        | 8 liquid      |
| 4 harmful       | 9 disease     |
| 5 atmosphere    | 10 climate    |
- 
- 5 1 B 2 G 3 B 4 B 5 G 6 B 7 B 8 B
- 
- |                   |                |
|-------------------|----------------|
| 6 1 affect        | 5 melting      |
| 2 unpredictable   | 6 liquid       |
| 3 the environment | 7 disappearing |
| 4 human           | 8 atmosphere   |
- 
- |                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| 7 1 extreme, climate         |  |
| 2 liquid, solid              |  |
| 3 polluted, affects/affected |  |
| 4 predict, rise              |  |
| 5 global, disappearing       |  |
| 6 spread                     |  |
| 7 Pollution, harmful         |  |
| 8 famine                     |  |

**8 Answers from a Polish person**

- 1 I'm quite worried about global warming, *but what worries me most is the fact that scientists and politicians talk about this problem a lot, but nothing is being done about it.*
- 2 We don't have rainforests in Poland.
- 3 Summers have become warmer and winters are milder now. Also, summer starts earlier, almost right after winter, so sometimes it seems as if we haven't had spring.
- 4 The changing of natural habitats, the construction of roads and buildings, and the growth of industry are all harming the environment.
- 5 I think industrial pollution is probably *most common in Poland.*

**Unit 14**

- 1 volcanic eruption  
tidal wave  
surrounding land  
starve to death  
violent storm
- 
- |                 |                |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 2 1 destruction | 4 surroundings |
| 2 violence      | 5 damage       |
| 3 eruption      |                |
- 
- |   |
|---|
| 3 1 hurricane, destroyed, damaged, disaster |
| 2 drought, crops, starve                    |
| 3 erupted, ground, lava                     |
| 4 sudden, violent, typhoon                  |



- 5 1 strikes/hits 5 rescue  
2 collapse 6 supplies  
3 trapped 7 maintain  
4 evacuate 8 fear
- 6 1 collapsed 5 hit/strike  
2 crucial 6 death toll  
3 evacuated 7 considerable  
4 trapped 8 rescue/save

**Unit 15**

- 1 1 leopard 4 gorilla 7 snake  
2 elephant 5 whale 8 shark  
3 eagle 6 spider 9 monkey
- 2 ► eagle, bee, mosquito  
1 leopard, elephant, lion, tiger, camel, monkey  
2 fly, bee, mosquito 5 tiger  
3 gorilla, bear 6 leopard  
4 elephant 7 eagle
- 4 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 F
- 5 1 survival 4 poisonous  
2 expectancy 5 harmful, harmless  
3 weight
- 6 1 survive 3 hunt 5 up  
2 average 4 sting 6 vary
- 7 1 calf 5 rat 8 herd  
2 mice 6 frog 9 turkey  
3 goats 7 male 10 cattle  
4 donkey
- 8 1 horse 4 calf 7 donkey  
2 goat 5 frog 8 turkey  
3 bull 6 mouse

- 9 *Answers from an Italian person*  
1 In Italy, people eat horse, calf, turkey, donkey, cow, and frog.  
2 People keep horses for sport and hobbies. People keep goats for their milk. Not many people keep bulls. Donkeys are often kept in zoos. People use mice for animal testing.

**Unit 16**

- 1 1 papaya 3 thyme 5 stone  
2 spinach 4 sweetcorn
- 2 *In Britain*  
artichoke C, beetroot C, fennel R, chickpeas C, celery R, broccoli C
- 3 1 plum 3 apricot 5 avocado  
2 coconut 4 grapefruit

- 4 *Answers from a British person*  
papaya Yes, but not much  
coconut Yes, but not much  
raspberries Yes  
passion fruit Yes, but not much  
plums Yes  
basil Yes  
parsley Yes  
chick peas Yes, but not much  
asparagus Yes  
artichoke Yes, but not much  
sweetcorn Yes  
fennel Yes, but not much

- 6 1 calf 7 oyster  
2 lobster 8 liver  
3 rabbit 9 veal  
4 squid 10 sea bass  
5 kidney 11 mussels  
6 trout 12 salmon

- 7 *Answers from a German person*  
1 I think most Germans would like to eat a nice piece of veal.  
2 I think salmon is the most popular fish in Germany.  
3 I don't eat seafood, but I think it would be crab.  
4 I don't eat any seafood because I don't like the taste of it very much.  
5 I would never eat liver or kidney because I don't like to eat the insides of animals.  
6 Out of the five fish, the one I'm least likely to eat is carp.

**Unit 17**

- 1 1 B 2 B 3 G 4 B 5 B 6 G 7 G
- 2 1 on 4 of  
2 on 5 on  
3 up 6 of
- 3 1 plenty 4 diet  
2 exercise 5 waste  
3 cut 6 keep
- 5 1 peel 5 boil  
2 chop 6 fry  
3 add 7 bake  
4 mash 8 roast
- 6 1 recipe, ingredients 4 bake, oven  
2 add 5 flour  
3 pan, dish 6 stock, stir



## Unit 18

- 1 1 afford 5 bargain  
2 discount/reduction 6 change  
3 reduced 7 receipt  
4 sales 8 refund
- 2 1 bargain 3 change 5 refund  
2 scratch, off 4 sales
- 3 *Answers from a Japanese person*  
1 I don't always look for a bargain but I'm very happy when I find one.  
2 I would ask the shop assistant whether they have another one in stock.  
3 I check the number of notes, but I don't check the number of coins.  
4 I often wait for the sales. I usually buy my clothes then.  
5 I don't usually take things back or ask for a refund, but once the heel came off a pair of boots a few weeks after I had bought them, so I did take those back.
- 4 1 €1,000,000.  
2 €250,000.  
3 Six months.  
4 She didn't live there, and she sold it for less money.  
5 Over €5,000.  
6 Yes (to the credit card company).
- 5 1 It's a huge house.  
2 The house is valued at £2,000,000. / The value of the house is £2,000,000.  
3 Rani is broke.  
4 I don't own the flat.  
5 Her shoes cost a fortune.  
6 Gisela owes €5,000.
- 6 1 amount, well 3 worth 5 income  
2 broke 4 huge/massive

## Unit 19

- 1 1 fell asleep 4 go / get to sleep  
2 fast asleep 5 went off  
3 nightmare 6 overslept
- 2 1 wake 5 awake  
2 sleepy/tired 6 yawning  
3 set, overslept 7 pyjamas, snores  
4 lie-in
- 4 have a nap, sleep like a log, suffer from insomnia, have a restless night, a heavy sleeper, on my mind
- 5 1 nap, habit 5 mind  
2 like a log 6 disturbs, heavy  
3 suffer from 7 exhausted  
4 restless 8 lack

## Unit 20

- 1 1 infection 5 blood  
2 bandage 6 symptom  
3 thoroughly 7 temporarily  
4 wound 8 develop
- 2 1 burn 7 temporarily  
2 running 8 dressing  
3 covered 9 bandage  
4 prevent 10 thoroughly  
5 symptoms 11 healed  
6 wound 12 infection
- 4 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 T 7 F 8 T 9 F  
10 T
- 5 1 I **slipped** on the ice and fell over.  
2 I know he slipped, but did he fall **backwards** or forwards?  
3 He passed out, and when he came **round** he didn't know where he was.  
4 Nobody was killed, but three people were **injured** in the accident.  
5 She **banged** her head on the door and fell to the floor.  
6 My finger was **bleeding** so I put a dressing on it.

## Unit 21

- 1 steering wheel  
door handle  
windscreen wiper  
gear lever  
number plate  
wing mirror
- 2 1 O 2 I 3 I 4 O 5 I 6 I 7 O 8 I 9 O
- 3 1 brake 6 headlights  
2 clutch 7 mirror  
3 accelerator 8 windscreen wipers  
4 boot 9 horn  
5 bonnet
- 5 1 past 4 advice  
2 faster 5 direction  
3 backwards 6 instead
- 6 1 prepared 4 watch  
2 limit, close 5 keep  
3 skidded 6 rather
- 7 *Answers from a British person*  
1 I know these things, but it's useful to be reminded of them.  
2 Usually I do, but I accelerate quickly to overtake.  
3 No, not always. In supermarket car parks I go in forwards, then it's easier to put things in the boot.  
4 Yes. I'm afraid so – usually on motorways.  
5 I know what I'm supposed to do, but in an emergency I might panic and forget.



- 6 We don't have much snow or ice in the south of England, so I don't make preparations for bad weather.

## Unit 22

1 1 B 2 G 3 B 4 G 5 B 6 G 7 B

- 2 1 due 5 meant, held  
2 connecting 6 get  
3 trouble, delayed 7 pick  
4 cancelled 8 warning

### 3 Answers from a British person

- 1 Trains are often delayed, because of work to repair the track.  
2 I have never missed a train or a plane (but I've often missed the ferry to France).

- 4 get stuck, end up, rush hour, traffic jam, stop off, on the way, the wrong way, hire a car

- 5 1 trip 4 rent/hire  
2 traffic jam 5 nightmare  
3 overnight 6 via

- 6 1 hired/rented 3 stuck, heavy  
2 stop, way 4 trips

### 7 Answers from a British person

- 1 I hired a car in Germany when my boyfriend came to visit me so we could go to the coast.  
2 On really long journeys, I like to stop off somewhere to have a break, but mostly I prefer to get from A to B as quickly as possible, so long as it's not dangerous.  
3 I get stuck in traffic in Headington, on the outskirts of Oxford, every evening on my way home.  
4 I sometimes go on day trips to London or Bath.

- 8 1 ambulance 5 occur  
2 vehicle 6 block  
3 serious 7 avoid  
4 emergency 8 collide

- 9 1 injured 4 skidded  
2 vehicles 5 emergency services  
3 collided with 6 occurred

- 10 1 blocking 3 serious 5 broke down  
2 skidded 4 lane 6 injured

## Unit 23

- 1 1 underwear 6 necklace  
2 material 7 blouse  
3 sleeve 8 earrings  
4 tights 9 vest  
5 suede 10 button

2 1 T 2 T 3 T 4 F 5 T 6 F 7 F 8 F 9 T  
10 T

### 3 Underwear: vest, slip, bra

Jewellery: bracelet, ring, necklace, earrings

Material(s): cotton, leather, suede, silk

Clothes: skirt, waistcoat, cap, blouse

- 4 1 ring 5 leather, silk  
2 bracelet 6 neck  
3 belts 7 sleeves  
4 denim 8 material

### 5 Answers from a Polish person

► No, I don't think I've ever worn a cap.

1 Yes, I wear a ring on my middle finger.

2 I wear a bracelet on my right wrist.

3 I've got four leather belts.

4 I've got seven pairs of jeans but I rarely wear them.

5 All of my shoes, boots, handbags, and belts are made of leather. I've got a few silk scarves, pyjamas, and pillowcases.

6 Yes, I've got lots of V-neck sweaters, in various colours.

7 Yes, I often wear short sleeves.

8 My favourite material is linen.

- 7 1 matches 5 suits  
2 unfashionable 6 very good  
3 outfit 7 accessories  
4 latest, style 8 neutral

- 8 1 matching  
2 elegant/stylish/fashionable  
3 latest  
4 suit  
5 versatile  
6 transforms  
7 accessories  
8 outfit

## Unit 24

- 1 1 The dentist 6 The dentist  
2 The tooth 7 I  
3 I 8 I  
4 The dentist 9 The tooth  
5 I 10 I

- 2 1 look 4 filling/check-up  
2 surgery 5 painful, chew  
3 have 6 take

### 3 Answers from an Italian person

► I don't have a check-up very often – about once a year.

1 I don't look forward to going to the dentist because I find it very scary.

2 My dental surgery is in a very nice, modern building with lots of rooms.

3 I had toothache last month.

4 About two years ago.



- 5 It's not normally painful when I bite or chew my food.
- 6 I can't remember the last time a dentist took one of my teeth out.

- |            |            |
|------------|------------|
| 2 fixed    | 7 repaired |
| 3 decorate | 8 properly |
| 4 repair   | 9 leaking  |
| 5 cracked  | 10 remove  |

**Unit 25**

- |                |               |
|----------------|---------------|
| 1 1 consultant | 6 urgent      |
| 2 immediately  | 7 well enough |
| 3 recover      | 8 successful  |
| 4 patient      | 9 benefit     |
| 5 straightaway | 10 surgeon    |
- 2 1 patient
  - 2 specialist
  - 3 patient
  - 4 patient
- |           |         |
|-----------|---------|
| 5 surgeon | 6 nurse |
| 7 patient | 8 nurse |
- 3 1 consultant
  - 2 tests
  - 3 operation
  - 4 urgent
  - 5 straightaway
  - 6 into
- |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|
| 7 risks      | 8 successful |
| 9 enough     | 10 get over  |
| 11 take care |              |

**4 Answers from a German person**

- 1 Yes, I had my tonsils removed in 1997.
- 2 Yes, I visited my mum in hospital when she had an operation on her ankle a few years ago.
- 3 Nurses are there to take care of you and families are there to support you.
- 4 Yes, you can see a specialist straightaway in Germany if you want to. Waiting times are minimal.
- 5 No, you can go directly to a specialist.
- 6 It depends on the operation. If it's a minor operation, people go home.

**Unit 26**

- |               |             |
|---------------|-------------|
| 1 1 needle    | 5 a hammer  |
| 2 scissors    | 6 a drill   |
| 3 screwdriver | 7 Sellotape |
| 4 rope        | 8 screw     |
- 2 1 tools
  - 2 scissors, sew, cotton/thread
  - 3 stick, glue
  - 4 string
  - 5 screwdriver, tighten
  - 6 hole
  - 7 nail
  - 8 tied
- 4 These are possible
  - 1 fix, repair
  - 2 faulty, not working
  - 3 remove, replace
  - 4 lamp, light bulb
  - 5 is out of order, isn't working properly
  - 6 leaking, faulty
- |            |           |
|------------|-----------|
| 5 1 stains | 6 working |
|------------|-----------|

**Unit 27**

- |          |          |
|----------|----------|
| 1 1 dust | 3 grease |
| 2 muddy  | 4 vacuum |
- 2 1 Sweep
  - 2 vacuum cleaner
  - 3 up
  - 4 cloth
  - 5 Do
- |               |                |
|---------------|----------------|
| 6 mop, bucket | 7 Dust, polish |
| 8 wipe        | 9 sweep        |
| 10 Throw      |                |
- 3 Answers from a Colombian person
  - 1 I do the washing up and I clean my room. Every other week I have to clean the kitchen or the toilet.
  - 2 If I clean the toilets my housemates will clean the rest of the house.

**Unit 28**

- |             |            |
|-------------|------------|
| 1 1 fringe  | 5 parting  |
| 2 scissors  | 6 trim     |
| 3 hairstyle | 7 colour   |
| 4 hairdryer | 8 blow-dry |
- 2 1 Could you colour it for me, please?
  - 2 Sasha is letting her hair **grow**.
  - 3 I'd like a fringe and a parting **on** the right.
  - 4 I'd like a **cut** and blow-dry, please.
  - 5 I want to **keep** the same hairstyle, please.
  - 6 She's going to **have/get** her hair trimmed.
- 3 Answers from a Spanish person
  - 1 Yes, I'm letting my hair grow longer.
  - 2 I had my hair cut about two months ago.
  - 3 I don't have a fringe. I have a parting in the middle.
  - 4 I go to a different hairdresser's every time.
  - 5 My mum and my sister have their hair coloured.

**Unit 29**

- |            |              |
|------------|--------------|
| 1 1 filthy | 4 whistle    |
| 2 litter   | 5 graffiti   |
| 3 pavement | 6 depressing |
- 2 1 dirty
  - 2 quickly
  - 3 walk
  - 4 ground
- |          |                    |
|----------|--------------------|
| 5 floors | 6 money, food      |
| 7 lips   | 8 pictures/writing |
- 3 1 litter
  - 2 subway
  - 3 wonder
- |              |            |
|--------------|------------|
| 4 hurry/rush | 5 graffiti |
| 6 depressing |            |
- 5 1 S 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 S 7 S 8 D
  - 6 1 suburb
  - 2 surrounded, shame/pity



- 3 local/handy
- 4 handy/convenient
- 5 disadvantage/drawback
- 6 ideal

#### 7 Answers from a Japanese person

- 1 The area where I live is built-up. I'd like to live in the country where I could have a nice garden.
- 2 My home is surrounded by other houses.
- 3 There are a few convenience stores and a small supermarket in the area.
- 4 It's not handy at all! The nearest bus stop is 15 minutes' walk away and the nearest train station is a 15-minute bike ride away. Wherever you go, it takes quite a while.
- 5 One of the disadvantages of where I live is that there is no park nearby where children can play or where you can go for a walk.

### Unit 30

- |                |             |             |
|----------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1 1 impressive | 4 attic     | 7 currently |
| 2 cellar       | 5 basement  | 8 feature   |
| 3 separate     | 6 spacious  |             |
| 2 1 basement   | 3 hall      | 5 passage   |
| 2 corridor     | 4 drive     | 6 lawn      |
| 3 1 enormous   | 4 staircase |             |
| 2 store        | 5 leads     |             |
| 3 tiny         | 6 convert   |             |
| 4 1 detached   | 4 leads     | 7 huge      |
| 2 currently    | 5 cellar    | 8 wall      |
| 3 drive        | 6 store     | 9 convert   |
| 5 1 features   | 4 storage   |             |
| 2 chimney      | 5 bricks    |             |
| 3 original     | 6 roof      |             |

#### 6 Answers from a British person

- 1 We don't have shutters on our windows.
- 2 We do have a lawn. We sit out on it when the weather is warm.
- 3 Yes, there's a small room we use for storage and a children's bedroom.
- 4 We haven't got a basement or a cellar, but we have got a garage where we store our bikes and the dustbins.
- 5 There's a drive in front of the house.
- 6 Most of the rooms are quite spacious but the spare room is tiny.

### Unit 31

- |                         |                            |                |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|----------------|
| 1 1 boot                | 5 wooden                   | 9 gold         |
| 2 concrete              | 6 silver                   | 10 pipe        |
| 3 tyre                  | 7 wooden                   | 11 metal       |
| 4 woollen               | 8 plastic                  |                |
| 2 1 silver, gold        | 4 wood, metal              |                |
| 2 wood, plastic         | 5 plastic, wood, cardboard |                |
| 3 plastic, metal        | 6 iron, steel, concrete    |                |
| 4 1 pointed             | 6 circular                 | 11 square      |
| 2 L-shaped              | 7 round                    | 12 parallel    |
| 3 curved                | 8 circle                   | 13 diamond     |
| 4 rectangle             | 9 triangle                 | 14 star-shaped |
| 5 vertical              | 10 horizontal              |                |
| 5 1 oval                | 4 square                   | 7 curved       |
| 2 rectangular           | 5 triangular               | 8 straight     |
| 3 round                 | 6 pointed                  |                |
| 6 1 a rectangular table |                            |                |
| 2 a curved needle       |                            |                |
| 3 pointed shoes         |                            |                |
| 4 a triangular handbag  |                            |                |
| 5 an oval mirror        |                            |                |
| 6 a star-shaped box     |                            |                |

### Unit 32

- |                |                  |                  |
|----------------|------------------|------------------|
| 1 1 notice     | 5 glanced at     |                  |
| 2 see          | 6 can see        |                  |
| 3 look         | 7 overheard      |                  |
| 4 watch        | 8 hear           |                  |
| 2 1 catch      | 5 looked         |                  |
| 2 can, sounds  | 6 glanced/looked |                  |
| 3 staring      | 7 observant      |                  |
| 4 seem/appear  | 8 disappeared    |                  |
| 4 1 stinks     | 3 bland          | 5 touched        |
| 2 damp         | 4 like           | 6 rubbed         |
| 5 1 like, like | 4 touch          | 7 smell          |
| 2 tapping      | 5 tapped         | 8 flavour, taste |
| 3 Press        | 6 grabbed        |                  |

### Unit 33

- |                              |         |
|------------------------------|---------|
| 1 1 five                     |         |
| 2 the background             |         |
| 3 no                         |         |
| 4 yes                        |         |
| 5 yes                        |         |
| 6 a painting                 |         |
| 7 in the distance/background |         |
| 8 on the right-hand side     |         |
| 9 bright                     |         |
| 10 on the left-hand side     |         |
| 2 1 no                       | 4 dark  |
| 2 work                       | 5 see   |
| 3 feeling                    | 6 light |



- 3 1 You can see it in the distance.  
 2 He's lying in the bottom left-hand corner.  
 3 Is it on the right-hand side of the painting?  
 4 They're sitting in the centre of the drawing.  
 5 There are some trees in the top left-hand corner.

- 4 1 industrial 4 painting  
 2 illustrate 5 even  
 3 warmth 6 shade

5 *Answers from a Polish person*

- 1 Gabriela Trykler.  
 2 Yes, in 1995.  
 3 It's an abstract painting.  
 4 I like the many different ways I can interpret it, depending on my mood. I also like the colours.  
 5 No, I don't.

### Unit 34

- 1 1 Yes 5 Yes  
 2 No 6 No  
 3 Yes 7 No  
 4 Yes 8 Yes
- 2 1 drag 5 smashed  
 2 tore up 6 squeeze  
 3 folded 7 scratched  
 4 shake 8 sprayed
- 4 1 sneeze 7 burst into tears/cry  
 2 breath 8 shout  
 3 burst out laughing 9 out loud / aloud  
 4 breathe in 10 silent  
 5 whisper 11 tears  
 6 sigh 12 silence

5 *Answers from an Italian person*

- 1 Yesterday I heard my neighbours' baby screaming in the night because she was hungry.  
 2 I last burst out laughing when I went to a comedy show.  
 3 I last whispered to someone when I was visiting a museum.  
 4 I last read something out loud to my boyfriend. It was part of a review of a film.

### Unit 35

- 1 steal, commit, attack, offend, obey  
 2 1 S 2 S 3 D 4 D 5 S 6 S 7 S 8 D
- 3 1 violence 5 violent/serious  
 2 attacked 6 serious/violent, jail  
 3 stole 7 broken  
 4 Property 8 minor, against

5 *These words are wrong*

- 1 attacker  
 2 mug  
 3 breaking into  
 4 shoplifting  
 5 burglary
- 6 1 broke, stole, stabbed  
 2 deliberately  
 3 mugged/attacked, shoot/kill  
 4 murdering/killing, shot  
 5 thief/burglar  
 6 robbed

### Unit 36

- 1 1 report 7 suspect  
 2 Victims 8 arrest  
 3 investigate 9 evidence  
 4 fingerprints 10 charge  
 5 took place 11 court  
 6 may
- 2 1 The police 5 The suspect  
 2 The suspect 6 The victim or a witness  
 3 The police 7 The suspect  
 4 The victim 8 A witness / witnesses
- 4 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 F 5 T 6 T 7 F 8 T
- 5 1 tried 5 sentenced  
 2 prove 6 trial  
 3 prosecution 7 fined  
 4 defendant

### Unit 37

- 1 1 allergic 3 depressed  
 2 obese 4 diabetic
- 2 1 Diabetes 4 increased  
 2 allergy 5 dramatic  
 3 Diseases 6 heart
- 3 1 allergic 6 diabetic  
 2 obesity 7 breathe, lungs  
 3 attack 8 lead, diseases  
 4 depressed 9 decrease  
 5 suffer
- 4 1 memory loss 5 stroke  
 2 arthritic 6 heart disease  
 3 brain 7 disability  
 4 blind
- 5 1 T 2 F 3 T 4 T 5 F 6 F 7 F 8 T
- 6 1 arthritis 4 memory  
 2 deaf 5 cancer  
 3 sight 6 heart

**Unit 38**

1 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 F 5 T 6 F

- 2 1 elections 4 vote  
2 consists, parties 5 represent  
3 power 6 majority

3 *Answers from a Colombian person*

- 1 My country holds elections every four years.  
2 The Uribista party is in power at the moment.  
3 They have been in power for five years.  
4 The President of the Republic.  
5 There are more than 500 people in parliament.

- 4 1 public 4 start it  
2 important 5 coming  
3 deal with it 6 disagree

- 5 1 policy 5 aim/objective/goal  
2 campaign 6 Opposition  
3 persuade 7 focus  
4 immigrants 8 need

**Unit 39**

1 1 g 2 e 3 f 4 b 5 a 6 c

- 2 1 enemy 4 captured  
2 critical 5 twelve  
3 surrendered 6 explode

- 3 1 out 4 soldiers  
2 bomb 5 control  
3 battle 6 war

4 1 f 2 h 3 b 4 d 5 g 6 e 7 a

- 5 1 sides 6 unwilling  
2 ceasefire 7 involved  
3 leaders 8 compromise  
4 settlement 9 reach/negotiate  
5 determined 10 peace

**Unit 40**

- 1 1 f, release  
2 a, assassination  
3 e, establishment  
4 b, invasion  
5 d, attempt

- 2 1 assassinated 4 defeated  
2 established 5 attempt  
3 Revolution 6 independence, independent

**Unit 41**

1 whole, daily, entire, national, cultural

2 1 D 2 S 3 D 4 D 5 S 6 D

- 3 1 culture 4 whole, international  
2 press, journalist 5 declining  
3 published 6 daily

- 5 1 scare 5 claimed  
2 axed 6 pension  
3 clashed 7 threat  
4 demonstration

- 6 1 pledged 5 demonstrate/protest  
2 claims 6 clashed  
3 aid 7 threatened  
4 scare 8 promise

**Unit 42**

- 1 1 equivalent 5 award  
2 produce 6 achieve  
3 supporting role 7 winner  
4 individual 8 prize

2 1 F 2 F 3 T 4 F 5 T 6 F 7 T 8 F 9 T 10 T

- 3 1 winner 5 role  
2 achieve 6 award  
3 leading 7 equivalent  
4 produced 8 individual

5 1 P 2 N 3 P 4 N 5 N 6 P 7 N

- 6 1 indeed 4 extraordinary  
2 plot 5 suitable  
3 movie 6 performance

- 7 1 entertaining  
2 extraordinary performance  
3 disappointing indeed  
4 fan  
5 moving

8 *Answers from a Spanish person*

- 1 *The Bourne Ultimatum* is a really entertaining film.  
2 Nicole Kidman gave an extraordinary performance in *The Others*.  
3 I thought *Music and Lyrics* was very disappointing indeed.  
4 I'm a fan of Brad Pitt.  
5 *Life is Beautiful* was very moving.

**Unit 43**

1 1 D 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 S 6 D 7 D 8 S 9 D

- 2 1 styles 6 watercolours  
2 abstract 7 portrait/painting  
3 techniques 8 masterpiece  
4 oils 9 display  
5 vary 10 exhibitions



- 4 1 camera 5 a film  
2 lens 6 of film  
3 photographer 7 flash  
4 focus 8 album
- 5 1 She can develop films in her studio.  
2 I put the photo in the frame.  
3 Can I have two prints of this negative please?  
4 He focused on the girl in the foreground.  
5 Amateur photographers often buy automatic cameras.  
6 You can transfer the pictures to the computer.
- 6 *Answers from a British person*  
1 I'm interested in taking photographs of beautiful scenery and wildlife.  
2 I have a new Japanese digital camera.  
3 It has a digital screen and a very good 'zoom' feature.  
4 I find it hard to stop my hands shaking when I try to take photos at night without the flash.

#### Unit 44

- 1 1 violin/violinist  
2 organ/organist  
3 trumpet/trumpeter  
4 guitar/guitarist  
5 saxophone/saxophonist  
6 cello/cellist  
7 flute/flautist
- 2 1 orchestra 5 songwriter  
2 guitar, band, lead 6 player  
3 instrument 7 musicians  
4 composers 8 conductor
- 4 1 lyrics 5 living  
2 solo 6 melody  
3 live 7 appeals  
4 voice
- 5 1 influenced 5 solo  
2 release 6 albums  
3 recorded 7 appeals  
4 recording 8 admire
- 6 *Answers from a Japanese person*  
1 I like Marcus Miller very much.  
2 His music has been influenced by Jaco Pastorius.  
3 He records his own music but sometimes writes for other people.  
4 He often does live concerts. I have seen him play live in Osaka several times.  
5 The last album he released was called 'Free'.  
6 I like his music because he is a genius and the rhythms he plays are brilliant.

#### Unit 45

- 1 1 golfer 5 rugby player  
2 athlete 6 skier  
3 boxer 7 gymnast  
4 racing driver
- 2 1 captain  
2 referee  
3 support  
4 umpire  
5 supporters
- 3 1 referee 5 fans  
2 linesman 6 crowd  
3 flag 7 pitch  
4 commentator 8 manager
- 4 1 length 5 depth  
2 track 6 construction  
3 width 7 lap  
4 maximum
- 5 1 construct, stadium, capacity  
2 laps, Circuit, track, constructed  
3 Championship, worldwide, courts  
4 standard, pool, long, wide, minimum, depth, maximum

#### Unit 46

- 1 1 gymnastics 4 cycling  
2 weightlifting 5 athletics  
3 fencing 6 wrestling
- 2 1 took part 4 takes place  
2 take part, participate 5 race, medal  
3 record 6 hold
- 3 1 take 4 competitors, professionals  
2 compete 5 race  
3 record 6 medal, competition
- 5 1 achievement 5 brilliant  
2 criticize 6 favourite  
3 resistance 7 defeat sb  
4 praise
- 6 1 contest 4 favourite, sided  
2 overall 5 critical  
3 achievement 6 opponent, semi

#### Unit 47

- 1 1 Fiction: murder mystery, novel, sci-fi  
Non-fiction: autobiography, manual, reference book, encyclopedia, biography
- 2 1 encyclopedia 5 mystery  
2 poetry/poems 6 alphabet  
3 reference 7 autobiography  
4 pleasure 8 manual
- 4 1 attention 4 readable  
2 well known 5 paperback  
3 chapter 6 browsing



- 5 1 author 5 chapter  
2 attention 6 fascinating  
3 title 7 cover  
4 paperback 8 written

6 *Answers from a Polish person*

- 1 I like detective stories and biographies.  
2 I use lots of different dictionaries.  
3 I used to when I was younger and had more free time.  
4 No, not really.  
5 I have more paperbacks than hardbacks because they are cheaper, but also because many books only come out in paperback.

### Unit 48

- 1 1 illuminated 5 festival  
2 Carnival 6 fireworks  
3 approached 7 tons  
4 spectacular 8 blossom
- 2 1 c 2 b 3 h 4 d 5 i 6 f 7 a 8 g
- 3 1 participated 4 striking  
2 dress up 5 occasion  
3 illuminated 6 neighbourhood
- 4 1 festival, carnival 5 dressed up  
2 parade 6 occasions, fireworks  
3 entertainment 7 mean  
4 taken part 8 participate

5 *Answers from a German person*

- 1 The 'Oktoberfest' in Munich is a very important and popular festival. It was originally a harvest festival.  
2 No, they don't.  
3 Yes. There are lots of local bands playing and there's a fairground.  
4 No, I haven't taken part in a parade.  
5 Yes, at 'Fasching' in February, when I was small, my mum dressed me up as a mouse!  
6 Yes, on New Year's Eve.  
7 Not really, but I can understand why a lot of people like tradition.  
8 Yes, I'd like to participate in 'La Tomatina' because I think it would be a lot of fun throwing tomatoes at other people!

### Unit 49

- 1 1 invigilator 4 attitude  
2 success 5 follow  
3 succeed 6 disqualified
- 2 1 attitude 8 essential  
2 instructions 9 carefully  
3 invigilator 10 devotes  
4 cheating 11 planning  
5 disqualified 12 examiner  
6 item 13 relief  
7 paper

### Unit 50

- 1 The people are 4, 5, 6, and 9.
- 2 1 attend 6 widely  
2 seminars 7 academic  
3 lectures 8 assessment  
4 notes 9 graduate  
5 tutor
- 4 1 opportunity 5 manage  
2 on time 6 in time  
3 freedom 7 homesick  
4 revision
- 5 1 away 4 loans  
2 residence 5 scholarship  
3 tuition 6 chance

6 *Answers from an Italian person*

- 1 Students usually live at home, unless they go to university in another city.  
2 Some students live in halls of residence, but most of them live in shared flats or houses.  
3 Yes, they do have to pay tuition fees unless they receive a scholarship.  
4 Normally they don't have to take out loans because their parents help them.  
5 Yes, scholarships are available.  
6 It would be great to have the chance to study abroad.

### Unit 51

- 1 1 application, assessment, confirmation, acknowledgement, interview
- 2 1 They said they'd contact ~~to~~ me.  
2 Is she applying ~~for~~ a job?  
3 Have you got a work ~~permit~~?  
4 The company is based ~~in~~ Tokyo.  
5 He gave me some good ~~advice~~.  
6 She gave me ~~feedback~~ after the interview.  
7 I have to ~~confirm~~ it in writing.  
8 If you apply for a job, it's quite a long ~~process~~.
- 3 1 requested 4 require  
2 position 5 subject to  
3 attended
- 4 1 based 6 candidates  
2 acknowledge 7 vacancies  
3 confirmation 8 give  
4 contact 9 apply, application  
5 automatically 10 process
- 5 *Answers from a German person*
- 1 I've applied for the following jobs in the past: a paper-boy, a lighting technician in a nightclub, an optician, and an IT specialist.  
2 I think I've had more than twenty interviews in my life.



- 3 Yes, interviewers usually give feedback after an interview.
- 4 I've been the successful candidate five times.
- 5 My referees were my previous supervisors.
- 6 No, I've never had to get a work permit because I've always worked in the European Union.

### Unit 52

- 1 1 training 5 manufacturing  
2 military 6 management  
3 retail 7 finance  
4 engineering 8 recruitment
- 2 1 sector 5 qualifications  
2 management 6 profession  
3 experience 7 military  
4 training
- 3 *Answer from a Colombian person*  
I have some **management** experience. And I worked in retail when I was younger. I don't have experience in any of the other fields.
- 4 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 T 7 T
- 5 1 estate travel  
2 landing land  
3 ~~produces~~ products  
4 servant service  
5 exports imports  
6 ~~takes care for~~ takes care of / cares for  
7 ~~representants~~ representatives/ reps

### Unit 53

- 1 1 S 2 D 3 D 4 S 5 S 6 S 7 D 8 S 9 D
- 2 1 challenging 5 elsewhere  
2 department 6 unemployed  
3 prospects 7 sack/fire  
4 promoted 8 resign/quit
- 3 *Answers from a British person*  
1 My job is very challenging.  
2 In fact I've already transferred from another department.  
3 I have reasonable prospects in my job.  
4 I'm not thinking about promotion at the moment as my job is already challenging enough!  
5 No, I'm not bored, so I won't be looking elsewhere.  
6 No, I've never been unemployed.  
7 I would hate to have to sack someone.  
8 Yes, I would definitely resign if I started to hate my job.
- 4 1 I'd like to **make** an enquiry about the club.  
2 I talked to her **face-to-face**.  
3 It's very hard to deal **with** this situation.  
4 Who's **in** charge of this department?  
5 You have to **make** sure the door is locked.  
6 We're not responsible **for** the cleaning.

- 7 Do you know how to **solve** the problem?
- 8 I want to **make** a complaint about the service.

### Text A

- 1 duties 4 responsible
- 2 enquiries 5 sure
- 3 solutions

### Text B

- 6 involves 10 responsibility
- 7 public 11 deal
- 8 handling 12 complaints
- 9 clerical

### Unit 54

- 1 1 trade 5 overtime  
2 strike 6 takes, off  
3 bonus 7 stress  
4 working conditions
- 2 1 Is she a member of a trade **union**?  
2 Are we entitled to sick **pay**?  
3 I'd like to take a week **off**.  
4 Why don't you like shift **work**?  
5 I left on time today; I didn't do **overtime**.  
6 Why did the workers go on **strike**?
- 3 *Answers from a British person*  
1 Yes, it is very stressful.  
2 We get 25 days' holiday each year.  
3 No, we don't do shift work.  
4 Yes, I regularly work overtime.  
5 We sometimes get a small bonus if the year has been good financially.  
6 Yes, we are entitled to sick pay.  
7 Yes, we have a trade union, which we have a right to join.  
8 It is very rare for people at my place of work to go on strike.

### Unit 55

- 1 1 e 2 i 3 g 4 c 5 a 6 b 7 d 8 h
- 2 1 turnover 5 inflation  
2 flow 6 took out, loan  
3 rate 7 costs, loss  
4 tax profit 8 finance/start/operate
- 4 1 grew/rose significantly  
2 rose gradually  
3 fell slightly  
4 stable/unchanged  
5 *risen steadily*
- 5 1 sharply 5 by  
2 rise 6 fall/drop  
3 peak 7 fluctuated  
4 gone 8 stable/unchanged
- 6 1 rose slightly  
2 sharp rise/increase  
3 remained stable/unchanged  
4 fell slightly  
5 fell sharply

**Unit 56**

- 1 asset, goods, stock
- 2 1 up the business 4 quality  
2 of business 5 employer  
3 supplier 6 her on
- 3 1 research  
2 assets  
3 rivals  
4 employs  
5 optimistic/ambitious, estimates
- 4 1 takeover 4 leader  
2 reputation 5 survival  
3 break even 6 struggle
- 5 1 share 4 growth, market  
2 shares 5 taken  
3 brand 6 gained

**Unit 57**

- 1 1 1993.  
2 Because surfing was a seasonal business.  
3 b) it had to give protection  
c) it had to retain heat  
4 He did some research.  
5 He took out a bank loan.  
6 It's crucial to have a good relationship.  
7 Feedback from his customers.  
8 A good partnership with suppliers.
- 2 1 contract 5 innovate  
2 retain 6 diversify  
3 crucial 7 partnership  
4 feedback 8 potential
- 3 1 exploit  
2 Both answers are correct.  
3 potential  
4 adapt  
5 Both answers are correct.  
6 founded  
7 investment  
8 Both answers are correct.
- 4 1 gap 6 ahead  
2 case 7 contract  
3 producers/manufacturers 8 retain/keep  
4 research 9 factor  
5 invest 10 diversify

**Unit 58**

- 1 1 G 2 G 3 B 4 G 5 B 6 G
- 2 1 sector  
2 demand  
3 strengths  
4 threat  
5 resources

- 3 1 skills 4 reduce  
2 advertise 5 weaknesses  
3 demand/market
- 4 1 f 2 e 3 a 4 c 5 b
- 5 1 strategy 4 data/facts  
2 objective 5 realistic  
3 response 6 tip
- 6 1 ignored 4 target  
2 forecast 5 gathered  
3 assume

**Unit 59**

- 1 1 almost 5 think/believe  
2 probably 6 probably  
3 may 7 don't  
4 possible 8 bad
- 2 1 She's bound to pass.  
2 She'll probably pass. / She's likely to pass. / I expect she'll pass.  
3 She may/might pass.  
4 I doubt (if/that) she'll pass. / She's unlikely to pass.  
5 She'll definitely fail.
- 3 Answer from a Japanese person  
Next week, I'm **definitely** going to go to a salsa party on Sunday evening. It's a **good chance** for me to let off steam. However, the good dancers are **unlikely** to dance with someone like me who isn't very good, although I **expect** some of them will ask me to dance anyway. Otherwise I will be standing alone in the corner for hours and it will be a **disaster**! But maybe I'm too **pessimistic**.  
My friend and I **might** go out for a drink afterwards. There I'm **likely to ask her** advice about the boy I **fancy**, even though I **doubt** she has a good opinion of him.

**Unit 60**

- 1 1 in comparison 4 main  
2 apart from 5 compared  
3 alike 6 identical
- 2 1 similar 5 greedy  
2 Compared 6 alike, completely  
3 similarity 7 apart  
4 except 8 difference
- 3 Answer from a British person  
Oxford and Cambridge are **alike** in many ways. They both have famous universities, and many beautiful old buildings. Another **similarity** is that it takes about an hour to get to London on the train. However, **apart from the universities**, there is one **main difference**. **Compared with Cambridge**, Oxford is very cosmopolitan.

**Unit 61**

- 1 1 meant  
2 busy  
3 What  
4 free (to see you)  
5 put it off  
6 for example/for instance  
7 Are you able to come  
8 meet  
9 I'm afraid
- 2 1 Shall we **get** together for a meeting?  
2 I'll tell you **definitely** tomorrow.  
3 I could put the meeting **off** until Friday.  
4 I'm afraid **but** I'm tied up then. OR I'm **sorry** but I'm tied up then.  
5 A Let's meet at a restaurant, **say**?  
B No, what about the station **instead**?  
6 **As** an alternative, we could meet on Tuesday.

**Unit 62**

- 1 Like very much: mad about, crazy about, adore  
Like: fond of, keen on  
Dislike very much: detest, loathe, can't bear, not like at all
- 2 1 I'm fond of ...  
2 I **can't** stand ...  
3 I loathe **cooking** ...  
4 I'm mad **about** ...  
5 I can't **bear** ...  
6 I detest ...  
7 I adore **eating** ...  
8 I'm crazy about ...  
9 Recently, I've got **to** like ...  
10 I'd rather eat ... than ...
- 3 *Answers from a Polish person*  
1 chocolate cake  
2 cigarette smoke  
3 liver  
4 reading  
5 people who smoke in my presence  
6 waiting in departure lounges at airports  
7 white chocolate  
8 travelling to new places  
9 mussels  
10 fish, meat

**Unit 63**

- 1 1 What do you think of this idea?  
2 Personally, I think it's a good idea.  
3 I agree with it in principle.  
4 It seems to me we have no choice.  
5 If you ask me, it was a disaster.

- 2 1 It seems to me we should do something.  
2 How do you feel about that?  
3 In my opinion, we should help them.  
4 I'm to blame.  
5 I reckon it'll be a problem.

- 3 1 Apparently, fault 4 point  
2 concerned 5 principle/theory  
3 issues

- 4 1 sensible 4 support  
2 consider 5 believe  
3 reduce 6 proposal

- 5 1 against 5 silly  
2 reduce 6 favour  
3 opposed 7 dependent  
4 believe/think 8 mature

**Unit 64**

- 1 1 force ~~to~~ you 4 with  
2 to 5 to  
3 be 6 on
- 2 1 behaved 4 banned  
2 allowed 5 punishment  
3 *disobedient* 6 *behaviour*
- 3 1 obedient  
2 disobeyed  
3 strict  
4 force  
5 behave

**4 Answers from an Italian person**

► Yes, they were allowed to wear make-up.

1 Yes. I was a quiet and obedient child.

2 If you disobeyed the rules, you would have to stand outside the classroom.

3 The rules were not that strict.

4 The teachers didn't force me to do anything I didn't want to do.

5 I think children probably behaved much better then compared to nowadays.

- 5 1 S 2 D 3 S 4 D 5 D 6 S 7 S 8 S

- 6 1 let 6 compulsory/  
2 choice obligatory, choice  
3 allowed, forbidden 7 allowed/permitted  
4 up 8 option  
5 optional

**Unit 65**

- 1 1 D 2 S 3 D 4 D 5 S 6 S

- 2 1 making 6 wrong  
2 intend 7 fact  
3 hoping 8 smoothly  
4 expecting 9 forward  
5 intention

- 4 1 I doubt it. 5 I'm afraid so  
2 I'm afraid not. 6 I hope not  
3 I don't think so. 7 Definitely not



4 I guess so.

- 5 1 imagine so      5 assume so  
 2 think so      6 doubt it / don't think so  
 3 hope not      7 Definitely  
 4 afraid not      8 suppose so

### Unit 66

1 1 d 2 f 3 g 4 b 5 a 6 e

- 2 1 dissatisfied, complained  
 2 guarantee  
 3 point  
 4 back  
 5 writing  
 6 keep/stay, temper  
 7 expert  
 8 considered

#### 4 mention

- 5 1 fed      5 bother  
 2 bother      6 join  
 3 nuisance      7 bothered  
 4 spoilt/ruined      8 mentioned

#### 6 Answers from a German person

- 1 Yes, I'm fed up with the traffic in the morning when I drive to work; it's so busy.  
 2 Sometimes the small child living above us can be a bit loud and that gets on my nerves.  
 3 I don't tend to moan a lot; however, postal strikes are a real inconvenience to me and others.  
 4 Shopping in town on a Saturday can be a real nightmare, as it's so crowded.  
 5 I'm not particularly bothered about my level of English at the moment; however, I do try to improve constantly.

### Unit 67

- 1 1 Do you need any assistance?  
 2 Caution. If symptoms continue, seek medical help. OR Seek medical help if symptoms continue.  
 3 Beware of the dog; it bites.  
 4 Warning. Don't cross when the barrier is down.  
 5 In case of fire, leave the building immediately.  
 6 Ring the police in case of emergency. OR In case of emergency, ring the police.
- 2 1 swallows      5 warned, danger  
 2 Beware, case      6 careful, aircraft  
 3 Mind      7 assistance  
 4 out      8 premises

### Unit 68

- 1 1 as a result      5 plus  
 2 what's more      6 Since  
 3 due to      7 Moreover  
 4 therefore      8 Furthermore

#### 2 REASON: due to, since

RESULT: therefore, as a result

ADDITION: what's more, plus, moreover, furthermore

- 3 1 close/shut  
 2 she couldn't  
 3 was terrible/bad/dreadful  
 4 didn't have  
 5 get in / get into / enter  
 6 they aren't / they're not

4 1 e 2 i 3 b 4 c 5 d 6 f 7 a 8 h

- 5 1 despite  
 2 that  
 3 However/Nevertheless  
 4 though/however  
 5 although/though  
 6 spite, still  
 7 even  
 8 Despite

6 1 S 2 D 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 S

- 7 1 as long as      4 whereas  
 2 so that      5 in case  
 3 On the one hand      6 otherwise

### Unit 69

- 1 Synonyms: curious/strange, fair/reasonable, essential/vital  
 Opposites: modern/old-fashioned, polite/rude, busy/deserted, rural/urban

2 1 S 2 D 3 S 4 D 5 S 6 S 7 D

- 3 1 curious      4 reasonable  
 2 rural/remote      5 impressed  
 3 suspicious      6 overall
- 5 1 shocked      4 terrifying  
 2 satisfied      5 disgusting  
 3 disappointing      6 embarrassed

- 6 1 amusing      5 disgusting  
 2 embarrassing      6 amazed/astonished  
 3 shocking      7 alarming  
 4 disappointed      8 satisfied

- 8 1 inadequate      6 common  
 2 soft      7 ineffective  
 3 inefficient      8 unexpected  
 4 spacious      9 permanent  
 5 artificial



- |              |                       |
|--------------|-----------------------|
| 9 1 mixed    | 6 efficient           |
| 2 rare       | 7 adequate            |
| 3 glad       | 8 modern/contemporary |
| 4 fashioned  | 9 negative            |
| 5 unexpected | 10 temporary          |

**Unit 70**

- 1 over 8, the rear 6, beside 4, beneath 1, onto 7, the edge 5, among 2
- 2 1 onto 5 over  
2 among 6 back  
3 over, beside 7 edge  
4 underneath/beneath 8 beyond
- 3 1 nowadays  
2 lasted  
3 occasionally / now and again  
4 Meanwhile  
5 throughout  
6 eventually
- 4 1 yet, recently / not long ago  
2 recent, during  
3 over, go  
4 last, already  
5 occasionally / now and again / from time to time, during/throughout

**Unit 71**

- 1 in general, in private, in public  
at least, at first  
by chance  
on purpose, on board
- 2 1 In general 4 At the end  
2 on purpose 5 in charge of  
3 on board 6 in a hurry/rush
- 3 1 in 4 by  
2 in 5 in  
3 At
- 4 1 of 6 on  
2 in/with 7 of  
3 with 8 to  
4 on 9 of  
5 of
- 5 1 cope 5 look  
2 rid 6 depends  
3 care 7 involved  
4 most 8 disapprove

**Unit 72**

- |                 |               |
|-----------------|---------------|
| 1 1 unkind      | 7 non-smoking |
| 2 non-alcoholic | 8 insecure    |
| 3 illegal       | 9 irregular   |
| 4 irresponsible | 10 dishonest  |
| 5 uncertain     | 11 irrelevant |
| 6 informal      |               |
- 2 1 immoral 4 insecure  
2 non-alcoholic 5 unfair/unacceptable  
3 irrelevant 6 disloyal
- 3 1 unfair 4 illegible  
2 unacceptable 5 illegal  
3 disloyal

*Answers from a Colombian person*

- 1 Life is always unfair, but knowing that means that I do not expect anything marvellous to happen and have therefore become cynical.
- 2 It has always been acceptable to them and unacceptable to others and it will remain so.
- 3 My friends tend to be loyal but a disloyal friend can always appear loyal at first.
- 4 My handwriting is probably the clearest sign of a confused mind! Even I can't read it – it is completely illegible.
- 5 I think it should be legal. I learnt to drive when I was 17 and didn't have an accident for the first four years.
- 4 1 a, c 3 b, c 5 a, c  
2 a, b 4 a, b 6 a, b
- 5 1 Unwrap the present. Wrap (up) the present.  
2 Lock the suitcase. Unlock the suitcase.  
3 Get dressed. Get undressed.  
4 Pack your suitcase. Unpack your suitcase.  
5 Do up your shirt. Undo your shirt.  
6 Tie up / Do up your shoelaces. Untie / Undo your shoelaces.

**Unit 73**

- 1 gentleness, kindness, disappearance, extension, reality, preference, judgement
- 2 1 react reaction  
2 prefer preference  
3 cruel cruelty  
4 define definition  
5 interpret interpretation  
6 measure measurement  
7 extend extension



- 3 1 measurements 5 reaction  
 2 cruelty 6 judgement  
 3 reality 7 preference  
 4 disappearance 8 extension  
 4 1 waterproof 5 practical  
 2 careful, careless 6 washable  
 3 creamy 7 powerful, powerless  
 4 humorous

5 1 G 2 G 3 B 4 G 5 G 6 G 7 B

- 6 1 harmful  
 2 ridiculous  
 3 useless/ridiculous  
 4 practical/useful/economical  
 5 fashionable  
 6 economical  
 7 painful  
 8 spicy

### Unit 74

1 1 d 2 a 3 b 4 c 5 a 6 b

- 2 1 enable 3 imagine 5 reminds  
 2 intend 4 warned 6 mind

3 1 f 2 g 3 a 4 c 5 b 6 d

#### 4 Answers from a Spanish person

- 1 I managed to cycle up a steep hill last week.  
 2 I intended to call my sister yesterday but I forgot.  
 3 I regret missing a chance to buy a house a couple of years ago.  
 4 I refused to go on a business trip recently.  
 5 My dad persuaded me to buy a car last year.  
 6 My mum warned me not to spend too much on my credit card.  
 7 I'm pleased to say no one has blamed me for anything recently.  
 8 My mum reminded me to call my sister today!

### Unit 75

1 1 R 2 R 3 W 4 W 5 R 6 W 7 R

- 2 1 takes after 4 runs out  
 2 made it up 5 switched on  
 3 get on with 6 give away

- 3 1 up 3 on 5 on, with  
 2 out 4 over 6 out of

- 5 1 leave out 4 go over  
 2 get through 5 getting on  
 3 work out 6 go on / carry on

- 6 1 out 4 on 7 back  
 2 through, on 5 off 8 up, down  
 3 back 6 on

### Unit 76

- 1 1 They're highly intelligent boys.  
 2 It's bitterly cold outside.  
 3 That man is completely/totally mad.  
 4 Paula's been seriously ill.  
 5 Their profits have fallen sharply.  
 6 We desperately need to earn more money.  
 7 It was totally/completely unnecessary to do that.

- 2 1 risen 4 travelled  
 2 injured 5 feel  
 3 sorry, forgot 6 convinced/sure  
 3 1 vitally 4 completely/totally  
 2 highly 5 bitterly  
 3 desperately 6 terribly

4 1 S 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 S 7 S 8 S

- 5 1 On the whole 5 rather  
 2 mainly/mostly 6 actually  
 3 approximately/about 7 rarely  
 4 largely/mostly 8 fairly

### Unit 77

1 1 I 2 F 3 I 4 F 5 N 6 I 7 N

- 2 1 fetch 4 purchase  
 2 commence 5 out of the blue  
 3 stuff 6 keep an eye on

- 3 1 of 3 stuff 5 turned  
 2 vague 4 idiom 6 sort, neutral

4 1 D 2 S 3 S 4 D 5 S 6 S 7 D

- 5 1 Yeah  
 2 Hang on. / Hold on.  
 3 What's up?  
 4 I haven't a clue.  
 5 How are things? / How's it going?  
 6 What've you been up to?  
 7 Cheers.

- 6 1 care 4 up, hang/hold  
 2 going 5 to  
 3 give/lend, problem

8 1 g 2 c 3 f 4 b 5 a 6 d

- 9 1 joking  
 2 disaster  
 3 tent  
 4 loads/lots/masses, nonsense/rubbish  
 5 better 7 picking  
 6 for 8 like



## Unit 78

- 1 1 No.  
2 As a deposit for the cottage.  
3 Arriving.  
4 Yes, she wants to know whether there is parking nearby.  
5 Her own address.  
6 Mr Ellison's address.  
7 Yes, she wrote the date underneath her address.  
8 Dear Mr Ellison  
9 Yours sincerely  
10 No, because it's a formal letter.
- 2 1 ✓ 2 X 3 ✓ 4 ✓ 5 X 6 ✓
- 3 1 I look forward **to** hearing **from** you.  
2 If there's a problem, please **don't** hesitate to ring me.  
3 I **enclose** a photocopy **of** my identity card with the application form.  
4 I would be **grateful** if you **could** phone me about the meeting.  
5 Further **to** your letter **of** 7 April, I wish to confirm my booking.  
6 I would **appreciate** it if **you** could help me.  
7 Please let me know **in** particular **whether/if** there is a beach nearby.  
8 I enclose a cheque for €30 as a **deposit** for the rental of the room.
- 4 1 Further 7 whether  
2 enclose 8 nearby / close by  
3 deposit 9 further  
4 commence 10 hesitate  
5 grateful 11 sincerely  
6 appreciate

## Unit 79

- 1 1 m 7 cl 13 g/gm  
2 p 8 kg 14 mm  
3 km 9 cm 15 £  
4 ml 10 mg 16 \$  
5 t 11 c/ct  
6 mph 12 kph
- 2 1 kph, mph 3 gm  
2 mm 4 p OR c/ct
- 3 1 vet 5 gym 9 pub  
2 pop / pop music 6 plane 10 deli  
3 fridge 7 board 11 lab  
4 bike 8 paper
- 4 ► lab  
1 deli, fridge 3 pub, TV/telly  
2 ads, paper 4 flu
- 5 1 ATM, PIN 5 UEFA 9 EU  
2 CV 6 IT 10 UN  
3 ID 7 AIDS 11 ISP  
4 VAT 8 DVD, UFOs

## Unit 80

- 1 1 sidewalk 3 datebook 5 railroad  
2 cellphone 4 drugstore
- 2 1 garbage 5 attorney  
2 subway 6 gasoline  
3 closet 7 transportation  
4 candy 8 billfold
- 3 1 can 4 fries  
2 theater 5 trip  
3 store 6 highway
- 4 1 holiday vacation  
2 lift elevator  
3 rubbish garbage/trash  
4 handbag purse  
5 diary datebook  
6 sweets candy  
7 lorry truck  
8 biscuit cookie  
9 tap faucet  
10 pavement sidewalk
- 5 *Answers from a Japanese person*  
1 I don't often use the subway. I use it a few times a month.  
2 I use the railroad twice a day, every day, to commute to work.  
3 I go to a movie theater about twice a month.  
4 The last movie I saw was *No Reservations*.  
5 I sometimes eat French fries when I go for a beer with friends.  
6 I went to Seoul on my last vacation.  
7 The last time I went to a mall was about two months ago.  
8 I left high school eighteen years ago.

# Answer key to review units

## Learning

### Unit 1

- 1 1 a translation (of this), please?
- 2 (some) revision for an exam
- 3 I repeat
- 4 his explanation (of it)
- 5 a guess
- 6 a record of new words in a book
- 7 a chat (about it)
- 8 the pronunciation of that word

- 2 1 recognize 7 translation
- 2 gist 8 pronounce
- 3 go through 9 make
- 4 make a note of 10 pronunciation
- 5 guess 11 experiment
- 6 context 12 foreign

### Unit 2

- 1 1 complex/complicated 5 range
- 2 expand, aim 6 contain
- 3 fluently 7 specialized
- 4 detail 8 appropriate

- 2 1 frustrating 6 getting
- 2 motivated 7 aware
- 3 while 8 express
- 4 progress 9 accurate
- 5 encouraging

### Unit 3

- 1 1 definitions 7 stress
- 2 entry 8 syllable
- 3 select 9 idiom
- 4 instance 10 expression
- 5 symbols 11 style
- 6 stressed 12 offend

### Unit 4

- 1 1 a colon 5 an exclamation mark
- 2 a full stop 6 an apostrophe
- 3 a semicolon 7 a question mark
- 4 quotation marks
- 2 1 separates 3 interrupts
- 2 details, list 4 instead, connected

## People

### Unit 5

- 1 1 expecting 5 figure
- 2 contact 6 tanned
- 3 neat 7 wrinkles
- 4 tell 8 shape
- 2 1 shoulders 4 appearance, shape
- 2 bald, losing 5 shaven
- 3 scar 6 plump

### Unit 6

- 1 generous, generosity, mean  
honest, honesty, dishonest  
tolerant, tolerance, intolerant  
patient, patience, impatient  
arrogant, arrogance, modest  
hard-working, lazy
- 2 1 crazy 4 aggressive
- 2 boring/dull 5 sense of humour
- 3 lazy 6 cheerful

### Unit 7

- 1 1 OPP insensitive 4 OPP hides
- 2 SYN fed up 5 SYN scared stiff
- 3 SYN astonished 6 SYN thrilled
- 2 1 He was furious with me, and I was  
thrilled. *terrified / scared stiff*  
OR He was furious *delighted* with me, and  
I was thrilled.
- 2 She was so proud when her son did well,  
and really *jealous*. *thrilled/delighted*
- 3 I was anxious before the flight, and scared  
stiff by the time we took off. (logical)
- 4 I don't know what upset her, but she was  
thrilled. *miserable / fed up*
- 5 She can be very insensitive and often  
hurts people's feelings. (logical)
- 6 I can't talk to her because she's insensitive  
and very supportive. *moody*

### Unit 8

- 1 Petros and I have nothing ^ common. *in*
- 2 How did you get ^ know her? *to*
- 3 I like Imran; we get ^ very well. *on*
- 4 Don't forget to keep ^ touch. *in*
- 5 You can't rely ^ her brother. *on*
- 6 I don't think they're ^ a relationship at the  
moment. *in*



**2** Some snakes are poisonous.

Leopards have spots.  
 Elephants have a trunk.  
 Eagles have a beak.  
 Bears have fur.  
 Bees can sting.  
 Goats have horns.

**3** Across

- 2 wings
- 5 bone
- 6 vary
- 8 camel
- 9 sting
- 10 monkey
- 11 calf
- 12 weight
- 13 spider

## Down

- 1 mice
- 3 snake
- 4 poison
- 7 harmless
- 9 shark

**Daily life****Unit 16**

- 1 Herbs: parsley, thyme, mint  
 Fruit: fig, pomegranate, raspberry, apricot  
 Vegetables: beetroot, sweetcorn, broccoli, leeks  
 Fish: cod, salmon, carp, sea bass  
 Seafood: oysters, clams, mussels, crab  
 Meat: veal, rabbit, liver, kidney

**Unit 17**

- |          |              |
|----------|--------------|
| 1 1 not  | 6 oil or fat |
| 2 less   | 7 without    |
| 3 good   | 8 cut        |
| 4 bad    | 9 weight     |
| 5 fatter | 10 cooking   |

**Unit 18**

- |                |              |
|----------------|--------------|
| 1 1 receipt    | 7 broke      |
| 2 well off     | 8 bargain    |
| 3 the sales    | 9 debt       |
| 4 waste        | 10 reduction |
| 5 change       | 11 amount    |
| 6 can't afford | 12 huge      |
- The phrase in the grey squares is 'cost a fortune'.

**Unit 19**

- |               |                          |
|---------------|--------------------------|
| 1 1 fall      | 6 sleepy/exhausted/tired |
| 2 go/get      | 7 habits                 |
| 3 lack        | 8 nap                    |
| 4 irritable   | 9 night                  |
| 5 concentrate | 10 mind                  |

**Unit 20**

- 1 bleed
- dizzy
- prevent
- symptom
- infection
- injury
- develop
- thoroughly

**Unit 21**

- 1 1 f 2 a 3 h 4 d 5 c 6 e 7 b

**Unit 22**

- 1 Correct answers
  - 1 cancelled, held up
  - 2 the outskirts, the way
  - 3 a vehicle, an ambulance
  - 4 a coach, a van
  - 5 broke down, crashed
  - 6 injured, delayed
  - 7 a valid ticket, a day return
  - 8 gets in, is due
- 2
 

1 hire	5 skid
2 pick	6 stop
3 turn	7 end
4 get	

**Unit 23**

- |               |                     |
|---------------|---------------------|
| 1 1 style     | 5 button            |
| 2 bracelet    | 6 suede             |
| 3 dress       | 7 underwear         |
| 4 vest        |                     |
| 2 1 versatile | 4 outfit            |
| 2 matches     | 5 jewellery         |
| 3 suits       | 6 materials/fabrics |

**Getting things done****Unit 24**

- 1 Is it **painful** when you bite?
- 2 I will probably have to **take** the tooth out.
- 3 This is the tooth which is **causing** the pain.
- 4 When did you last **have** a check-up?
- 5 Can you come back to the **surgery** tomorrow?
- 6 Just ask the receptionist to make an **appointment** for you.
- 7 There's a hole in this tooth – you need a **filling**.
- 8 I'm going to **examine** your teeth and then decide what you need.

**Unit 25**

- 1 treat
- 2 concerned
- 3 surgeon
- 4 straightaway
- 5 benefit
- 6 take care of / care for someone
- 7 get over something / recover from something
- 8 patient
- 9 ward
- 10 risk

**Unit 26**

- 1 1 stain, remove
- 2 out of, fix/repair/mend
- 3 leaking
- 4 mend/repair
- 5 working, bulbs
- 6 wrong with, fix/repair/mend
- 2 1 hammer
- 2 drill
- 3 screwdriver
- 4 scissors
- 5 rope
- 6 string/wire
- 7 glue
- 8 Sellotape/glue/string

**Unit 27**

- 1 broom
- 2 bucket
- 3 vacuum cleaner
- 4 throw
- 5 dust/polish
- 6 wipe

**Unit 28**

- 1 I **had** my hair cut last week.
- 2 I just want a trim, please.
- 3 I'd like a **cut** and blow-dry, please.
- 4 Are you **letting** your hair grow?
- 5 Can you pass me the **scissors**?
- 6 She's got a **parting** on the left.
- 7 I'm having my hair **coloured** tomorrow.
- 8 Can I borrow your **hairdryer**?

**Describing things****Unit 29**

- 1 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 F
- 2 1 filthy
- 2 lively
- 3 pity
- 4 space
- 5 handy
- 6 graffiti
- 7 begging
- 8 disadvantage

**Unit 30**

- 1 *Possible answers*  
It's a semi-detached house.  
There's a chimney on the roof.  
The cellar is used for storage.  
There's a lawn in the garden.  
The drive leads to the front door.

**Unit 31**

- 1 1 a wooden fence
- 2 a rubber tyre
- 3 a wax candle
- 4 a gold medal
- 5 a woollen blanket
- 6 a cardboard box
- 7 iron railings
- 8 a concrete bridge
- 2 1 round
- 2 four
- 3 horizontal
- 4 square
- 5 parallel
- 6 straight

**Unit 32**

- 1 1 h 2 f 3 a 4 d 5 g 6 b 7 i 8 e

**Unit 33**

- 1 1 artist
- 2 scene
- 3 foreground
- 4 just
- 5 distance
- 6 shade
- 7 hand
- 8 ignoring

**Unit 34**

- 1 1 smash
- 2 tear
- 3 fold
- 4 sprayed
- 5 crying
- 6 burst
- 7 sighed
- 8 shake
- 9 dragging

**Social and political issues****Unit 35**

- 1 1 criminal
- 2 murderer
- 3 mugger
- 4 burglar/thief
- 5 thief
- 6 shoplifter
- 7 robber
- 2 1 stabbed
- 2 obey
- 3 commit
- 4 the museum, stole
- 5 killed
- 6 violence
- 7 serious
- 8 attacked

**Unit 36**

- 1 c 1 h 2 g 3 e 4 b 5 d 6 f 7 a 8 i 9
- 2 1 place
- 2 prove
- 3 accused
- 4 witness
- 5 fine, sentence
- 6 may/might
- 7 evidence
- 8 arrest

**Unit 37**

- 1 1 obesity
- 2 allergy
- 3 stroke
- 4 asthma
- 5 heart attack
- 6 cancer
- 7 arthritis
- 8 diabetes



- 2 1 She has suffered **from** asthma for years.
- 2 He had a heart **attack** and died last week.
- 3 My grandfather is going **deaf** so I have to shout to him.
- 4 It's an infectious **disease** so he can't mix with other people.
- 5 The doctor told me to **breathe** in deeply through my nose.
- 6 She is allergic **to** some medicines.
- 7 Obesity can lead **to** heart disease.
- 8 He suffers from **memory** loss and can't remember where he puts things.

### Unit 38

1 1 g 2 e 3 i 4 b 5 k 6 a 7 c 8 h  
9 f 10 d

- |               |              |
|---------------|--------------|
| 2 1 objective | 5 politician |
| 2 oppose      | 6 power      |
| 3 priority    | 7 consist    |
| 4 parliament  |              |

### Unit 39

- |         |       |
|---------|-------|
| 1 1 Yes | 5 Yes |
| 2 No    | 6 No  |
| 3 Yes   | 7 Yes |
| 4 Yes   | 8 No  |
- 2 1 D 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 D 7 D 8 S

### Unit 40

- 1 assassination, released
- 2 president, attempted, assassinate
- 3 Revolution
- 4 established
- 5 discovered
- 6 Princess
- 7 republic
- 8 gained

## Media and entertainment

### Unit 41

- |             |              |
|-------------|--------------|
| 1 1 threats | 4 current    |
| 2 declined  | 5 protesting |
| 3 scares    | 6 daily      |
- 2 1 I enjoy all sorts of **cultural** events, such as exhibitions and concerts.
  - 2 I think he must receive a **pension** because he's nearly 70.
  - 3 I saw a strange newspaper **headline** the other day: 'Man bites dog'.
  - 4 She's in charge of the local newspaper; I believe she's been the **editor** for three years.
  - 5 The government **claims** that it can cut crime by 20 per cent this year, but I don't believe it.

- 6 My cousin's a newspaper **journalist**; he writes articles about current affairs.

### Unit 42

- |             |                 |
|-------------|-----------------|
| 1 1 editing | 5 incredible    |
| 2 movie     | 6 plot          |
| 3 role      | 7 disappointing |
| 4 winner    | 8 swearing      |
- The word in the grey squares is 'director'.

### Unit 43

- |               |             |
|---------------|-------------|
| 1 1 automatic | 5 realistic |
| 2 abstract    | 6 landscape |
| 3 studio      | 7 sort      |
| 4 out of      | 8 skilled   |

### Unit 44

- |                     |                  |
|---------------------|------------------|
| 1 1 conductor P     | 7 trumpet        |
| 2 lead singer P     | 8 melody         |
| 3 keyboard player P | 9 flautist P     |
| 4 composer P        | 10 guitarist P   |
| 5 flute             | 11 saxophone     |
| 6 band P            | 12 solo artist P |

### Unit 45

- |                     |                  |
|---------------------|------------------|
| 1 1 ground, stadium | 4 track, circuit |
| 2 court, umpire     | 5 club, referee  |
| 3 coach, manager    | 6 deep, standard |
- |                  |                 |
|------------------|-----------------|
| 2 1 constructing | 5 interrupted   |
| 2 capacity       | 6 crowd         |
| 3 supported      | 7 championship  |
| 4 lap            | 8 length, width |

### Unit 46

1 1 e 2 h 3 b 4 c 5 f 6 i 7 d

### Unit 47

- |         |      |
|---------|------|
| 1 1 Yes | 5 No |
| 2 Yes   | 6 No |
| 3 No    | 7 No |
| 4 Yes   | 8 No |

**Unit 48**

- 1 1 Everyone **parades** through the main streets in the town.
- 2 The people in the **neighbourhood** where I live are very friendly.
- 3 It's a two-day **festival**, which we have every year.
- 4 It was quite a **wild** party; we had great fun.
- 5 Do you ever **take part / participate** in parades?
- 6 I enjoy the carnival: it **means** a lot to me.
- 7 She wore a really **striking** dress with gold flowers on it.
- 8 We all had to **throw** a ball and try to hit the moving object.

**Work and study****Unit 49**

- 1 1 You have to follow his instructions.
- 2 Don't communicate with anyone.
- 3 Your attitude is important.
- 4 I was relieved to finish the exam.
- 5 Devote ten minutes to making notes.
- 6 He would never cheat in an exam.
- 7 If you don't succeed, try again.
- 8 Are dictionaries essential?

**Unit 50**

- 1 *Correct answers*
  - 1 seminar, lecture
  - 2 at home, away from home
  - 3 Professors, Tutors
  - 4 take out a loan, try to get a scholarship
  - 5 have a debate, take notes
- 2 1 Our seminar started **on** time at 10.00.
- 2 My sister is studying away from home and she's living in a hall **of** residence.
- 3 How much were the tuition **fees** for your summer course?
- 4 We had to hurry but we arrived just in time for the beginning of the lecture.
- 5 At the moment, she's **doing** some medical research as part of her studies.
- 6 I would like to have the **chance/ opportunity** to study abroad, perhaps in Canada.
- 7 When I was at university, our essays were all part of the continuous **assessment**.
- 8 Do you study away **from** home?

**Unit 51**

- |               |                 |
|---------------|-----------------|
| 1 1 vacancy   | 5 assess        |
| 2 advice      | 6 require       |
| 3 acknowledge | 7 automatically |
| 4 valid       | 8 process       |

- |             |              |
|-------------|--------------|
| 2 1 apply   | 5 references |
| 2 interview | 6 candidates |
| 3 feedback  | 7 in         |
| 4 contact   | 8 permit     |

**Unit 52**

- |                                |
|--------------------------------|
| 1 carpenter/plumber            |
| 2 nanny                        |
| 3 civil servant / estate agent |
| 4 electrician/mechanic         |
| 5 sales rep / travel agent     |
| 6 plumber/carpenter            |
- 2 1 experience, profession
  - 2 arrangements, agent
  - 3 servant, career, service
  - 4 training, qualifications
  - 5 products, rep

**Unit 53**

- |               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| 1 1 involved  | 7 resign          |
| 2 challenging | 8 elsewhere       |
| 3 promoted    | 9 work            |
| 4 dealing     | 10 charge         |
| 5 transferred | 11 responsibility |
| 6 complaints  |                   |
- 2 1 appoint
 6 duties |
  - 2 reward
 7 clerical |
  - 3 notice
 8 solve |
  - 4 unemployed
 9 handle |
  - 5 prospects
  |
- The word in the grey squares is 'promotion'.

**Unit 54**

- |               |            |
|---------------|------------|
| 1 1 stressful | 5 shift    |
| 2 right       | 6 overtime |
| 3 trade union | 7 bonus    |
| 4 entitled    | 8 strike   |

**Business****Unit 55**

- 1 finance, loss, tax, revenue, interest, cash flow, profit, loan, turnover, bank, capital
- 2 1 rose slightly
- 2 fell/dropped sharply
- 3 remained unchanged/stable
- 4 dropped/fell by
- 5 fluctated
- 6 slight increase/growth

**Unit 56**

- |       |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1 1 G | 2 B | 3 B | 4 G | 5 B | 6 G | 7 G |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
- 2 1 even
 5 quality |
  - 2 growth
 6 market |
  - 3 risks
 7 reputation |
  - 4 rivals
 8 shares |

**Unit 57**

1 e 2 h 3 g 4 b 5 a 6 d 7 c 8 f

- |                |             |
|----------------|-------------|
| 2 1 Innovation | 5 contract  |
| 2 crucial      | 6 potential |
| 3 research     | 7 feedback  |
| 4 invest       | 8 diversify |

**Unit 58**

- 1 danger/threat  
advice/tip  
ability/skill  
plan/strategy  
aim/objective  
reply/response  
data/information  
need/demand

- |                           |              |
|---------------------------|--------------|
| 2 1 strengths, weaknesses | 5 objectives |
| 2 opportunities           | 6 ignore     |
| 3 gather/get, data        | 7 forecasts  |
| 4 assume                  | 8 evaluate   |

**Social English****Unit 59**

- |                    |               |
|--------------------|---------------|
| 1 1 definitely go  | 4 he'll go    |
| 2 doubt (if/that)  | 5 likely      |
| 3 to be a disaster | 6 pessimistic |

**Unit 60**

- |            |              |
|------------|--------------|
| 1 except   | 5 completely |
| 2 exactly  | 6 apart      |
| 3 alike    | 7 main       |
| 4 compared | 8 comparison |

**Unit 61**

- |                  |                      |
|------------------|----------------------|
| 1 1 make         | 5 to                 |
| 2 afraid         | 6 tied               |
| 3 How/What       | 7 postpone / put off |
| 4 available/free | 8 confirm            |

**Unit 62**

- |              |                 |
|--------------|-----------------|
| 1 1 keen     | 5 all           |
| 2 fond       | 6 bear/stand    |
| 3 mad        | 7 keen          |
| 4 adore/love | 8 loathe/detest |
- 2 *Answers from a British person*
- I enjoy physical exercise, especially long walks.
  - I'm fond of the people I work with.
  - I'm no good at dancing, so I don't enjoy it very much.
  - Yes, I absolutely adore chocolate!
  - In fact I do like shellfish, though I'm allergic to mussels.
  - I agree. I can't stand waiting in queues.

- In fact I like cheese very much.
- I hate cold weather, especially if it's wet as well.

**Unit 63**

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 1 not in favour of, against            |  |
| 2 is to blame, is his fault              |  |
| 3 in my opinion, as far as I'm concerned |  |
| 4 in principle, in theory                |  |
| 5 is opposed to, is against              |  |
| 6 I believe, I reckon                    |  |
- |               |                |
|---------------|----------------|
| 2 1 in favour | 5 consider     |
| 2 fault       | 6 in principle |
| 3 sensible    | 7 support      |
| 4 of          |                |

**Unit 64**

- 1 He disobeys me.
- 2 They force us to work hard.
- 3 You aren't allowed to eat here. OR Eating here isn't allowed.
- 4 It's compulsory to wear a uniform. OR Wearing a uniform is compulsory.
- 5 She let us sit down.
- 6 The boss insists that we go.
- 7 His behaviour in class is terrible.
- 8 He punishes us if we're late.

**Unit 65**

- |              |                       |
|--------------|-----------------------|
| 1 1 fact     | 7 afraid              |
| 2 expecting  | 8 actually/apparently |
| 3 definitely | 9 smoothly            |
| 4 intending  | 10 going              |
| 5 hope       | 11 guess              |
| 6 intention  |                       |

**Unit 66**

- |       |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1 1 U | 2 U | 3 H | 4 U | 5 H | 6 U | 7 H |
| 8 U   | 9 U |     |     |     |     |     |
- 1 There's no point in going out.
  - 2 You should speak to her in person.
  - 3 I would ask an expert for advice.
  - 4 Have you ever considered going to live abroad?
  - 5 She joined the tennis club.
  - 6 Waiting in queues gets on my nerves.
  - 7 I'm not bothered about the cost of the meal.
  - 8 Did she mention anything to you about the divorce? OR Did she mention the divorce to you?

**Unit 67**

- |          |                   |
|----------|-------------------|
| 1 1 mind | 4 case            |
| 2 out    | 5 assistance/help |
| 3 beware | 6 careful         |



## Language

### Unit 68

- |                |           |
|----------------|-----------|
| 1 1 because    | 5 though  |
| 2 all the same | 6 however |
| 3 still        | 7 so      |
| 4 furthermore  | 8 whereas |
- 2 *Text 1*
- |          |            |
|----------|------------|
| 1 result | 3 provided |
| 2 more   |            |
- Text 2*
- |            |                            |
|------------|----------------------------|
| 4 due      | 6 as/since                 |
| 5 addition | 7 However/<br>Nevertheless |

### Unit 69

- 1 1 rare, common
- 2 adequate, inadequate
- 3 old-fashioned, modern/contemporary
- 4 urban, rural
- 5 crowded, deserted
- 6 artificial, real
- 7 rude, polite
- 8 satisfied, dissatisfied
- 9 firm, soft
- 10 effective, ineffective

### Unit 70

- 1 1 underneath
- 2 nowadays / these days
- 3 throughout
- 4 eventually
- 5 onto
- 6 occasionally
- 7 towards
- 8 Meanwhile / In the meantime

### Unit 71

- 1 IN: in general, in favour of, in public, in a rush
- ON: insist on, rely on, on purpose, depend on, on board
- OF: get rid of, capable of, take care of, approve of

### Unit 72

- 1 1 non-acceptable unacceptable
- 2 irrelevant irrelevant
- 3 dissecure insecure
- 4 an-unalcoholic a non-alcoholic
- 5 disfasten unfasten
- 6 dishonest dishonest
- 7 impatient impatient

### Unit 73

- |               |              |
|---------------|--------------|
| 2 1 judgement | 5 preference |
| 2 definition  | 6 cruelty    |
| 3 reaction    | 7 extension  |
| 4 powerful    | 8 harmless   |

### Unit 74

- 1 1 I don't recall meeting your parents.
- 2 He refused to leave.
- 3 Carrie admitted stealing the necklace.
- 4 Mario accused me of taking all the food.
- 5 She regrets moving to London.
- 6 Boris reminds me of your brother.
- 7 He blamed me for the mistake.
- 8 I tend to work in the evening.
- 9 Cal pretended to be a doctor.
- 10 She persuaded me to leave.

### Unit 75

- 1 1 I take **after** my mother.
- 2 why don't you give it **away**?
- 3 I don't get **on** very well with my boss.
- 4 just **leave** it out
- 5 put his coat **on** / put **on** his coat
- 6 I can't work **out**
- 7 **switch** the TV on
- 8 go **over** it

### Unit 76

- |             |             |
|-------------|-------------|
| 1 1 sharply | 5 rarely    |
| 2 strongly  | 6 widely    |
| 3 roughly   | 7 seriously |
| 4 rather    | 8 totally   |



## Styles of English

### Unit 77

- 1 1 are things / 's it going?
- 2 up to
- 3 much
- 4 up
- 5 turned her down
- 6 You're joking! / You must be joking!
- 7 reckons
- 8 rubbish
- 9 loads/masses
- 10 Yeah
- 11 I'd better be off
- 12 Cheers!
- 2 1 fancy
- 2 reckon
- 3 hang on
- 4 hurry up
- 5 Tell me a joke
- 6 keep an eye on someone

### Unit 78

- 1 1 Sir or Madam
- 2 regards
- 3 Yours
- 4 further
- 5 enclose
- 6 whether
- 7 in particular
- 8 hearing
- 9 don't hesitate
- 10 All the best
- 2 1 Further
- 2 deposit
- 3 commencing
- 4 further/more
- 5 nearby / close by
- 6 grateful
- 7 whether / if
- 8 appreciate
- 9 hesitate
- 10 further
- 11 forward
- 12 sincerely

### Unit 79

- 1 1 identity card
- 2 United Nations
- 3 personal identification number
- 4 value added tax
- 5 curriculum vitae
- 6 internet service provider
- 7 information technology
- 2 1 Yes, fridge
- 2 No
- 3 Yes, vet
- 4 No
- 5 Yes, ad/advert
- 6 Yes, flu
- 7 Yes, lab
- 8 No
- 9 Yes, gym
- 10 No

### Unit 80

- 1 tap faucet
- chemist drugstore
- biscuit cookie
- lift elevator
- petrol gasoline
- wardrobe closet
- diary datebook
- rubbish garbage
- pavement sidewalk
- lorry truck



# Spotlight boxes

Unit	Title of spotlight box	Page	Unit	Title of spotlight box	Page
1A	<i>formal</i>	10	44A	The suffix <i>-ist</i>	116
1B	<i>conversation, chat, discussion, argument</i>	11	44B	<i>living, alive, live</i>	117
2B	<i>contain and include</i>	13	45A	Suffix <i>-er</i> and <i>player</i>	118
3A	<i>stress and emphasize</i>	14	45B	<i>long, wide, deep</i>	119
5B	<i>-ish</i>	21	46A	<i>record</i>	120
6	<i>crazy, mad, stupid</i>	22	46B	<i>defeat</i>	121
7A	<i>absolutely and very</i>	24	47B	Compound adjectives with <i>well</i>	123
7B	<i>sensitive</i>	25	48A	<i>festival, carnival, parade</i>	124
8A	<i>friend</i>	26	50B	<i>in time, on time</i>	131
8B	<i>have a row / an argument</i>	27	51	Formal language	132
10A	<i>wedding and marriage; bride and groom</i>	30	52A	<i>career, job, profession</i>	134
11B	<i>discover or invent</i>	37	53A	<i>dismiss, sack, fire</i>	136
12A	<i>cause</i> v, n	38	54	<i>time off</i>	138
13B	<i>effect</i> n, <i>affect</i> v	42	55A	<i>finance</i>	142
15C	<i>cows and cattle</i>	48	56A	Prefixes <i>over-</i> and <i>under-</i>	144
17A	<i>diet</i>	54	56B	<i>market</i>	145
21B	<i>keep</i>	63	57	Verbs of change	146
22B	<i>way</i>	65	58A	<i>skill</i>	148
23A	<i>jewellery and material</i>	67	60	<i>compare</i> v, <i>comparison</i> n	153
24	<i>dread, look forward to</i>	73	61	<i>be supposed to, be meant to</i> + verb	154
25	<i>enough</i>	74	62	Verb + <i>-ing</i>	155
26A	Nouns	76	63A	Giving opinions	156
26B	<i>repair, fix, or mend sth</i>	77	65A	<i>actually</i>	160
28	<i>have/get sth done</i>	79	66A	<i>point</i>	162
29B	<i>area, region, district, part</i>	83	66B	<i>bother</i>	163
30	<i>passage, corridor, hall</i>	84	68A	<i>in addition, moreover, furthermore</i>	168
31A	Noun + noun	86	68B	<i>still</i>	169
31B	<i>shape, -shaped</i>	87	68C	<i>purpose</i>	170
32A	<i>can</i> + sense verbs	88	69B	<i>-ed/-ing endings</i>	172
32B	<i>like</i>	89	70A	<i>over</i>	174
33	<i>painting and drawing</i>	90	71A	<i>in the end</i> and <i>at the end</i>	176
34B	<i>loud, out loud / aloud, silent, silence</i>	93	71B	<i>depend on sb/sth</i>	177
35A	<i>crime</i>	96	72A	Prefixes	178
35B	<i>steal and rob</i>	97	73B	Adjectives ending in <i>-ful</i> and <i>-less</i>	181
37B	<i>go</i> + adjective	101	75A	Separable phrasal verbs	184
38B	<i>oppose, opposition</i>	103	75B	Different meanings	185
41B	Verbs and nouns with the same form	111	76B	<i>rather, fairly, quite, pretty</i>	187
42B	<i>indeed</i>	113	77A	<i>stuff</i>	191
43B	<i>photography, photograph, etc.</i>	115	77B	<i>cheers</i>	192
			77C	<i>joke</i>	193
			78	<i>further, further to</i>	194
			80	<i>highway, freeway, expressway</i>	199

# Word list / Index

Numbers are unit numbers, not page numbers

- ATM /ˈeɪˌtiːˈem/ 79  
 abbreviation /əˈbriːviːeɪʃn/ 4  
 absolutely /ˈæbsəluːtli/ 7  
 abstract /ˈæbstrækt/ 43  
 academic /ˌækəˈdemɪk/ 50  
 accelerate /əkˈseləreɪt/ 21  
 accelerator /əkˈseləreɪtə(r)/ 21  
 acceptable /əkˈseptəbl/ 72  
 access /ˈækses/ 71  
 accessory /əkˈsesəri/ 23  
 accident /ˈæksɪdənt/ 22  
 accurate /ˈækjərət/ 2  
 accurately /ˈækjərətli/ 2  
 accuse /əˈkjuːz/ 74  
 accused as in the accused  
 /əˈkjuːzd/ 36  
 achieve /əˈtʃiːv/ 42, 46  
 achievement /əˈtʃiːvmənt/ 42,  
 46  
 acknowledge /əkˈnɒlɪdʒ/ 51  
 acknowledgement  
 /əkˈnɒlɪdʒmənt/ 51  
 actually /ˈæktʃuəli/ 65, 76  
 ad (= advertisement) /æd/ 79  
 adapt /əˈdæpt/ 57  
 add /æd/ 17  
 addition as in in addition  
 /əˈdɪʃn/ 68  
 adequate /ˈædɪkwət/ 56, 69  
 admiration /ˌædməˈreɪʃn/ 44  
 admire /ədˈmaɪə(r)/ 44  
 admit /ədˈmɪt/ 74  
 adopt /əˈdɒpt/ 9  
 adore /əˈdɔː(r)/ 62  
 advance as in in advance  
 /ədˈvɑːns/ 71  
 advantage /ədˈvɑːntɪdʒ/ 29  
 advantage as in take advantage  
 of /ədˈvɑːntɪdʒ/ 71  
 advert /ˈædvɜːt/ 79  
 advertise /ˈædvətaɪz/ 58  
 advertising /ˈædvətaɪzɪŋ/ 58  
 advice /ədˈvaɪs/ 51  
 advise /ədˈvaɪz/ 51  
 afraid as in I'm afraid ...  
 /əˈfreɪd/ 61  
 afraid as in I'm afraid not/so  
 /əˈfreɪd/ 65  
 affect /əˈfekt/ 13  
 afford /əˈfɔːd/ 18  
 after a while /ˌɑːftər ə ˈwaɪl/ 2  
 against /əˈɡenst/ 63  
 against the law  
 /əˈɡenst ðə ˈlɔː/ 35  
 aggression /əˈɡresɪv/ 6  
 aggressive /əˈɡresɪv/ 6  
 ahead /əˈhed/ 57  
 aid n, v /eɪd/ 41  
 AIDS /eɪdz/ 79  
 aim /eɪm/ 2, 38, 58  
 aircraft /ˈeɪkrɑːft/ 67  
 alarm n /əˈlɑːm/ 19  
 alarmed /əˈlɑːmd/ 69  
 alarming /əˈlɑːmɪŋ/ 69  
 album (= music collection)  
 /ˈælbəm/ 44  
 album as in photo album  
 /ˈælbəm/ 43  
 alcoholic /ˌælkəˈhɒlɪk/ 72  
 alike /əˈlaɪk/ 60  
 alive /əˈlaɪv/ 44  
 all over /ˌɔːl əʊvə(r)/ 70  
 all over the world  
 /ˌɔːl əʊvə ðə ˈwɜːld/ 45  
 all the best /ˌɔːl ðə ˈbest/ 78  
 all the same /ˌɔːl ðə ˈseɪm/ 68  
 allergic /əˈlɜːdʒɪk/ 37  
 allergy /ˈælədʒi/ 37  
 allowed /əˈləʊd/ 64  
 allow /əˈləʊ/ 64  
 ally /ˈælaɪ/ 39  
 aloud /əˈləʊd/ 34  
 alphabet /ˈælfəbet/ 47  
 alphabetical /ˌælfəˈbetɪkl/ 47  
 already /ɔːlˈredi/ 70  
 alter /ˈɔːltə(r)/ 57  
 alternative /ɔːlˈtɜːnətɪv/ 4  
 although /ɔːlˈðəʊ/ 68  
 amateur /ˈæmətə(r)/ 46  
 amateur photographer  
 /ˌæmətə ˈfəʊtəɡrəfə(r)/ 43  
 amazed /əˈmeɪzd/ 7, 69  
 amazing /əˈmeɪzɪŋ/ 69  
 ambition /æmˈbɪʃn/ 6  
 ambitious /æmˈbɪʃəs/ 6  
 ambulance /ˈæmbjələns/ 22  
 among /əˈmʌŋ/ 70  
 amongst /əˈmʌŋst/ 70  
 amount /əˈmaʊnt/ 18  
 amused /əˈmjuːzd/ 69  
 amusing /əˈmjuːzɪŋ/ 69  
 analyse /ˈænəlaɪz/ 11  
 analysis /əˈnæləsɪs/ 11  
 ancestor /ˈænsəstə(r)/ 9  
 anniversary /ˌænɪˈvɜːsəri/ 10  
 announce /əˈnaʊns/ 38  
 announcement  
 /əˈnaʊnsmənt/ 38  
 annual /ˈænjuəl/ 55  
 antisocial /ˌæntɪˈsəʊʃl/ 8  
 anxious /ˈæŋkʃəs/ 7  
 apart /əˈpɑːt/ 60  
 apartment /əˈpɑːtmənt/ 80  
 apostrophe /əˈpɒstrəfi/ 4  
 appalling /əˈpɔːlɪŋ/ 66  
 apparently /əˈpærəntli/ 63  
 appeal n, v /əˈpiːl/ 44  
 appear /əˈpiə(r)/ 32  
 appearance /əˈpiərəns/ 5  
 application /ˌæplɪˈkeɪʃn/ 51  
 apply /əˈplai/ 51  
 appoint /əˈpɔɪnt/ 53  
 appointment /əˈpɔɪntmənt/ 24  
 appreciate as in I would  
 appreciate it if ...  
 /əˈpriːʃieɪt/ 78  
 approach /əˈprəʊtʃ/ 48  
 appropriate /əˈprəʊpɪət/ 2  
 approve /əˈpruːv/ 71  
 approximately  
 /əˈprɒksɪmətli/ 11, 76  
 apricot /ˈeɪprɪkɒt/ 16  
 area /ˈeəriə/ 29  
 argue /ˈɑːɡjuː/ 8  
 argument /ˈɑːɡjʊmənt/ 1, 8  
 army /ˈɑːmi/ 39  
 arrangements  
 /əˈreɪndʒmənts/ 52  
 arrest /əˈrest/ 36  
 arrogance /ˈærəɡəns/ 6  
 arrogant /ˈærəɡənt/ 6  
 arthritic /ɑːˈθrɪtɪk/ 37  
 arthritis /ɑːˈθrɪtəs/ 37  
 artichoke /ˈɑːtɪtʃəʊk/ 16  
 artificial /ˌɑːtɪˈfɪʃl/ 69  
 artist /ˈɑːtɪst/ 33  
 as /æz, əz/ 68



- as a result /əz ə ri'zʌlt/ 68  
 as an alternative /əz ən əl'tɜːnətɪv/ 61  
 as far as I'm concerned ... /əz fɑːr əz 'aɪm kən'sɜːnd/ 63  
 as long as /əz 'lɒŋ əz/ 68  
 ask as in if you ask me ... /ɑːsk/ 63  
 asleep /ə'sliːp/ 19  
 asparagus /ə'spærəɡəs/ 16  
 assassinate /ə'sæsɪneɪt/ 40  
 assassination /ə'sæsɪ'neɪʃn/ 40  
 assault /ə'sɔːlt/ 35  
 assess /ə'ses/ 51  
 assessment /ə'sesmənt/ 51  
 asset /'æset/ 56  
 assistance /ə'sɪstəns/ 67  
 assume /ə'sjuːm/ 58, 65  
 assumption /ə'sʌmpʃn/ 58  
 asthma /'æsmə/ 37  
 astonished /ə'stɒnɪʃt/ 7, 69  
 astonishing /ə'stɒnɪʃɪŋ/ 69  
 at first /ət 'fɜːst/ 71  
 at home /ət 'həʊm/ 50  
 at least /ət 'liːst/ 71  
 at the end /ət ði 'end/ 71  
 athlete /'æθliːt/ 45  
 athletics /æθ'letɪks/ 45, 46  
 atmosphere /'ætmosfɪə(r)/ 13  
 atrocious /ə'trəʊʃəs/ 66  
 attack n /ə'tæk/ 15  
 attack v /ə'tæk/ 15, 35  
 attacker /ə'tækə(r)/ 35  
 attempt n, v /ə'tempt/ 40  
 attend /ə'tend/ 50, 51  
 attention /ə'tenʃn/ 47  
 attic /'ætɪk/ 30  
 attitude /'ætɪtjuːd/ 49  
 attorney /ə'tɜːni/ 80  
 attract sb's attention /ə'trækt ... ə'tenʃn/ 47  
 author /'ɔːθə(r)/ 47  
 autobiography /,ɔːtəbaɪ'ɒɡrəfi/ 47  
 automatic /,ɔːtə'mætɪk/ 43  
 automatically /,ɔːtə'mætɪkli/ 51  
 available /ə'veɪləbl/ 61  
 average /'ævərɪdʒ/ 15  
 avocado /,ævə'kɑːdəʊ/ 16  
 avoid /ə'vɔɪd/ 3, 22  
 awake as in wide awake /ə'weɪk/ 19  
 award n /ə'wɔːd/ 42  
 aware /ə'weə(r)/ 2  
 away from home /ə'weɪ frəm 'həʊm/ 50  
 axe n, v /æks/ 41  
 BBC (British Broadcasting Corporation) /,biː ,biː 'siː/ 79  
 back /bæk/ 70  
 back sth up /,bæk ... 'ʌp/ 66  
 background /'bækgraʊnd/ 33  
 backward(s) /'bækwədʒ/ 20  
 bad diet /,bæd 'daɪət/ 17  
 bad for you /'bæd fə ,juː/ 17  
 bake /beɪk/ 17  
 balanced diet /,bælənst 'daɪət/ 17  
 bald /bɔːld/ 5  
 ban v /bæn/ 64  
 band /bænd/ 44  
 bandage /'bændɪdʒ/ 20  
 bang n /bæŋ/ 26  
 bang v /bæŋ/ 20  
 bank loan /'bæŋk ,ləʊn/ 55  
 bank /bæŋk/ 12  
 bargain /'bɑːɡɪn/ 18  
 barrier /'bæriə(r)/ 67  
 barrister /'bærɪstə(r)/ 80  
 based /beɪst/ 51  
 basement /'beɪsmənt/ 30  
 basic /'beɪsɪk/ 69  
 basil /'bæzl/ 16  
 bass as in sea bass /bæs/ 16  
 battle /'bætl/ 39  
 be bothered /,bi 'bɒðəd/ 66  
 be going to /,bi 'ɡəʊɪŋ tə/ 65  
 be keen on /,bi 'kiːn ,ɒn/ 62  
 be meant to /,bi 'ment tə/ 61  
 be stuck /,bi 'stʌk/ 22  
 be supposed to /,bi sə'pəʊst tə/ 61  
 be to blame for sth /,bi tə 'bleɪm fə ,.../ 63  
 be up to sb /,bi 'ʌp tə ,.../ 64  
 beach /biːtʃ/ 12  
 beak /biːk/ 15  
 bear n /beə(r)/ 15  
 bear as in can't bear /beə(r)/ 62  
 beat /biːt/ 46  
 beauty contest /'bjʊːti ,kɒntest/ 48  
 because /brɪ'kɒz, brɪ'kəz/ 68  
 bee /biː/ 15  
 beetroot /'biːtruːt/ 16  
 beg /beg/ 29  
 behave /brɪ'herv/ 64  
 behaviour /brɪ'hervə(r)/ 64  
 believe /brɪ'liːv/ 63  
 belong /brɪ'lɒŋ/ 18  
 belt /belt/ 23  
 beneath /brɪ'niːθ/ 70  
 benefit /'benɪfɪt/ 25  
 beside /brɪ'saɪd/ 70  
 best man /,best 'mæn/ 10  
 best wishes /'best ,wɪʃɪz/ 78  
 better as in I'd better be off /'betə(r)/ 77  
 beware /brɪ'weə(r)/ 67  
 beyond /brɪ'jɒnd/ 70  
 bike /baɪk/ 79  
 billfold /'bɪlfəʊld/ 80  
 biography /baɪ'ɒɡrəfi/ 47  
 bite /baɪt/ 24  
 bitterly /'bɪtəli/ 76  
 bitterly cold /,bɪtəli 'kəʊld/ 13  
 blame as in be to blame /bleɪm/ 63  
 blame v /bleɪm/ 74  
 bland /blænd/ 32  
 blanket /'blæŋkɪt/ 31  
 bleed /bliːd/ 20  
 blind /blænd/ 37  
 block /blɒk/ 22  
 blood /blʌd/ 20  
 blossom /'blɒsəm/ 48  
 blouse /blaʊz/ 23  
 blow-dry /'bləʊ ,draɪ/ 28  
 blue as in out of the blue /bluː/ 77  
 board /bɔːd/ 79  
 board as in on board /bɔːd/ 71  
 boat /bəʊt/ 12  
 boil /bɔɪl/ 17  
 bomb /bɒm/ 39  
 bomb scare /'bɒm ,skeə(r)/ 41  
 bone /bəʊn/ 15  
 bonnet /'bɒnɪt/ 21  
 bonus /'bɒʊnəs/ 54  
 book /bʊk/ 47  
 boot (of a car) /buːt/ 21  
 boot (item of clothing) /buːt/ 23  
 bother /'bɒðə(r)/ 66  
 bottom /'bɒtəm/ 33  
 bound to /'baʊnd tə/ 59  
 box /bɒks/ 31  
 boxer /'bɒksə(r)/ 45  
 bra /brɑː/ 23  
 bracelet /'breɪslət/ 23  
 brackets /'bræktɪs/ 4  
 brain /breɪn/ 37  
 brake n, v /breɪk/ 21

- brand /brænd/ 56  
 break down /breik 'daʊn/ 22  
 break even /breik 'i:vən/ 56  
 break into /'breik ,ɪntə/ 35  
 break out /breik 'aʊt/ 39  
 break the law  
 /breik ðə 'lɔ:/ 35  
 break a record  
 /breik ə 'rekɔ:d/ 46  
 breath /breθ/ 34  
 breathe /bri:ð/ 34, 37  
 breeze /bri:z/ 13  
 breezy /'bri:zi/ 13  
 brick /brɪk/ 30  
 bride /braɪd/ 10  
 bridesmaid /'braɪdzmɛɪd/ 10  
 bridge /brɪdʒ/ 31  
 bright /braɪt/ 33  
 brightness /'braɪtnəs/ 33  
 brilliant /'brɪljənt/ 46  
 bring sb up /brɪŋ ... 'ʌp/ 9  
 broad shoulders  
 /brɔ:d 'ʃəʊldəz/ 5  
 broccoli /'brɒkəli/ 16  
 broke /brəʊk/ 18  
 broom /bru:m/ 27  
 browse /braʊz/ 47  
 bruised /bru:zd/ 20  
 bucket /'bʌkɪt/ 27  
 build /bɪld/ 3  
 built-in flash /bɪlt ,ɪn 'flæʃ/ 43  
 built-up /bɪlt 'ʌp/ 29  
 bulb as in light bulb /bʌlb/ 26  
 bull /bʊl/ 15  
 burglar /'bɜ:glə(r)/ 35  
 burglary /'bɜ:gləri/ 35  
 burial /'berɪəl/ 10  
 burn /bɜ:n/ 20  
 burst /bɜ:st/ 12  
 burst into tears  
 /bɜ:st ɪntə 'tɪəz/ 34  
 burst out laughing  
 /bɜ:st aʊt 'lɑ:fɪŋ/ 34  
 bury /'beri/ 10  
 business trip /'bɪznəs ,trɪp/ 22  
 busy /'bɪzi/ 69  
 button /'bʌtn/ 23  
 by /baɪ/ 70  
 by chance /baɪ 'tʃɑ:ns/ 71  
  
 c (cent(s)) /sent(s)/ 79  
 cl (centilitre(s))  
 /'sentɪli:tə(z)/ 79  
 cm (centimetre(s))  
 /'sentɪmi:tə(z)/ 79  
 ct (cent(s)) /sent(s)/ 79  
  
 CV (curriculum vitae)  
 /sɪ: 'vi:/ 79  
 cabinet /'kæbɪnət/ 34  
 calf /kɑ:f/ 15, 16  
 calf's liver /'kɑ:fs ,lɪvə(r)/ 16  
 calm /kɑ:m/ 66  
 camel /'kæml/ 15  
 campaign /kæm'peɪn/ 38  
 can /kæn, kən/ 32  
 can as in trash can /kæn/ 80  
 can you make it?  
 /kən ju: 'meɪk ɪt/ 61  
 canal /kə'næl/ 12  
 cancel /'kænsəl/ 22  
 cancer /'kænsə(r)/ 37  
 candidate  
 /'kændɪdət, -deɪt/ 49, 51  
 candle /'kændl/ 31  
 candlestick /'kændlstɪk/ 31  
 candy /'kændi/ 80  
 can't bear /kɑ:nt 'beə(r)/ 62  
 can't stand /kɑ:nt 'stænd/ 62  
 cap /kæp/ 23  
 capable /'keɪpəbl/ 71  
 capacity /kə'pæsəti/ 45  
 capital /'kæptɪl/ 55  
 capital letter /kæptɪl 'letə(r)/ 4  
 capsize /kæp'saɪz/ 12  
 captain /'kæptɪn/ 45  
 capture /'kæptʃə(r)/ 39  
 cardboard /'kɑ:dbɔ:d/ 31  
 care about /'keə ə ,baʊt/ 71  
 care for /'keə ,fɔ:(r), fə(r)/ 25, 52  
 career /kə'riə(r)/ 52  
 careful /'keəfl/ 67, 73  
 carefully /'keəfəli/ 49  
 careless /'keələs/ 73  
 cargo ship /'kɑ:gəʊ ,ʃɪp/ 12  
 carnival /'kɑ:nɪvl/ 48  
 carp /kɑ:p/ 16  
 carpenter /'kɑ:pəntə(r)/ 52  
 carry on /kəri 'ɒn/ 75  
 carry out /kəri 'aʊt/ 11  
 case /keɪs/ 57  
 case as in in case /keɪs/ 67, 68  
 cash flow /'kæʃ ,fləʊ/ 55  
 cash flow problem  
 /'kæʃ ,fləʊ ,prɒbləm/ 55  
 catalogue /'kætəlɒg/ 47  
 catch (= find and hold)  
 /kætʃ/ 36  
 catch (= hear/understand)  
 /kætʃ/ 32  
 cattle /kætl/ 15  
 cause n /kɔ:z/ 12  
 cause v /kɔ:z/ 12, 24  
 caution /'kɔ:ʃn/ 67  
 cave /keɪv/ 12  
 ceasefire /'si:sfaɪə(r)/ 39  
 celebrate /'selɪbreɪt/ 10  
 celery /'seləri/ 16  
 cellar /'selə(r)/ 30  
 cellist /'tʃelɪst/ 44  
 cello /'tʃeləʊ/ 44  
 cellphone /'selfəʊn/ 80  
 cemetery /'semətəri/ 10  
 cent /sent/ 79  
 centilitre /'sentɪli:tə(r)/ 79  
 centimetre /'sentɪmi:tə(r)/ 79  
 centre /'sentə(r)/ 33  
 ceremony /'serəməni/ 10  
 challenge n /'tʃælɪndʒ/ 53  
 challenging /'tʃælɪndʒɪŋ/ 53  
 championship  
 /'tʃæmpɪənʃɪp/ 45  
 chance (= opportunity)  
 /tʃɑ:ns/ 1, 50  
 chance (= possibility)  
 /tʃɑ:ns/ 59  
 change /tʃeɪndʒ/ 18  
 chapter /'tʃæptə(r)/ 47  
 charge as in in charge  
 /tʃɑ:ʒ/ 53, 71  
 charge v /tʃɑ:ʒ/ 36  
 chat /tʃæt/ 1  
 cheat v, n /tʃi:t/ 49  
 check-up /'tʃek ,ʌp/ 24  
 cheerful /'tʃi:fl/ 6  
 cheers /tʃiəz/ 77  
 chew /tʃu:/ 24  
 chickpeas /'tʃɪkpi:z/ 16  
 chilly /'tʃɪli/ 13  
 chimney /'tʃɪmni/ 30  
 choice /tʃɔɪs/ 10, 64  
 choose /tʃu:z/ 3, 10  
 chop /tʃɒp/ 17  
 circle n /'sɜ:kl/ 31  
 circle v /'sɜ:kl/ 11  
 circuit /'sɜ:kɪt/ 45  
 circular /'sɜ:kjələ(r)/ 31  
 city as in inner city /'sɪti/ 29  
 civil ceremony  
 /sɪvl 'serəməni/ 10  
 civil servant /sɪvl 'sɜ:vənt/ 52  
 civil service /sɪvl 'sɜ:vɪs/ 52  
 civil war /sɪvl 'wɔ:(r)/ 39  
 claim n /kleɪm/ 41, 66  
 claim v /kleɪm/ 41  
 clam /klæm/ 16  
 clash n, v /klæʃ/ 41  
 clean-shaven /kli:n 'ʃeɪvn/ 5



- cleaner *as in* vacuum cleaner  
/'kli:nə(r)/ 27
- clear /kliə(r)/ 2
- clerical /'klerɪkl/ 53
- clerk /kla:k/ 53
- cliff /klɪf/ 12
- climate /'klaɪmət/ 13
- close /kləʊs/ 21
- close by /,kləʊs 'baɪ/ 78
- close friend /,kləʊs 'frend/ 8
- closet /'kləʊzɪt/ 80
- cloth /kloth/ 27
- club /klʌb/ 45
- clue *as in* I haven't a clue  
/klu:/ 77
- clutch /klatʃ/ 21
- coach (= vehicle) /kəʊtʃ/ 22
- coach (= person) /kəʊtʃ/ 45
- coast /kəʊst/ 12
- coconut /'kəʊkənʌt/ 16
- cod /kɒd/ 16
- coffin /'kɒfɪn/ 10
- collapse *n, v* /kə'læps/ 14
- collar /'kɒlə(r)/ 23
- collide /kə'laɪd/ 22
- collocation /,kɒlə'keɪʃn/ 3
- colon /'kəʊlən/ 4
- colour /'kʌlə(r)/ 28
- come round /,kʌm 'raʊnd/ 20
- comma /'kɒmə/ 4
- commence /kə'mens/ 77, 78
- commentator  
/'kɒmentətə(r)/ 45
- commit a crime  
/kə,mɪt ə 'kraɪm/ 35
- common /'kɒmən/ 69
- communicate  
/kə'mju:nɪkeɪt/ 49
- community /kə'mju:nəti/ 48
- company /'kʌmpəni/ 56
- compare /kəm'peə(r)/ 60, 74
- comparison /kəm'pærɪsən/ 60
- compete /kəm'pi:t/ 46
- competition /,kɒmpə'tɪʃn/ 46
- competitive /kəm'petətɪv/ 46
- competitor (= sports person)  
/kəm'petɪtə(r)/ 46
- competitor (= rival company)  
/kəm'petɪtə(r)/ 56
- complain /kəm'pleɪn/ 53, 66
- complaint /kəm'pleɪnt/ 53, 66
- completely /kəm'pli:tli/ 60, 76
- complex /'kɒmpleks/ 2
- complicated /'kɒmplɪkətɪd/ 2
- compose /kəm'pəʊz/ 44
- composer /kəm'pəʊzə(r)/ 44
- compromise *n, v*  
/'kɒmprəmaɪz/ 39
- compulsory /kəm'pʌlsəri/ 64
- concentrate /'kɒnsəntreɪt/ 19
- concerned /kən'sɜ:nd/ 25
- concrete /'kɒŋkri:t/ 31
- conditions /kən'dɪʃnz/ 54
- conductor /kən'dʌktə(r)/ 44
- confirm /kən'fɜ:m/ 11, 51, 61
- confirmation  
/,kɒnfə'meɪʃn/ 11, 51
- conflict /'kɒnflɪkt/ 39
- connect /kə'nekt/ 4
- connecting flight  
/kə,nektɪŋ 'flaɪt/ 22
- conscious /'kɒnʃəs/ 20
- consequently  
/'kɒnsɪkwəntli/ 68
- consider /kən'sɪdə(r)/ 63, 66
- considerable /kən'sɪdərəbl/ 14
- consideration  
/kən,sɪdə'reɪʃn/ 66
- consist /kən'sɪst/ 38
- constituency  
/kən'stɪtjuənsi/ 38
- construct (= make a sentence)  
/kən'strʌkt/ 1
- construct (= build)  
/kən'strʌkt/ 45
- construction (= sentence)  
/kən'strʌkʃn/ 1
- construction (= building)  
/kən'strʌkʃn/ 45
- consultant /kən'sʌltənt/ 25
- contact *v* /'kɒntækt/ 51
- contact lenses  
/'kɒntækt ,lenzɪz/ 5
- contain /kən'teɪn/ 2
- contemporary  
/kən'temprəri/ 69
- contest /'kɒntest/ 46, 48
- context /'kɒntekst/ 1
- continuous assessment  
/kən,tɪnjuəs ə'sesmənt/ 50
- contract /'kɒntrækt/ 57
- contrast *n* /'kɒntrə:st/ 68
- contrast *v* /kən'trə:st/ 68
- control *as in* in control  
/kən'trəʊl/ 39
- convenient /kən'vi:nɪənt/ 29
- conversation /,kɒnvə'seɪʃn/ 1
- convert /kən'vɜ:t/ 30
- convinced /kən'vɪnst/ 76
- cookie /'kʊki/ 80
- cope /kəʊp/ 71
- corner /'kɔ:nə(r)/ 33
- corridor /'kɒrɪdɔ:(r)/ 30
- cost a fortune  
/kɒst ə 'fɔ:ʃtʃu:n/ 18
- costs *as in* operating costs  
/kɒsts/ 55
- costume /'kɒstju:m/ 48
- cotton /'kɒtn/ 23, 26
- couple /'kʌpl/ 10
- court (for tennis, badminton, etc.) /kɔ:t/ 45
- court *as in* go to court /kɔ:t/ 36
- courtroom /'kɔ:tru:m/ 36
- cover *n* /'kʌvə(r)/ 47
- cover *v* /'kʌvə(r)/ 20
- cow /kaʊ/ 15
- crab /kræb/ 16
- cracked /krækt/ 26
- cramped /kræmpt/ 69
- crash /kræʃ/ 22
- crazy /'kreɪzi/ 6
- crazy about /'kreɪzi ə,baut/ 62
- creamy /'kri:mi/ 73
- create /kri'eɪt/ 43
- creature /'kri:tʃə(r)/ 15
- cremate /krə'meɪt/ 10
- cremation /krə'meɪʃn/ 10
- crime /kraɪm/ 35
- criminal /'krɪmɪnl/ 35
- crisis /'kraɪsɪs/ 39
- critical (= dangerous)  
/'krɪtɪkl/ 39
- critical (of sth/sb) /'krɪtɪkl/ 46
- criticize /'krɪtɪsaɪz/ 46
- crops /krɒps/ 14
- cross /krɒs/ 67
- crowd /kraʊd/ 45
- crowded /'kraʊdɪd/ 69
- crucial /'kru:ʃl/ 14, 57
- cruel /kru:əl/ 73
- cruelty /'kru:əlti/ 73
- cry /krai/ 34
- cultural /'kʌltʃərəl/ 41
- culture /'kʌltʃə(r)/ 41
- curious /'kjʊəriəs/ 69
- current affairs  
/,kʌrənt ə'feəz/ 41
- currently /'kʌrəntli/ 30
- curriculum vitae  
/kə,rɪkjələm 'vi:taɪ/ 79
- curved /kɜ:vɪd/ 31
- cut *n* /kʌt/ 20
- cut *v* /kʌt/ 28
- cut down /kʌt 'daʊn/ 17
- cycling /'saɪklɪŋ/ 46



DVD /diːˈviːdiː/ 79  
 daily /ˈdeɪli/ 41  
 damage *n, v* /ˈdæmɪdʒ/ 14  
 damp /dæmp/ 32  
 danger /ˈdæŋdʒə(r)/ 67  
 dark /dɑːk/ 33  
 dark-skinned /ˈdɑːk ˈskɪnd/ 5  
 dash /dæʃ/ 4  
 data /ˈdɜːtə/ 58  
 datebook /ˈdɜːtbʊk/ 80  
 day return /ˈdeɪ rɪˈtʃn/ 22  
 day trip /ˈdeɪ ˈtrɪp/ 22  
 dead /ded/ 10  
 deaf /def/ 37  
 deal with /ˈdiːl wɪð/ 53  
 death /deθ/ 10  
 death toll /ˈdeθ ˌtɒl/ 14  
 debate /diˈbeɪt/ 50  
 debt /det/ 18  
 decline *n, v* /diˈklaɪn/ 41  
 decorate /ˈdekəreɪt/ 26  
 decrease *v* /diˈkriːs/ 37  
 decrease *n* /ˈdiːkriːs/ 37  
 deep /diːp/ 12, 45  
 deep sleep /ˈdiːp ˈsliːp/ 19  
 defeat *n* /diˈfiːt/ 46  
 defeat *v* /diˈfiːt/ 40, 46  
 defence *as in* the defence  
 /diˈfens/ 36  
 defend /diˈfend/ 36  
 defendant /diˈfendənt/ 36  
 define /diˈfaɪn/ 3, 73  
 definitely /ˈdefɪnətli/ 59, 65  
 definitely not  
 /ˈdefɪnətli ˈnɒt/ 65  
 definition /ˌdefɪˈnɪʃn/ 3, 73  
 delayed /diˈleɪd/ 22  
 deli /ˈdeli/ 79  
 deliberately /diˈlɪbəreɪtli/ 71  
 delicatessen /ˌdelɪkəˈtesn/ 79  
 delighted /diˈlaɪtɪd/ 7  
 demand /diˈmɑːnd/ 58  
 demonstrate /ˈdemənstreɪt/ 41  
 demonstration  
 /ˌdemənˈstreɪʃn/ 41  
 denim skirt /ˌdenɪm ˈskɜːt/ 23  
 dental surgery  
 /ˈdentl ˌsɜːdʒəri/ 24  
 deny /diˈnaɪ/ 74  
 department /diˈpɑːtmənt/ 53  
 depend /diˈpend/ 8, 71  
 dependent /diˈpendənt/ 63  
 deposit /diˈpɒzɪt/ 78  
 depressed /diˈprest/ 37  
 depressing /diˈpresɪŋ/ 29  
 depression /diˈpreʃn/ 37

depth /depθ/ 12, 45  
 deserted /dɪˈzɜːtɪd/ 69  
 desperately /ˈdespəreɪtli/ 76  
 despite /diˈspaɪt/ 68  
 destroy /diˈstrɔɪ/ 4  
 destruction /diˈstrʌkʃn/ 14  
 detail *as in* in detail /ˈdiːteɪl/ 2  
 details /ˈdiːteɪlz/ 4  
 determined /diˈtɜːmɪnd/ 39  
 detest /diˈtest/ 62  
 develop (= grow/increase)  
 /diˈveləp/ 20  
 develop (a film) /diˈveləp/ 43  
 devote /diˈvəʊt/ 49  
 diabetes /ˌdaɪəˈbiːtiːz/ 37  
 diabetic /ˌdaɪəˈbetɪk/ 37  
 diagonal /ˌdaɪəˈɡɒnl/ 31  
 diary /ˈdaɪəri/ 80  
 die /daɪ/ 10  
 diet /ˈdaɪət/ 17  
 different /ˈdɪfrənt/ 60  
 digital camera  
 /ˌdɪdʒɪtl ˈkæməərə/ 43  
 direct /dəˈrekt, dɪ-, daɪ-/ 42  
 director  
 /dəˈrektə(r), dɪ-, daɪ-/ 42  
 dirt /dɜːt/ 27  
 dirty /ˈdɜːti/ 27  
 disability /ˌdɪsəˈbɪləti/ 37  
 disabled /ˌdɪsˈeɪbld/ 37  
 disadvantage  
 /ˌdɪsədˈvɑːntɪdʒ/ 29  
 disappear /ˌdɪsəˈpiə(r)/ 13, 32,  
 73  
 disappearance  
 /ˌdɪsəˈpiərəns/ 73  
 disappointing  
 /ˌdɪsəˈpɔɪntɪŋ/ 42, 69  
 disappointed /ˌdɪsəˈpɔɪntɪd/ 69  
 disapprove /ˌdɪsəˈpruːv/ 71  
 disaster /dɪˈzɑːstə(r)/ 14, 59,  
 77  
 discount /ˈdɪskaʊnt/ 18  
 discover /dɪˈskʌvə(r)/ 11, 40  
 discovery /dɪˈskʌvəri/ 11, 40  
 discuss /dɪˈskʌs/ 1  
 discussion /dɪˈskʌʃn/ 1  
 disease /diˈziːz/ 13, 37  
 disgusted /ˌdɪsˈɡʌstɪd/ 69  
 disgusting /ˌdɪsˈɡʌstɪŋ/ 42, 69  
 dish /dɪʃ/ 17  
 dishonest /ˌdɪsˈɒnɪst/ 6  
 dislike /ˌdɪsˈlaɪk/ 62  
 disloyal /ˌdɪsˈlɔɪəl/ 8, 72  
 dismiss /dɪsˈmɪs/ 53  
 disobedient /ˌdɪsəˈbiːdiənt/ 64

disobey /ˌdɪsəˈbeɪ/ 64  
 display *as in* on display  
 /dɪˈspleɪ/ 43  
 disqualify /ˌdɪsˈkwɒlɪfaɪ/ 49  
 dissatisfaction  
 /ˌdɪsˌsætɪsˈfækʃn/ 66  
 dissatisfied /ˌdɪsˈsætɪsfaid/ 66,  
 69  
 distance /ˈdɪstəns/ 33  
 district /ˈdɪstrɪkt/ 29  
 diversify /ˌdaɪvəˈsɪfaɪ/ 57  
 divide /diˈvaɪd/ 4  
 dizzy /ˈdɪzi/ 20  
 do overtime  
 /ˌduː ˈəʊvətaɪm/ 54  
 do research  
 /ˌduː rɪˈsɜːtʃ, ˈriːsɜːtʃ/ 50, 57  
 do revision /ˌduː rɪˈvɪʒn/ 1  
 do up /ˌduː ˈʌp/ 72  
 do the washing up  
 /ˌduː ðə ˈwɒʃɪŋ ˈʌp/ 27  
 doctor's surgery  
 /ˈdɒktəz ˌsɜːdʒəri/ 24  
 donkey /ˈdɒŋki/ 15  
 don't bother  
 /ˌdəʊnt ˈbɒðə(r)/ 66  
 door handle /ˈdɔː ˌhændl/ 21  
 doubt /daʊt/ 59  
 doubt *as in* I doubt it /daʊt/ 65  
 downturn /ˈdaʊntɜːn/ 58  
 dozen /ˈdɒzn/ 39  
 drag /dræg/ 34  
 drama /ˈdrɑːmə/ 42  
 dramatic /drəˈmætɪk/ 37, 42  
 draw /drɔː/ 33  
 drawback /ˈdrɔːbæk/ 29  
 drawing /ˈdrɔːɪŋ/ 33, 43  
 dread /dred/ 24  
 dreadful /ˈdredfl/ 66  
 dream /driːm/ 19  
 dress /dres/ 23  
 dress up /ˌdres ˈʌp/ 48  
 dressing /ˈdresɪŋ/ 20  
 dries up /ˌdraɪz ˈʌp/ 12  
 drill /drɪl/ 26  
 drink a toast  
 /ˌdrɪŋk ə ˈtəʊst/ 10  
 drive /draɪv/ 30  
 driver *as in* racing driver  
 /ˈdraɪvə(r)/ 45  
 drizzle /ˈdrɪzl/ 13  
 drizzling /ˈdrɪzlɪŋ/ 13  
 drop *n, v* /drɒp/ 55  
 drop (of rain) /drɒp/ 13  
 drought /draʊt/ 14  
 drown /draʊn/ 12



drugstore /'drʌgstə:(r)/ 80  
 drummer /'drʌmə(r)/ 44  
 dry up /,draɪ 'ʌp/ 12  
 duck /dʌk/ 16  
 due (= expected) /dju:/ 22  
 due to /'dju: tə/ 68  
 dull /dʌl/ 6  
 during /'dʒʊərɪŋ/ 70  
 dust n, v /dʌst/ 27  
 dustbin /'dʌstbɪn/ 80  
 dusty /'dʌsti/ 27  
 duty /'dju:ti/ 53  
  
 EU (European Union)  
   /ɪ: 'ju:/ 79  
 eagle /'i:gl/ 15  
 earrings /'ɪərɪŋz/ 23  
 earth /ɜ:θ/ 11  
 earthquake /'ɜ:θkweɪk/ 14  
 easy-going /ɪ:zɪ 'ɡəʊɪŋ/ 6  
 economical /ɪ:kə'nɒmɪkl/ 73  
 edge /edʒ/ 70  
 edit /'edɪt/ 41, 42  
 editing /'edɪtɪŋ/ 42  
 editor /'edɪtə(r)/ 41  
 effect /ɪ'fekt/ 13  
 effective /ɪ'fektɪv/ 2, 69  
 effectively /ɪ'fektɪvli/ 2  
 efficient /ɪ'fɪʃnt/ 69  
 effort /'efət/ 56  
 elbow /'elbəʊ/ 20  
 elect /ɪ'lekt/ 38  
 election /ɪ'lekʃn/ 38  
 electrical /ɪ'lektrɪkl/ 52  
 electrician /ɪ,lek'trɪʃn/ 52  
 elegant /'elɪɡənt/ 23  
 elephant /'elɪfənt/ 15  
 elevator /'elɪvətə(r)/ 80  
 elsewhere /,els'weə(r)/ 53  
 embarrassed /ɪm'bærəst/ 69  
 embarrassing /ɪm'bærəsɪŋ/ 69  
 emergency services  
   /ɪ'mɜ:dʒənsɪ ,sɜ:vɪsɪz/ 22  
 emigrate /'emɪɡreɪt/ 9  
 emotion /ɪ'məʊʃn/ 7  
 emotional /ɪ'məʊʃənl/ 7  
 emphasis /'emfəsɪs/ 3  
 emphasize /'emfəsəɪz/ 3  
 employ /ɪm'plɔɪ/ 56  
 employee /ɪm'plɔɪi/ 56  
 employer /ɪm'plɔɪə(r)/ 56  
 enable /ɪ'neɪbl/ 74  
 enclose /m'kleʊz/ 78  
 encourage /ɪn'kʌrɪdʒ/ 2, 74  
 encouragement  
   /ɪn'kʌrɪdʒmənt/ 2

encouraging /ɪn'kʌrɪdʒɪŋ/ 2  
 encyclopedia  
   /ɪn,sʌɪklə'pi:diə/ 47  
 end as in at/in the end  
   /end/ 71  
 end up /,end 'ʌp/ 22  
 enemy /'enəmi/ 39  
 energetic /,enə'dʒetɪk/ 6  
 energy /'enədʒi/ 6  
 engine /'endʒɪn/ 21  
 engineering /,endʒɪ'nɪərɪŋ/ 52  
 enormous /ɪ'nɔ:məs/ 30  
 enough /ɪ'nʌf/ 25  
 enquiry /ɪn'kwærɪ/ 53  
 entertainer /,entə'teɪnə(r)/ 48  
 entertaining /,entə'teɪnɪŋ/ 42  
 entertainment  
   /,entə'teɪnmənt/ 48  
 enthusiasm /ɪn'θju:ziæzəm/ 2  
 enthusiastic /ɪn,θju:zi'æstɪk/ 2  
 entitled /ɪn'taɪtlɪd/ 54  
 entire /ɪn'taɪə(r)/ 41  
 entry /'entri/ 3  
 envious /'enviəs/ 7  
 environment  
   /ɪn'vaɪrənmənt/ 13  
 environmentalist  
   /ɪn,vaɪrən'mentəlɪst/ 13  
 equivalent /ɪ'kwɪvələnt/ 42  
 erupt /ɪ'rʌpt/ 14  
 eruption /ɪ'rʌpʃn/ 14  
 especially /ɪ'speʃəli/ 78  
 essential /ɪ'senʃl/ 49, 69  
 establish /ɪ'stæblɪʃ/ 40  
 establishment  
   /ɪ'stæblɪʃmənt/ 40  
 estate agent  
   /ɪ'steɪt ,eɪdʒənt/ 52  
 European Union  
   /ˌjʊərə'pi:ən 'ju:niən/ 79  
 evacuate /ɪ'vækjuet/ 14  
 evacuation /ɪ,vækju'eɪʃn/ 14  
 evaluate /ɪ'væljuet/ 58  
 evaluation /ɪ,vælju'eɪʃn/ 58  
 even /'i:vn/ 33  
 even as in break even /'i:vn/ 56  
 even though /'i:vn ,ðəʊ/ 68  
 eventually /ɪ'ventʃʊəli/ 70  
 everyday /'evrɪdeɪ/ 2  
 evidence /'evɪdəns/ 36  
 exactly the same  
   /ɪɡ,zæktli ðə 'seɪm/ 60  
 examine /ɪɡ'zæmɪn/ 24  
 examiner /ɪɡ'zæmɪnə(r)/ 49  
 example as in for example  
   /ɪɡ'zɑ:mpl/ 3

except /ɪk'sept/ 60  
 exclamation mark  
   /ɪ,eksklə'meɪʃn ,mɑ:k/ 4  
 exercise /'eksəsaɪz/ 17  
 exhausted /ɪɡ'zɔ:stɪd/ 19  
 exhibition /,eksɪ'bɪʃn/ 43  
 exist /ɪɡ'zɪst/ 11  
 existence /ɪɡ'zɪstəns/ 11  
 expand /ɪk'spænd/ 2  
 expect /ɪk'spekt/ 59, 65  
 expect as in I expect so  
   /ɪk'spekt/ 65  
 expect a baby/child  
   /ɪk,spekt ə 'berbi, 'tʃaɪld/ 5  
 expectancy as in life expectancy  
   /ɪk'spektənsɪ/ 15  
 expected /ɪk'spektɪd/ 69  
 experience /ɪk'spiəriəns/ 52  
 experiment n /ɪk'sperɪmənt/ 11  
 experiment v /ɪk'sperɪmənt/ 1  
 expert /'eksɜ:pɜ:t/ 43, 66  
 explain /ɪk'spleɪn/ 1  
 explanation /,eksplə'neɪʃn/ 1  
 explode /ɪk'spləʊd/ 39  
 exploit /ɪk'splɔɪt/ 57  
 exploitation /,eksplɔɪ'teɪʃn/ 57  
 exploration /,eksplə'reɪʃn/ 11  
 explore /ɪk'splɔ:(r)/ 11  
 explosion /ɪk'spləʊʒn/ 39  
 express /ɪk'spres/ 2  
 expression /ɪk'spreʃn/ 3  
 expressway /eks'presweɪ/ 80  
 extend /ɪk'stend/ 73  
 extension /ɪk'stenʃn/ 73  
 extent as in to some / a certain  
   extent /ɪk'stent/ 76  
 extinguish /ɪk'stɪŋɡwɪʃ/ 75  
 extraordinary /ɪk'stro:dnri/ 42  
 extreme /ɪk'stri:m/ 13  
 eye as in keep an eye on /aɪ/ 77  
 eyebrows /'aɪbrəʊz/ 5  
  
 fabric /'fæbrɪk/ 23  
 face (= do sth about) /feɪs/ 38  
 face (= look towards) /feɪs/ 70  
 face-to-face /,feɪs tə 'feɪs/ 53  
 fact as in in fact /fækt/ 65, 76  
 fact as in in (actual) fact  
   /fækt/ 76  
 factor /'fæktə(r)/ 57  
 fail /feɪl/ 56  
 faint /feɪnt/ 20  
 fair /feə(r)/ 69, 72  
 fairly /'feəli/ 76  
 faithfully as in yours faithfully  
   /'feɪθfəli/ 78



- fall /fɔ:l/ 13, 55  
 fall asleep /,fɔ:l ə'sli:p/ 19  
 fall out with /,fɔ:l 'aʊt wið/ 8  
 famine /'fæmɪn/ 13  
 fan /fæn/ 42, 45  
 fancy (= find sb attractive) /'fænsi/ 59  
 fancy (= want sth) /'fænsi/ 77  
 far-fetched /,fɑ: 'fetʃt/ 11  
 fascinating /'fæsɪneɪtɪŋ/ 47  
 fashionable /'fæʃnəbl/ 23, 73  
 fast asleep /,fɑ:st ə'sli:p/ 19  
 fasten /'fɑ:sn/ 72  
 fattening /'fætɪnɪŋ/ 17  
 fattish /'fætɪʃ/ 5  
 faucet /'fəʊset/ 80  
 fault /fɔ:lt/ 63  
 faulty /'fɔ:lti/ 26  
 favour *as in* in favour of /'feɪvə(r)/ 63  
 favourite /'feɪvərɪt/ 46  
 fear *n, v* /fɪə(r)/ 14  
 feathers /'feðəz/ 15  
 feature /'fi:tʃə(r)/ 30  
 fed up /,fed 'ʌp/ 7  
 fed up with /,fed 'ʌp wið/ 66  
 feedback /'fi:dbæk/ 51, 57  
 feel /fi:l/ 32  
 feel like (doing sth) /'fi:l ,laɪk/ 77  
 feelings *as in* mixed feelings /'fi:lɪŋz/ 69  
 fees /fi:z/ 50  
 female /'fi:meɪl/ 5, 15  
 fence /fens/ 31  
 fencing /'fensɪŋ/ 46  
 fennel /'fenl/ 16  
 festival /'festɪvl/ 48  
 fetch /fetʃ/ 77  
 fiction /'fɪkʃn/ 47  
 fig /fɪg/ 16  
 fight *n, v* /faɪt/ 39  
 fighter /'faɪtə(r)/ 39  
 figure /'fɪgə(r)/ 5, 23  
 filling /'fɪlɪŋ/ 24  
 film (for camera) /fɪlm/ 43  
 film (at cinema) /fɪlm/ 80  
 filthy /'fɪlθi/ 29  
 final /'faɪnl/ 46  
 finance *n* /'fæməns/ 52, 55  
 finance *v* /'fæməns/ 55  
 financial /fai'nænʃl/ 55  
 find a solution /,faɪnd ə sə'lju:ʃn/ 53  
 fine *n, v* /faɪn/ 36  
 fingerprints /'fɪŋgəprɪnts/ 36  
 fire *n* /'faɪə(r)/ 67  
 fire *v* /'faɪə(r)/ 53  
 fireworks /'faɪəwɜ:ks/ 48  
 firm /fɜ:m/ 69  
 first *as in* at first /fɜ:st/ 71  
 fix /fiks/ 26  
 fizzy drink /,fɪzi 'drɪŋk/ 17  
 flag /flæg/ 45  
 flash /flæʃ/ 43  
 flautist /'fləʊtɪst/ 44  
 flavour /'fleɪvə(r)/ 32  
 flexibility /,fleksə'bɪləti/ 50  
 flexible /'fleksəbl/ 50  
 float /fləʊt/ 12  
 flood /flʌd/ 12  
 flour /'flaʊə(r)/ 17  
 flow /fləʊ/ 12  
 flu /flu:/ 79  
 fluctuate /'flʌktʃueɪt/ 55  
 fluctuation /,flʌktʃu'eɪʃn/ 55  
 fluent /'flu:ənt/ 2  
 fluently /'flu:əntli/ 2  
 flute /flu:t/ 44  
 fly /flaɪ/ 15  
 focus *n, v* (= attention/attend) /'fəʊkəs/ 38  
 focus *n, v* (in photography) /'fəʊkəs/ 43  
 fold *as in* fold in half/two /fəʊld/ 34  
 follow instructions /,fɒləʊ m'strʌkʃnz/ 49  
 fond /fɒnd/ 62  
 food scare /'fu:d ,skeə(r)/ 41  
 footballer /'fʊtbɔ:lə(r)/ 45  
 for example /fər ɪg'zɑ:mpl/ 3  
 for instance /fər 'ɪnstəns/ 3  
 for sure /fə 'ʃʊə(r)/ 61  
 forbid /fə'bɪd/ 64  
 force /fɔ:s/ 64  
 forecast *n, v* /'fəʊkɑ:st/ 58  
 foreground /'fɔ:graʊnd/ 33  
 foreign /'fɒrən/ 1  
 foreigner /'fɒrənə(r)/ 1  
 formal /'fɔ:ml/ 1  
 fortune *as in* cost a fortune /'fɔ:ʃju:n/ 18  
 forward(s) /'fɔ:wəd(z)/ 20  
 foster parent /'fɒstə ,peərənt/ 9  
 found /faʊnd/ 57  
 founder /'faʊndə(r)/ 57  
 frame /freɪm/ 43  
 free /fri:/ 61  
 freedom /'fri:dəm/ 50  
 freeway /'fri:weɪ/ 80  
 French fries /,frentʃ 'fraɪz/ 80  
 fridge /frɪdʒ/ 79  
 friends *as in* make friends /frendz/ 8  
 friendly /'frendli/ 8  
 friendship /'frendʃɪp/ 8  
 fringe /frɪndʒ/ 28  
 frog /frɒg/ 15  
 from time to time /frəm ,taɪm tə 'taɪm/ 70  
 front /frʌnt/ 70  
 frost /frɒst/ 13  
 frosty /'frɒsti/ 13  
 frustrating /fra'streɪtɪŋ/ 2  
 frustration /fra'streɪʃn/ 2  
 fry /fraɪ/ 17  
 frying pan /'fraɪnɪŋ ,pæn/ 17  
 full stop /,fʊl 'stɒp/ 4  
 funeral /'fju:nərəl/ 10  
 fur /fɜ:(r)/ 15  
 furious /'fjʊəriəs/ 7  
 further /'fɜ:ðə(r)/ 78  
 further to /'fɜ:ðə tə/ 78  
 furthermore /,fɜ:ðə'mɔ:(r)/ 68  
 g (gram(s)) /græm(z)/ 79  
 gm (gram(s)) /græm(z)/ 79  
 gain /geɪn/ 11, 56, 40  
 gale /geɪl/ 13  
 gap in the market /,gæp ɪn ðə 'mɑ:kɪt/ 57  
 garbage /'gɑ:bɪdʒ/ 80  
 garbage can /'gɑ:bɪdʒ ,kæn/ 80  
 gas (= e.g. oxygen) /gæs/ 13  
 gas (= gasoline) /gæs/ 80  
 gasoline /'gæsəli:n/ 80  
 gather /'gæðə(r)/ 58  
 gear lever /'gɪə ,li:və(r)/ 21  
 gear stick /'gɪə ,stɪk/ 21  
 general *as in* general /'dʒenərəl/ 71  
 generally /'dʒenərəli/ 71, 76  
 generation /,dʒenə'reɪʃn/ 9  
 generosity /,dʒenə'rɒsəti/ 6  
 generous /'dʒenərəs/ 6  
 gentle /'dʒentl/ 73  
 gentleness /'dʒentlnəs/ 73  
 get (= fetch) /get/ 77  
 get (= receive) /get/ 36, 42  
 get better /,get 'betə(r)/ 2  
 get divorced / a divorce /,get drɪ'vɔ:st, ə drɪ'vɔ:s/ 9  
 get dressed /,get 'drest/ 72  
 get held up /,get ,held 'ʌp/ 22  
 get in /,get 'ɪn/ 22



get on /,get 'ɒn/ 75  
 get on with /,get 'ɒn ,wɪð/ 75  
 get on sb's nerves  
     /,get ,ɒn ,... 'nɜːvz/ 66  
 get over /,get 'əʊvə(r)/ 25, 75  
 get rid of /,get 'rɪd əv/ 71  
 get sth done /,get ,... 'dʌn/ 28  
 get stuck /,get 'stʌk/ 22  
 get the sack /,get ðə 'sæk/ 53  
 get through /,get 'θruː/ 75  
 get time off /,get ,tʌm 'ɒf/ 54  
 get to know /,get tə 'nəʊ/ 8  
 get to like /,get tə 'laɪk/ 62  
 get together /,get tə'geðə(r)/ 8, 61  
 get undressed  
     /,get ʌn'drest/ 72  
 gift /ɡɪft/ 47  
 gist /dʒɪst/ 1  
 give it a trim  
     /,ɡɪv ɪt ə 'trɪm/ 28  
 give sb a hand  
     /,ɡɪv ,... ə 'hænd/ 77  
 give sb advice  
     /,ɡɪv ,... əd'vaɪs/ 51  
 give sb feedback  
     /,ɡɪv ,... 'fiːdbæk/ 51  
 give sb the sack  
     /,ɡɪv ,... ðə 'sæk/ 53  
 give sth away  
     /,ɡɪv ,... ə'wei/ 75  
 give sth out /,ɡɪv ,... 'aʊt/ 75  
 give up /,ɡɪv 'ʌp/ 39, 75  
 glad /ɡlæd/ 69  
 glance /ɡlɑːns/ 32  
 global warming  
     /,ɡləʊbl 'wɔːmɪŋ/ 13  
 glue /ɡluː/ 26  
 go as in to go /ɡəʊ/ 70  
 go bald /,ɡəʊ 'bɔːld/ 5  
 go blind /,ɡəʊ 'blaɪnd/ 37  
 go deaf /,ɡəʊ 'def/ 37  
 go down /,ɡəʊ 'daʊn/ 55, 75  
 go grey /,ɡəʊ 'ɡreɪ/ 5  
 go into hospital  
     /,ɡəʊ ,ɪntə 'hɒspɪtl/ 25  
 go off (= ring) /,ɡəʊ 'ɒf/ 19  
 go off (= explode) /,ɡəʊ 'ɒf/ 39  
 go on (with sth) /,ɡəʊ 'ɒn/ 75  
 go on a diet  
     /,ɡəʊ ,ɒn ə 'daɪət/ 17  
 go on strike  
     /,ɡəʊ ,ɒn 'straɪk/ 54  
 go out of business  
     /,ɡəʊ ,aʊt əv 'bɪznəs/ 56

go out with /,ɡəʊ 'aʊt wɪð/ 8  
 go over /,ɡəʊ 'əʊvə(r)/ 75  
 go smoothly /,ɡəʊ 'smuːðli/ 65  
 go through /,ɡəʊ 'θruː/ 1  
 go to court /,ɡəʊ tə 'kɔːt/ 36  
 go to hospital  
     /,ɡəʊ tə 'hɒspɪtl/ 25  
 go to jail /,ɡəʊ tə 'dʒeɪl/ 35  
 go to prison /,ɡəʊ tə 'prɪzn/ 35  
 go to sleep /,ɡəʊ tə 'sliːp/ 19  
 go up /,ɡəʊ 'ʌp/ 55, 75  
 go white /,ɡəʊ 'waɪt/ 5  
 go wrong /,ɡəʊ 'rɒŋ/ 8, 65  
 goal /ɡəʊl/ 2, 38, 58  
 goat /ɡəʊt/ 15  
 gold /ɡəʊld/ 31  
 golfer /'ɡɒlfə(r)/ 45  
 good chance /'ɡʊd ,tʃɑːns/ 59  
 good for you /'ɡʊd fə ,juː/ 17  
 goods /ɡʊdz/ 56  
 gorilla /ɡə'rɪlə/ 15  
 govern /'ɡʌvən/ 38  
 government /'ɡʌvnmənt/ 38  
 grab /ɡræb/ 32  
 gradual /'ɡrædʒuəl/ 13, 55  
 gradually /'ɡrædʒuəli/ 13, 55  
 graduate n /'ɡrædʒjuət/ 50  
 graduate v /'ɡrædʒjuet/ 50  
 graffiti /ɡrə'fiːti/ 29  
 gram /ɡræm/ 79  
 grand /ɡrænd/ 69  
 grapefruit /'ɡreɪfruːt/ 16  
 grateful as in I would be  
     grateful if ... /'ɡreɪtfl/ 78  
 grave /ɡreɪv/ 10  
 gravestone /'ɡreɪvstəʊn/ 10  
 grease /ɡriːs/ 27  
 greasy /'ɡriːsi/ 27  
 greedy /'ɡriːdi/ 60  
 gripping /'ɡrɪpɪŋ/ 42  
 groom /ɡruːm/ 10  
 ground (= earth's surface)  
     /ɡraʊnd/ 14  
 ground (= sports area)  
     /ɡraʊnd/ 45  
 group /ɡruːp/ 44  
 grow /ɡrəʊ/ 55, 56  
 growth /ɡrəʊθ/ 29, 55, 56  
 guarantee /ɡærən'tiː/ 66  
 guess n, v /ɡes/ 1  
 guess as in I guess so /ɡes/ 65  
 guest /ɡest/ 10  
 guilty /'ɡɪlti/ 36  
 guitar /ɡɪ'tɑː(r)/ 44  
 guitarist /ɡɪ'tɑːrɪst/ 44  
 gun /ɡʌn/ 39

gun battle /'ɡʌn ,bætl/ 39  
 gym /dʒɪm/ 79  
 gymnast /'dʒɪmnæst/ 45  
 gymnastics /dʒɪm'næstɪks/ 45, 46  
 habit /'hæbɪt/ 19  
 hair as in lose your hair  
     /hiə(r)/ 5  
 haircut /'heəkʌt/ 28  
 hairdryer /'heədraɪə(r)/ 28  
 hairstyle /'heəstɑɪl/ 28  
 half as in fold in half /hɑːf/ 34  
 half a dozen /hɑːf ə 'dʌzn/ 39  
 half-brother /'hɑːf ,brʌðə(r)/ 9  
 half-sister /'hɑːf ,sɪstə(r)/ 9  
 hall /hɔːl/ 30  
 hall of residence  
     /,hɔːl əv 'rezɪdəns/ 50  
 hammer /'hæmə(r)/ 26  
 hand as in left-hand corner,  
     right-hand side /hænd/ 33  
 hand as in lend sb a hand  
     /hænd/ 77  
 hand as in on the one/other  
     hand /hænd/ 68  
 hand in your notice  
     /,hænd ,ɪn ,joː 'nəʊtɪs/ 53  
 hand sth out  
     /,hænd ,... 'aʊt/ 75  
 handcuffs /'hændkʌfs/ 36  
 handle as in door handle  
     /'hændl/ 21  
 handle v /'hændl/ 53  
 handy /'hændi/ 29  
 hang on /,hæŋ 'ɒn/ 77  
 happy /'hæpi/ 66  
 harbour /'hɑːbə(r)/ 12  
 hardback /'hɑːdbæk/ 47  
 hard-working  
     /,hɑːd 'wɜːkɪŋ/ 6  
 harm n, v /hɑːm/ 15  
 harm v /hɑːm/ 13  
 harmful /'hɑːmfl/ 13, 15, 73  
 harmless /'hɑːmləs/ 15, 73  
 have a chat /hæv ə 'tʃæt/ 1  
 have a debate  
     /,hæv ə dɪ'beɪt/ 50  
 have a haircut  
     /,hæv ə 'heəkʌt/ 28  
 have a lie-in  
     /,hæv ə 'laɪ ,ɪn/ 19  
 have a lot in common  
     /,hæv ə ,lɒt ,ɪn 'kɒmən/ 8  
 have a nap /hæv ə 'næp/ 19



- have a restless night  
/,hæv ə ˌrestləs 'naɪt/ 19
- have a row /,hæv ə 'raʊ/ 8
- have a stroke  
/,hæv ə 'strəʊk/ 37
- have an operation  
/,hæv ən ˌɒpə'reɪʃn/ 25
- have fun /,hæv 'fʌn/ 48
- have no choice  
/,hæv nəʊ 'tʃɔɪs/ 64
- have no intention of doing sth  
/,hæv 'nəʊ ɪn'tenʃn əv  
.../ 65
- have nothing in common  
/,hæv ˌnʌθɪŋ ɪn 'kɒmən/ 8
- have sth done  
/,hæv ... 'dʌn/ 28
- have the right to  
/,hæv ðə 'raɪt tə/ 54
- have time off  
/,hæv ˌtaɪm 'ɒf/ 54
- have toothache  
/,hæv 'tu:θeɪk/ 24
- have your back to sth  
/,hæv ʃɔ: 'bæk tə .../ 70
- headlights /'hedlaɪts/ 21
- headline /'hedlaɪn/ 41
- heal /hi:l/ 20
- heal up /,hi:l 'ʌp/ 20
- health scare /'helθ ˌskeə(r)/ 41
- healthy /'helθi/ 17
- hear /hɪə(r)/ 32
- hear from sb /'hɪə frəm .../ 78
- heart /hɑ:t/ 37
- heart attack /'hɑ:t ə'tæk/ 37
- heart disease /'hɑ:t dɪ'zi:z/ 37
- heartbroken /'hɑ:tbrəʊkən/ 7
- heatwave /'hi:twɛɪv/ 13
- heavy sleeper  
/ˌhevi 'sli:pə(r)/ 19
- heavy traffic /ˌhevi 'træfɪk/ 22
- held up /ˌheld 'ʌp/ 22
- helmet as in safety helmet  
/'helmt/ 57
- herbs /hɜ:bz/ 16
- herd /hɜ:d/ 15
- hesitate /'hezɪteɪt/ 78
- hi /haɪ/ 77
- hide your feelings  
/ˌhaɪd ʃɔ: 'fi:lɪŋz/ 7
- high-heeled /ˌhaɪ 'hi:ld/ 23
- high school /ˌhaɪ 'sku:l/ 80
- high tide /ˌhaɪ 'taɪd/ 12
- highly /'haɪli/ 76
- highway /'haɪweɪ/ 80
- hire a car /ˌhaɪə ə 'kɑ:(r)/ 22
- hit /hɪt/ 14
- hold an election  
/ˌhəʊld ən rɪ'lekʃn/ 38
- hold on /ˌhəʊld 'ɒn/ 77
- hold the record  
/ˌhəʊld ðə'rekɔ:d/ 46
- hole /həʊl/ 26
- home as in at home /həʊm/ 50
- homesick /'həʊmsɪk/ 50
- honest /'ɒnɪst/ 6
- honesty /'ɒnəsti/ 6
- honeymoon /'hʌnɪmu:n/ 10
- hoover /'hu:və(r)/ 27
- hope /həʊp/ 65
- hope as in I hope so/not  
/həʊp/ 65
- horizon /hə'reɪzən/ 12
- horizontal /ˌhɒrɪ'zɒntl/ 31
- hospital /'hɒspɪtl/ 25
- horn /hɔ:n/ 21
- horns /hɔ:nz/ 15
- horse /hɔ:s/ 15
- hour as in rush hour  
/'aʊə(r)/ 22
- how about? /'haʊ əˌbaʊt/ 61
- how are things?  
/'haʊ ə ˌθɪŋz/ 77
- how do you feel about ...?  
/'haʊ də ʃu: ˌfi:l əˌbaʊt  
'.../ 63
- however /haʊ'evə(r)/ 68
- how's it going?  
/ˌhaʊz ɪt 'gəʊɪŋ/ 77
- huge /hju:ʃ/ 18, 30
- human /'hju:mən/ 13
- humid /'hju:mɪd/ 13
- humorous /'hju:mərəs/ 73
- humour as in sense of  
humour /'hju:mə(r)/ 6
- hunt /hʌnt/ 15
- hurricane /'hʌrɪkən/ 14
- hurry /'hʌrɪ/ 29
- hurry as in in a hurry  
/'hʌrɪ/ 71
- hurry up /ˌhʌrɪ 'ʌp/ 77
- hurt sb's feelings  
/ˌhɜ:t ... 'fi:lɪŋz/ 7
- husband /'hʌzbənd/ 10
- hyphen /'haɪfən/ 4
- ID card (identity card)  
/ˌaɪ 'di: ˌkɑ:d/ 79
- ISP (internet service provider)  
/ˌaɪ ˌes 'pi:/ 79
- IT (information technology)  
/ˌaɪ 'ti:/ 79
- i.e. /ˌaɪ 'i:/ 52
- I assume so  
/ˌaɪ ə'sju:m ˌsəʊ/ 65
- I'd better be off  
/ˌaɪd ˌbetə bi 'ɒf/ 77
- I don't think so  
/ˌaɪ ˌdɔʊnt 'θɪŋk ˌsəʊ/ 65
- I doubt it /ˌaɪ ˌdaʊt ɪt/ 65
- I expect so  
/ˌaɪ ɪk'spekt ˌsəʊ/ 65
- I guess so /ˌaɪ ˌges ˌsəʊ/ 65
- I haven't a clue  
/ˌaɪ ˌhævnt ə 'klu:/ 77
- I hope not /ˌaɪ ˌhəʊp ˌnɒt/ 65
- I hope so /ˌaɪ ˌhəʊp ˌsəʊ/ 65
- I imagine so  
/ˌaɪ ɪ'mædʒɪn ˌsəʊ/ 65
- I suppose so  
/ˌaɪ sə'pəʊz ˌsəʊ/ 65
- I think so /ˌaɪ 'θɪŋk ˌsəʊ/ 65
- I think ... /ˌaɪ 'θɪŋk/ 63
- I think that ...  
/ˌaɪ 'θɪŋk ðæt/ 63
- I would appreciate it if ...  
/ˌaɪ ˌwʊd ə'pri:ʃɪet ɪt ɪf/ 78
- I would be grateful if ...  
/ˌaɪ ˌwʊd ˌbi ˌɡreɪtfl ɪf/ 78
- ideal /aɪ'di:əl/ 29
- identical /aɪ'dentɪkl/ 60
- identify /aɪ'dentɪfaɪ/ 1
- identity /aɪ'dentəti/ 79
- idiom /'ɪdiəm/ 3, 77
- idiomatic /ˌɪdiə'mætɪk/ 77
- if you ask me ....  
/ɪf ʃu: ˌɑ:sk 'mi:/ 63
- ignition /ɪɡ'nɪʃn/ 21
- ignore /ɪɡ'nɔ:(r)/ 33, 58
- illegal /ɪ'li:ɡl/ 35
- illegible /ɪ'ledʒəbl/ 72
- illuminate /ɪ'lumɪneɪt/ 48
- illustrate /ɪ'ləstreɪt/ 33
- illustration /ɪ'lə'streɪʃn/ 33
- I'm afraid ... /ˌaɪm ə'freɪd/ 61
- I'm afraid not  
/ˌaɪm ə'freɪd 'nɒt/ 65
- I'm afraid so  
/ˌaɪm ə'freɪd 'səʊ/ 65
- I'm meant to  
/ˌaɪm 'ment tə/ 61
- I'm not bothered  
/ˌaɪm ˌnɒt 'bɒðəd/ 66
- I'm supposed to  
/ˌaɪm sə'pəʊst tə/ 61
- imagine /ɪ'mædʒɪn/ 65, 74
- imagine as in I imagine so  
/ɪ'mædʒɪn/ 65



immediately /'mi:diətli/ 25  
 immigrant /'ɪmɪgrənt/ 9, 38  
 immigration /,ɪmɪ'greɪʃn/ 38  
 immoral /ɪ'mɒrəl/ 72  
 impatient /ɪm'peɪʃnt/ 6  
 impressed /ɪm'prest/ 69  
 impressive /ɪm'presɪv/ 30  
 improve /ɪm'pru:v/ 2  
 improvement  
 /ɪm'pru:vmənt/ 2  
 in a bad mood  
 /,ɪn ə ,bæd 'mu:d/ 7  
 in a deep sleep  
 /,ɪn ə ,di:p 'sli:p/ 19  
 in a good mood  
 /,ɪn ə ,ɡʊd 'mu:d/ 7  
 in a hurry /,ɪn ə 'hʌri/ 71  
 in a relationship  
 /,ɪn ə rɪ'leɪʃnʃɪp/ 8  
 in a rush /,ɪn ə 'rʌʃ/ 71  
 in actual fact  
 /,ɪn ,æktʃʊəl 'fækt/ 76  
 in addition /,ɪn ə'dɪʃn/ 68  
 in advance /,ɪn əd'vɑ:ns/ 71  
 in bad shape /,ɪn ,bæd 'ʃeɪp/ 5  
 in case /,ɪn 'keɪs/ 67, 68  
 in charge of /,ɪn 'tʃɑ:ʒ əv/ 53, 71  
 in comparison with  
 /,ɪn kəm'pærɪsən wɪð/ 60  
 in control /,ɪn kən'trəʊl/ 39  
 in detail /,ɪn 'di:teɪl/ 2  
 in fact /,ɪn 'fækt/ 65, 76  
 in favour of /,ɪn 'feɪvər əv/ 63, 71  
 in focus /,ɪn 'fəʊkəs/ 43  
 in general /,ɪn 'dʒenrəl/ 71  
 in good shape  
 /,ɪn ,ɡʊd 'ʃeɪp/ 5  
 in mourning /,ɪn 'mɔ:niŋ/ 10  
 in my opinion  
 /,ɪn 'maɪ ə,pɪnjən/ 63  
 in other words  
 /,ɪn 'ʌðə ,wɜ:dz/ 11  
 in particular  
 /,ɪn pə'tɪkjələ(r)/ 78  
 in person /,ɪn 'pɜ:sn/ 66  
 in power /,ɪn 'paʊə(r)/ 38  
 in principle /,ɪn 'prɪnsəpl/ 63  
 in private /,ɪn 'praɪvət/ 71  
 in public /,ɪn 'pʌblɪk/ 71  
 in spite of /,ɪn 'spart əv/ 68  
 in the centre  
 /,ɪn ðə 'sentə(r)/ 33  
 in the distance  
 /,ɪn ðə 'dɪstəns/ 33

in the end /,ɪn ði 'end/ 71  
 in the meantime  
 /,ɪn ðə 'mi:ntaɪm/ 70  
 in theory /,ɪn 'θiəri/ 63  
 in time /,ɪn 'taɪm/ 50  
 in writing /,ɪn 'raɪtɪŋ/ 66  
 inadequate /ɪn'ædɪkwət/ 56, 69  
 inappropriate  
 /,ɪnə'prəʊpriət/ 2  
 include /ɪn'klu:d/ 2  
 income /'ɪnkʌm/ 18  
 increase N /'ɪŋkri:s/ 37  
 increase V /ɪn'kri:s/ 37, 55, 58, 63  
 incredible /ɪn'kredəbl/ 42  
 indeed /ɪn'di:d/ 42  
 independence  
 /,ɪndrɪ'pendəns/ 40  
 independent  
 /,ɪndrɪ'pendənt/ 40  
 individual /,ɪndrɪ'vɪdʒʊəl/ 42  
 industrial /ɪn'dʌstriəl/ 33  
 industry /'ɪndəstri/ 33  
 ineffective /,ɪnɪ'fektɪv/ 69  
 inefficient /,ɪnɪ'fɪʃnt/ 69  
 infection /ɪn'fekʃn/ 20  
 infectious /ɪn'fekʃəs/ 37  
 inflation /ɪn'fleɪʃn/ 55  
 influence N, V /'ɪnfluəns/ 44  
 influenza /,ɪnflu'enzə/ 79  
 informal /ɪn'fɔ:ml/ 1  
 information technology  
 /ɪnfə'meɪʃn tek'nɒlədʒi/ 79  
 ingredients /ɪn'ɡri:diənts/ 17  
 inherit /ɪn'herɪt/ 10  
 inheritance /ɪn'herɪtəns/ 10  
 injure /'ɪndʒə(r)/ 20  
 injured /'ɪndʒəd/ 22  
 injury /'ɪndʒəri/ 20  
 inner city /,ɪnə 'sɪti/ 29  
 innocent /'ɪnəsnt/ 36  
 innovate /'ɪnəveɪt/ 57  
 innovation /,ɪnə'veɪʃn/ 57  
 innovative /'ɪnəvətɪv/ 57  
 insect /'ɪnsɛkt/ 15  
 insecure /ɪnsɪ'kjʊə(r)/ 6, 72  
 insensitive /ɪn'sensətɪv/ 7  
 insist /ɪn'sɪst/ 71, 64  
 insomnia /ɪn'sɒmniə/ 19  
 install /ɪn'stɔ:l/ 52  
 instance *as in* for instance  
 /'ɪnstəns/ 3  
 instead /ɪn'sted/ 4, 61  
 instructions /ɪn'strʌkʃnz/ 49

instrument *as in* musical  
 instrument  
 /'ɪnstərəmənt/ 44  
 intend /ɪn'tend/ 65, 74  
 intention /ɪn'tenʃn/ 65  
 interest /'ɪntrəst/ 55  
 interest rate /'ɪntrəst ,reɪt/ 55  
 international /,ɪntə'næʃnəl/ 41  
 internet service provider  
 /,ɪntənət 'sɜ:vɪs  
 prə,vaidə(r)/ 79  
 interpret /ɪn'tɜ:prɪt/ 73  
 interpretation  
 /ɪn'tɜ:prɪ'teɪʃn/ 73  
 interrupt /,ɪntə'rʌpt/ 4, 45  
 interstate /'ɪntəsteɪt/ 80  
 interview N, V /'ɪntəvju:/ 51  
 interviewer /'ɪntəvju:ə(r)/ 51  
 intolerant /ɪn'tɒlərənt/ 6  
 introduce /,ɪntrə'dju:s/ 74  
 invade /ɪn'veɪd/ 40  
 invasion /ɪn'veɪʒn/ 40  
 invent /ɪn'vent/ 11  
 invention /ɪn'venʃn/ 11  
 invest /ɪn'vest/ 57  
 investigate /ɪn'vestɪɡert/ 36  
 investment /ɪn'vestmənt/ 57  
 invigilator /ɪn'vɪdʒɪlətə(r)/ 49  
 involve /ɪn'vɒlv/ 53  
 involved /ɪn'vɒlvd/ 39  
 involved in /ɪn'vɒlvd ɪn/ 71  
 iron /'aɪən/ 31  
 irrelevant /ɪ'reləvənt/ 2, 72  
 irresponsible /,ɪrɪ'spɒnsəbl/ 6  
 irritable /'ɪrɪtəbl/ 19  
 -ish /ɪʃ/ 5  
 issue /'ɪʃu:/ 63  
 it seems to me  
 /ɪt ,si:mz tə 'mi:/ 63  
 item /'aɪtəm/ 49  
 it's up to me  
 /,ɪts ,ʌp tə 'mi:/ 64  
 jail /dʒeɪl/ 35  
 jam *as in* traffic jam /dʒæm/ 22  
 jealous /'dʒeləs/ 7  
 jewellery /'dʒu:əlri/ 23  
 job /dʒɒb/ 52  
 join a class /,dʒɔɪn ə 'kla:s/ 66  
 join (= put together) /dʒɔɪn/ 4  
 joke /dʒʊk/ 77  
 joking *as in* you must be joking,  
 you're joking /'dʒʊkɪŋ/ 77  
 journalism /'dʒɜ:nələɪzəm/ 41  
 journalist /'dʒɜ:nəlist/ 41  
 judge N /dʒʌdʒ/ 36



judge v /dʒʌdʒ/ 73  
 judgement /'dʒʌdʒmənt/ 73  
 junk food /'dʒʌŋk fu:d/ 17  
 jury /'dʒʊəri/ 36  
 just /dʒʌst/ 33

kg (kilo(s)/kilogram(s))  
 /'ki:ləʊ(z), 'kɪləgrəm(z)/ 79  
 km (kilometre(s))  
 /'kɪləmi:tə(z)/ 79  
 kph (kilometres per hour)  
 /'kɪləmi:təz pər 'aʊə(r)/ 79  
 keen *as in* be keen on /ki:n/ 62  
 keep /ki:p/ 21, 28  
 keep a record of  
 /'ki:p ə 'rekɔ:d əv/ 1  
 keep ahead of  
 /'ki:p ə'hed əv/ 57  
 keep an eye on  
 /'ki:p ən 'aɪ, ɒn/ 77  
 keep calm /'ki:p 'kɑ:m/ 66  
 keep in touch /'ki:p m 'tʌtʃ/ 8  
 keep sth up /'ki:p ,... 'ʌp/ 17  
 keep your temper  
 /'ki:p jə: 'tempə(r)/ 66  
 key /ki:/ 57  
 keyboard /'ki:bɔ:d/ 44  
 keyboard player  
 /'ki:bɔ:d ,pleɪə(r)/ 44  
 kid /kɪd/ 77  
 kidney /'kɪdni/ 16  
 kill /kɪl/ 35  
 kilogram /'kɪləgrəm/ 79  
 kilometre /'kɪləmi:tə(r)/ 79  
 kilometres per hour  
 /'kɪləmi:təz pər 'aʊə(r)/ 79  
 kind /kænd/ 73  
 kind regards  
 /'kænd rɪ,gɑ:dz/ 78  
 kindness /'kændnəs/ 73  
 king /kɪŋ/ 9  
 knickers /'nɪkəz/ 23  
 knock /nɒk/ 34  
 knowledge /'nɒlɪdʒ/ 11

l (litre(s)) /'li:tə(z)/ 79  
 lab /læb/ 79  
 laboratory /lə'bɒrətəri/ 79  
 lack /læk/ 19  
 ladder /'lædə(r)/ 31  
 lake /leɪk/ 12  
 land /lænd/ 52  
 landscape /'lændskeɪp/ 43  
 lane /leɪn/ 22  
 lap /læp/ 45  
 largely /'lɑ:dlɪ/ 76

last /lɑ:st/ 70  
 lately /'leɪtli/ 77  
 latest /'leɪtɪst/ 23  
 launch /lɔ:ntʃ/ 38  
 laughing *as in* burst out  
 laughing /'lɑ:fɪŋ/ 34  
 lava /'lɑ:və/ 14  
 law /lɔ:/ 35  
 lawn /lɔ:n/ 30  
 lazy /'leɪzi/ 6  
 lead /li:d/ 30  
 lead singer /'li:d 'sɪŋə(r)/ 44  
 lead to /'li:d tə/ 37  
 leader /'li:də(r)/ 39  
 leader *as in* market leader  
 /'li:də(r)/ 56  
 leading role /'li:dɪŋ ,rəʊl/ 42  
 leaf /li:f/ 34  
 leak n, v /li:k/ 26  
 least *as in* at least /li:st/ 71  
 leather /'leðə(r)/ 23  
 leave out /'li:v 'aʊt/ 4, 75  
 leaves /li:vz/ 34  
 lecture /'lektʃə(r)/ 50  
 lecturer /'lektʃərə(r)/ 50  
 leek /li:k/ 16  
 left-hand /'left ,hænd/ 33  
 legal /'li:gl/ 35  
 legible /'ledʒɪbl/ 72  
 leisure /'leɪzə(r)/ 33  
 lend sb a hand  
 /'lend ,... ə 'hænd/ 77  
 length /lenθ/ 45  
 lens *as in* zoom lens /lenz/ 43  
 lenses *as in* contact lenses  
 /'lenzɪz/ 5  
 leopard /'lepəd/ 15  
 let /let/ 28, 64  
 letter *as in* capital letter  
 /letə(r)/ 4  
 letter box /'letə ,bɒks/ 31  
 lid /lɪd/ 34  
 life expectancy  
 /'laɪf ɪk,spektənsi/ 15  
 lifeboat /'laɪfbəʊt/ 57  
 lifespan /'laɪfspæn/ 15  
 light bulb /'laɪt ,bʌlb/ 26  
 light-skinned /'laɪt 'skɪnd/ 5  
 light sleeper /'laɪt 'sli:pə(r)/ 19  
 light sth up /'laɪt ,... 'ʌp/ 48  
 like (= similar to) /laɪk/ 32  
 like (= such as) /laɪk/ 4, 32  
 likely to /'laɪkli tə/ 59  
 limit *as in* speed limit  
 /'lɪmɪt/ 21  
 limited /'lɪmɪtɪd/ 58

linesman /'laɪnzsmən/ 45  
 lion /'laɪən/ 15  
 liquid /'lɪkwɪd/ 13  
 list /lɪst/ 4  
 listen /'lɪsn/ 32  
 litre /'li:tə(r)/ 79  
 litter /'lɪtə(r)/ 29  
 live /laɪv/ 44  
 lively /'laɪvli/ 29  
 liver /'lɪvə(r)/ 16  
 living /'lɪvɪŋ/ 44  
 loads /ləʊdz/ 77  
 load sth up /,ləʊd ,... 'ʌp/ 72  
 loan /ləʊn/ 50  
 loathe /ləʊð/ 62  
 lobster /'lɒbstə(r)/ 16  
 local /'ləʊkl/ 29  
 lock /lɒk/ 72  
 log *as in* sleep like a log  
 /lɒg/ 19  
 long /lɒŋ/ 45  
 long *as in* as long as /lɒŋ/ 68  
 look /lʊk/ 32  
 look after /,lʊk 'ɑ:ftə(r)/ 71  
 look forward to  
 /,lʊk 'fɔ:wəd tə/ 24, 65, 78  
 look like /'lʊk ,laɪk/ 9  
 look out /,lʊk 'aʊt/ 67  
 look through /'lʊk ,θru:/ 47  
 loosen /'lu:sn/ 26  
 lose /lu:z/ 56  
 lose weight /,lu:z 'weɪt/ 17  
 lose your hair  
 /,lu:z jə: 'heə(r)/ 5  
 lose your sight  
 /,lu:z jə: 'saɪt/ 37  
 lose your temper  
 /,lu:z jə: 'tempə(r)/ 66  
 loss /lɒs/ 55  
 loud /laʊd/ 34  
 love /lʌv/ 78  
 love from /'lʌv frəm/ 78  
 low tide /ləʊ 'taɪd/ 12  
 loyal /'ləɪəl/ 8, 72  
 lungs /lʌŋz/ 37  
 lyrics /'lɪrɪks/ 44

ml (millilitre(s))  
 /'mɪlɪli:tə(z)/ 79  
 mm (millimetre(s))  
 /'mɪlɪmi:tə(z)/ 79  
 MP (Member of Parliament)  
 /,em 'pi:/ 38  
 mph (miles per hour)  
 /,maɪlz pər 'aʊə(r)/ 79  
 mad /mæd/ 6



mad about (= liking very much) /'mæd ə baʊt/ 62

Madam /'mædəm/ 78

main difference

/,meɪn 'dɪfrəns/ 60

main road /,meɪn 'rəʊd/ 80

mainly /'memli/ 76

maintain /meɪn'teɪn/ 14

majority /mə'dʒɔrəti/ 38

make as in can you make it?

/meɪk/ 61

make (= perform an action)

/meɪk/ 1, 10, 65

make a claim

/,meɪk ə 'kleɪm/ 66

make a complaint

/,meɪk ə kəm'pleɪnt/ 53, 66

make a note /,meɪk ə 'nəʊt/ 1

make a profit

/,meɪk ə 'prɒfɪt/ 55

make a promise

/,meɪk ə 'prɒmɪs/ 41

make a speech

/,meɪk ə 'spi:tʃ/ 10

make an appointment

/,meɪk ən ə'pɔɪntmənt/ 24

make an enquiry

/,meɪk ən m'kwærɪ/ 53

make arrangements

/,meɪk ə'reɪndʒmənts/ 52

make friends /,meɪk 'frendz/ 8

make mistakes

/,meɪk mɪ'sterks/ 1

make plans /,meɪk 'plænz/ 65

make progress

/,meɪk 'prɒɡres/ 2

make sb do sth

/,meɪk ... 'duː .../ 64

make sb redundant

/,meɪk ... rɪ'dʌndənt/ 53

make sth up /,meɪk ... 'ʌp/ 75

make sure /,meɪk 'ʃʊə(r)/ 53, 66

make the most of

/,meɪk ðə 'məʊst əv/ 71

male /meɪl/ 5, 15

mall /mɔ:l, mæl/ 80

manage /'mænɪdʒ/ 50, 52, 71, 74

management

/'mænɪdʒmənt/ 52

manager /'mænɪdʒə(r)/ 45

manual /'mænjuəl/ 47

manufacture

/,mænju'fæktʃə(r)/ 52, 57

manufacturer

/,mænju'fæktʃərə(r)/ 57

manufacturing

/,mænju'fæktʃərɪŋ/ 52

mark as in exclamation/

question mark /mɑ:k/ 4

market as in target market

/'mɑ:kɪt/ 58

market leader

/,mɑ:kɪt 'li:də(r)/ 56

market research

/,mɑ:kɪt rɪ'sɜ:tʃ, 'ri:sɜ:tʃ/ 56

marketing /'mɑ:kətɪŋ/ 58

marks as in quotation marks

/mɑ:ks/ 4

marriage /'mærɪdʒ/ 10

mash /mæʃ/ 17

massive /'mæsɪv/ 18

masterpiece /'mɑ:stəpi:s/ 43

match /mætʃ/ 23

mate /meɪt/ 77

material /mə'tɪəriəl/ 23

mature /mə'tʃʊə(r)/ 63

maximum /'mæksɪmə/ 45

may /meɪ/ 36, 59

mean /mi:n/ 6

mean a lot /,mi:n ə 'lɒt/ 48

meant as in be meant to

/ment/ 22, 61

meantime as in in the

meantime /'mi:ntaɪm/ 70

meanwhile /'mi:nwaɪl/ 70

measure /'meʒə(r)/ 73

measurement /'meʒəmənt/ 73

mechanic /mə'kænɪk/ 52

medal /'medl/ 31, 46

melody /'melədi/ 44

melt /melt/ 13

member /'membə(r)/ 9

Member of Parliament

/,membər əv 'pɑ:ləmənt/ 38

member of the public

/,membər əv ðə 'pʌblɪk/ 53

memory loss /'meməri ,ləs/ 37

mend /mend/ 26

mention /'menʃn/ 66

metal /'metl/ 31

method /'meθəd/ 1

metric /'metrɪk/ 79

metric capacity

/,metrɪk kə'pæsəti/ 79

metric length

/,metrɪk 'leŋθ/ 79

metric weight

/,metrɪk 'weɪt/ 79

mice /maɪs/ 15

middle /'mɪdl/ 33

might /maɪt/ 36, 59

mild /maɪld/ 13

miles per hour

/,maɪlz pər 'aʊə(r)/ 79

millilitre /'mɪlɪli:tə(r)/ 79

millimetre /'mɪlɪmi:tə(r)/ 79

military /'mɪlətri/ 52

minced /mɪnst/ 17

mind /maɪnd/ 74

mind as in on your mind

/maɪnd/ 19

mind your head

/,maɪnd ʒə: 'hed/ 67

minimum /'mɪnɪmə/ 45

minor /'maɪnə(r)/ 35

minority /maɪ'nɔrəti/ 38

mint /mɪnt/ 16

mirror as in rear-view / wing

mirror /'mɪrə(r)/ 21

miserable /'mɪzrəbl/ 7

mist /mɪst/ 13

mistake as in make mistakes

/mɪ'steɪk/ 1

misty /'mɪsti/ 13

mixed feelings

/,mɪkst 'fi:lɪŋz/ 69

moan n, v /məʊn/ 66

modern /'mɒdn/ 69

modest /'mɒdɪst/ 6

money /'mʌni/ 79

monkey /'mʌŋki/ 15

mood /mu:d/ 7

moody /'mu:di/ 7

moon /mu:n/ 11

mop /mɒp/ 27

moral /'mɒrəl/ 72

moreover /mə:'rʌʊvə(r)/ 68

mosquito /mə'ski:təʊ/ 15

most as in make the most of

/məʊst/ 71

motivated /'məʊtɪveɪtɪd/ 2

motivation /,məʊtɪ'veɪʃn/ 2

motorbike /'məʊtəbaɪk/ 79

motorway /'məʊtəweɪ/ 80

mourners /'mɔ:nəz/ 10

mourning as in in mourning

/'mɔ:nɪŋ/ 10

mouse /maʊs/ 15

movie /'mu:vi/ 42, 80

movie theater

/'mu:vi ,θɪətə(r)/ 80

moving /'mu:vɪŋ/ 42

mud /mʌd/ 27

muddy /'mʌdi/ 27

mug /mʌg/ 35

mugger /'mʌgə(r)/ 35

mugging /'mʌɡɪŋ/ 35



muggy /'mʌgi/ 13  
multi-storey car park  
/ˌmʌltiˌstɔːri 'kɑː pɑːk/ 29  
murder N, V /'mɜːdə(r)/ 35  
murderer /'mɜːdə(r)/ 35  
musical instrument  
/ˌmjuːzɪkl 'ɪnstrəmənt/ 44  
musician /mjuːˈzɪʃn/ 44  
mussel /'masl/ 16  
mystery /'mɪstri/ 47

nail /neɪl/ 26  
nanny /'næni/ 52  
nap *as in* have a nap /næp/ 19  
narrow /'nærəʊ/ 12  
nasty /'nɑːsti/ 20  
national /'næʃnəl/ 41  
NATO /'neɪtəʊ/ 79  
natural /'nætʃrəl/ 69  
nearby /ˌnɪə'baɪ/ 78  
neat /ni:t/ 5  
necklace /'neɪkləs/ 23  
need *as in* a need for /ni:d/ 38  
need *as in* desperately need  
/ni:d/ 76  
needle /'niːdl/ 26  
negative ADJ /'negətɪv/ 69  
negative N /'negətɪv/ 43  
negotiate /nɪ'ɡəʊʃiət/ 39  
neighbourhood /'neɪbəhʊd/ 48  
neutral /'njuːtrəl/ 23, 77  
nevertheless /ˌnevəðə'les/ 68  
nightie /'narti/ 19  
nightmare (= bad dream)  
/'naɪtmɛə(r)/ 19  
nightmare (= bad experience)  
/'naɪtmɛə(r)/ 22  
no problem  
/ˌnəʊ 'prɒbləm/ 77  
non-alcoholic  
/ˌnɒn ælkə'hɒlɪk/ 72  
non-fiction /ˌnɒn 'fɪkʃn/ 47  
non-metric /ˌnɒn 'metrɪk/ 79  
nonsense /'nɒnsns/ 77  
not at all /ˌnɒt ət 'ɔːl/ 62  
not ... yet /ˌnɒt ... 'jet/ 70  
note *as in* make a note of  
/nəʊt/ 1  
notice V /'nəʊtɪs/ 32  
notice *as in* hand in your  
notice /'nəʊtɪs/ 53  
nothing much  
/ˌnʌθɪŋ 'mʌtʃ/ 77  
novel /'nɒvl/ 47  
now and again  
/ˌnaʊ ənd ə'geɪn/ 70

nowadays /'naʊədeɪz/ 70  
nuisance /'njuːsɪs/ 66  
number plate  
/'nʌmbəˌpleɪt/ 21  
obedient /ə'biːdiənt/ 64  
obese /əʊ'biːs/ 37  
obesity /əʊ'biːsəti/ 37  
obey /ə'beɪ/ 64  
obey the law /ə'beɪ ðə 'lɔː/ 35  
object /'ɒbdʒekt/ 52  
objective /əb'dʒektɪv/ 58  
obligatory /ə'bliɡətəri/ 64  
observant /əb'zɜːvənt/ 32  
obvious /'ɒbvɪəs/ 2  
occasion /ə'keɪʒn/ 48  
occasionally /ə'keɪʒnəli/ 70  
occur /ə'kɜː(r)/ 22  
ocean /'əʊʃn/ 12  
off (= money off) /ɒf/ 18  
off *as in* time off /ɒf/ 54  
offence /ə'fens/ 35  
offend /ə'fend/ 3  
offender /ə'fendə(r)/ 35  
offensive /ə'fensɪv/ 3  
oil paints /'ɔɪlˌpeɪnts/ 43  
oils /ɔɪlz/ 43  
old-fashioned  
/ˌəʊld 'fæʃnd/ 69  
old friend /ˌəʊld 'frend/ 8  
omit /ə'mɪt/ 4, 75  
on board /ˌɒn 'bɔːd/ 71  
on display /ˌɒn dɪ'spleɪ/ 43  
on my mind  
/ˌɒnˌmaɪ 'maɪnd/ 19  
on my way /ˌɒnˌmaɪ 'weɪ/ 22  
on purpose /ˌɒn 'pɜːpəs/ 71  
on show /ˌɒn 'ʃəʊ/ 43  
on the horizon  
/ˌɒn ðə hɔːraɪzn/ 12  
on the one hand  
/ˌɒn ðə 'wʌnˌhænd/ 68  
on the other hand  
/ˌɒn ði 'ʌðəˌhænd/ 68  
on the way /ˌɒn ðə 'weɪ/ 22  
on the whole /ˌɒn ðə 'həʊl/ 76  
on time /ˌɒn 'taɪm/ 50  
on your mind  
/ˌɒn jɔː 'maɪnd/ 19  
one-sided /ˌwʌn 'saɪdɪd/ 46  
only child /ˌəʊnli 'tʃaɪld/ 9  
onto /'ɒntə/ 70  
operate /'ɒpəreɪt/ 25  
operating costs  
/'ɒpəreɪtɪŋˌkɒsts/ 55

operating theatre  
/'ɒpəreɪtɪŋˌθɪətə(r)/ 25  
operation /ˌɒpə'reɪʃn/ 25  
opinion *as in* in my opinion  
/ə'pɪnjən/ 63  
opponent /ə'pɒnənt/ 46  
opportunity /ˌɒpə'tjuːnəti/ 1,  
50, 58  
oppose /ə'pəʊz/ 38  
opposed to /ə'pəʊzd tə/ 63  
opposition /ˌɒpə'zɪʃn/ 38  
Opposition *as in* the  
Opposition /ˌɒpə'zɪʃn/ 38  
optimistic /ˌɒptɪ'mɪstɪk/ 59  
optional /'ɒpʃənəl/ 64  
or /ɔː(r)/ 68  
or else /ˌɔːr 'els/ 68  
order *as in* out of order  
/'ɔːdə(r)/ 26  
orchestra /'ɔːkɪstrə/ 44  
ordinary /'ɔːdnəri/ 42  
organ /'ɔːɡən/ 44  
organist /'ɔːɡənɪst/ 44  
original /ə'rɪdʒənəl/ 30  
originally /ə'rɪdʒənəli/ 9  
otherwise /'ʌðəwaɪz/ 68  
out loud /ˌaʊt 'laʊd/ 34  
out of focus  
/ˌaʊt əv 'fəʊkəs/ 43  
out of order  
/ˌaʊt əv 'ɔːdə(r)/ 26  
out of the blue  
/ˌaʊt əv ðə 'bluː/ 77  
out of work /ˌaʊt əv 'wɜːk/ 53  
outfit /'aʊtfɪt/ 23  
outsider /aʊt'saɪdə(r)/ 46  
outskirts /'aʊtskɜːts/ 22  
outstanding /aʊt'stændɪŋ/ 42,  
46  
oval ADJ, N /'əʊvl/ 31  
oven /'ʌvn/ 17  
over /'əʊvə(r)/ 70  
over-ambitious  
/ˌəʊvər æm'bɪʃəs/ 56  
over-optimistic  
/ˌəʊvər ɒptɪ'mɪstɪk/ 56  
over there /ˌəʊvə 'ðeə(r)/ 70  
overall /ˌəʊvərɔːl/ 46  
overall /ˌəʊvərɔːl/ 69  
overcharge /ˌəʊvə'tʃɑːdʒ/ 56  
overestimate  
/ˌəʊvər'estɪmənt/ 56  
overhear /ˌəʊvə'hɪə(r)/ 32  
overnight /ˌəʊvə'nait/ 22  
oversleep /ˌəʊvə'sliːp/ 19  
overtake /ˌəʊvə'teɪk/ 21



overtime /'əʊvətaɪm/ 54  
owe /əʊ/ 18  
own /əʊn/ 18  
oyster /'ɔɪstə(r)/ 16

p (pence) /piː, pens/ 79  
PM (prime minister)  
/piː 'em/ 38  
pack /pæk/ 72  
painful /'peɪnfl/ 24, 73  
painless /'peɪnləs/ 73  
paint /peɪnt/ 33  
painter /'peɪntə(r)/ 33  
painting /'peɪntɪŋ/ 33  
pale-skinned /,peɪl 'skɪnd/ 5  
papaya /pə'paɪə/ 16  
paper (= exam paper)  
/'peɪpə(r)/ 49  
paper (= newspaper)  
/'peɪpə(r)/ 79  
paperback /'peɪpəbæk/ 47  
parade /pə'reɪd/ 48  
parallel /'pærəlel/ 31  
parent *as in* foster parent  
/'peərənt/ 9  
parliament /'pɑːləmənt/ 38  
particular *as in* in particular  
/pə'tɪkjələ(r)/ 78  
parsley /'pɑːsli/ 16  
part /pɑːt/ 29  
participate /pɑː'tɪsɪpeɪt/ 46, 48  
particular *as in* in particular  
/pə'tɪkjələ(r)/ 78  
particularly /pə'tɪkjələli/ 78  
parting /'pɑːtɪŋ/ 28  
partly /'pɑːtli/ 76  
partnership /'pɑːtnəʃɪp/ 57  
party *as in* political party  
/'pɑːti/ 39  
pass out /pɑːs 'aʊt/ 20  
passage /'pæsɪdʒ/ 30  
passion fruit /'pæʃn ,fru:t/ 16  
patience /'peɪjns/ 6  
patient <sup>adj</sup> /'peɪjnt/ 25  
patient <sup>n</sup> /'peɪjnt/ 6  
pause /pɔːz/ 4  
pavement /'peɪvmənt/ 29  
pay /peɪ/ 55  
peace /piːs/ 39  
peace settlement  
/'piːs ,setlmənt/ 39  
peak /piːk/ 55  
pebbles /'peblz/ 12  
peel /piːl/ 17  
pence /pens/ 79  
pennies /'peniz/ 79

penny /'peni/ 79  
pension /'penʃn/ 41  
pensioner /'penʃənə(r)/ 41  
perform /pə'fɔːm/ 46  
performance /pə'fɔːməns/ 42, 46  
perm /pɜːm/ 28  
permanent /'pɜːmənənt/ 69  
permit *as in* work permit  
/'pɜːmɪt/ 51  
permit <sup>v</sup> /pə'mɪt/ 64  
person *as in* in person  
/'pɜːsn/ 66  
personally /'pɜːsənəli/ 63  
persuade /pə'sweɪd/ 38, 74  
pessimistic /,pesɪ'mɪstɪk/ 59  
petrol /'petrəl/ 80  
photo /'fəʊtəʊ/ 43  
photo album  
/'fəʊtəʊ ,ælbəm/ 43  
photograph /'fəʊtəgrɑːf/ 43  
photographer  
/'fəʊtəgrəfə(r)/ 43  
photography /'fəʊtəgrəfi/ 43  
pianist /'piənɪst/ 44  
piano /pi'æniəʊ/ 44  
pick up /pɪk 'ʌp/ 22, 75, 77  
PIN (personal identification  
number) /pɪn/ 79  
pin /pɪn/ 26  
pipe /paɪp/ 31  
pitch /pɪtʃ/ 45  
pity /'prɪti/ 29  
plan /plæn/ 65  
plane /pleɪn/ 79  
planet /'plænɪt/ 11  
planning /'plænɪŋ/ 49  
plastic /'plæstɪk/ 31  
pleased /pliːzd/ 69  
pleasure /'pleʒə(r)/ 47  
pledge <sup>n, v</sup> /pledʒ/ 41  
plenty /'plenti/ 17  
plot /plɒt/ 42  
plug in /,plʌg 'ɪn/ 72  
plum /plʌm/ 16  
plumber /'plʌmə(r)/ 52  
plump /plʌmp/ 5  
plus /plʌs/ 68  
pocket /'pɒkɪt/ 23  
poem /'pəʊɪm/ 47  
poetry /'pəʊətri/ 47  
point (= purpose) /pɔɪnt/ 66  
point (= shape) /pɔɪnt/ 31  
point *as in* there's no point in  
... /pɔɪnt/ 66

point *as in* what's the point of  
...? /pɔɪnt/ 66  
pointed /'pɔɪntɪd/ 31  
poison /'pɔɪzn/ 15  
poisonous /'pɔɪzənəs/ 15  
pole /pəʊl/ 13  
policy /'pɒləsi/ 38  
polish <sup>n, v</sup> /'pɒlɪʃ/ 27  
polite /pə'laɪt/ 69  
political party  
/pə,lɪtɪkl 'pɑːti/ 38  
politician /,pɒlə'tɪʃn/ 38  
pollute /pə'ljuːt/ 13  
pollution /pə'ljuːʃn/ 13  
pomegranate  
/'pɒmɪ,grænɪt/ 16  
pond /pɒnd/ 12  
pool /puːl/ 45  
pop /pɒp/ 79  
portrait /'pɔːtreɪt/ 43  
position /pə'zɪʃn/ 51  
positive /'pɒzətɪv/ 69  
postpone /pə'spəʊn/ 61  
potential /pə'tenʃl/ 57  
pour /pɔː(r)/ 13  
pouring /'pɔːrɪŋ/ 13  
power *as in* in power  
/'paʊə(r)/ 38  
powerful /'paʊəfl/ 73  
powerless /'paʊələs/ 73  
practical /'præktɪkl/ 73  
praise <sup>n, v</sup> /preɪz/ 46  
predict /prɪ'dɪkt/ 13  
predictable /prɪ'dɪktəbl/ 13  
prefer /prɪ'fɜː(r)/ 73  
preference /'prefrəns/ 73  
pregnant /'pregnənt/ 5  
premises /'premɪsɪz/ 67  
prepare /prɪ'peə(r)/ 21  
prepared /prɪ'peəd/ 21  
present /'preznt/ 47  
president /'prezɪdənt/ 40  
press <sup>v</sup> /pres/ 32  
press *as in* the press /pres/ 41  
pre-tax /,priː 'tæks/ 55  
pretend /prɪ'tend/ 74  
pretty (= attractive) /'prɪti/ 5  
pretty (= rather) /'prɪti/ 76  
prevent /prɪ'vent/ 20  
prevention /prɪ'venʃn/ 20  
previous /'priːviəs/ 9  
prime minister /,praɪm  
'mɪnɪstə(r)/ 38  
prince /prɪns/ 40  
princess /,prɪn'ses/ 40

principle *as in* in principle

/'prɪnsəpl/ 63

print /prɪnt/ 43

priority /praɪ'ɒrəti/ 38

prison *as in* go to prison

/'prɪzn/ 35

private *as in* in private

/'praɪvət/ 71

private sector

/'praɪvət ,sektə(r)/ 52

problem *as in* no problem

/'prɒbləm/ 77

process /'prəʊses/ 51

produce (a film) /prə'dju:s/ 42

produce (goods) /'prɒdju:s/ 57

producer (of films)

/prə'dju:sə(r)/ 42

producer (of goods)

/prə'dju:sə(r)/ 57

product /'prɒdʌkt/ 52

profession /prə'feʃn/ 52

professional /prə'feʃənl/ 46

professor /prə'fesə(r)/ 50

profit /'prɒfɪt/ 55

progress /'prɒɡres/ 2

promise /'prɒmɪs/ 41

promote /prə'məʊt/ 53

promotion /prə'məʊʃn/ 53

pronounce /prə'naʊns/ 1

pronunciation

/prə'nansi'eɪʃn/ 1

proof /pru:f/ 36

properly /'prɒpəli/ 26

property /'prɒpəti/ 35

proposal /prə'pəʊzl/ 63

propose /prə'pəʊz/ 63

prosecute /'prɒsɪkjʊ:t/ 36

prosecution /,prɒsɪ'kju:ʃn/ 36

prospects /'prɒspekts/ 53

protect /prə'tekt/ 12

protected /prə'tektɪd/ 12

protection /prə'tekʃn/ 12

protest n /'prəʊtest/ 41

protest v /prə'test/ 41

proud /praʊd/ 7

prove /pru:v/ 36

provide /prə'vaɪd/ 3

provided /prə'vaɪdɪd/ 68

pub /pʌb/ 79

public *as in* in public

/'pʌblɪk/ 71

public *as in* member of the

public /'pʌblɪk/ 53

public *as in* the public

/'pʌblɪk/ 53

public house

/pʌblɪk 'haʊs/ 79

public sector

/pʌblɪk 'sektə(r)/ 52

publish /'pʌblɪʃ/ 41, 52

publishing /'pʌblɪʃɪŋ/ 41, 52

puddle /'pʌdl/ 12

punish /'pʌnɪʃ/ 64

punishment /'pʌnɪʃmənt/ 64

purchase n, v /'pɜ:ʃəs/ 77

purpose /'pɜ:pəs/ 68

purpose *as in* on purpose

/'pɜ:pəs/ 71

purse /pɜ:s/ 80

put on weight

/pʊt ,ɒn 'weɪt/ 17

put back /pʊt 'bæk/ 75

put down /pʊt 'daʊn/ 75

put off /pʊt 'ɒf/ 61

put on /pʊt 'ɒn/ 75

put out /pʊt 'aʊt/ 75

pyjamas /pə'dʒɑ:məz/ 19

qualifications

/kwɒlɪfɪ'keɪʃnz/ 52

quality /'kwɒləti/ 56

queen /kwi:n/ 9

question mark

/'kwɛstʃn ,mɑ:k/ 4

quit /kwɪt/ 53

quite /kwaɪt/ 76

quotation marks

/kwəʊ'teɪʃn ,mɑ:ks/ 4

rabbit /'ræbɪt/ 16

race /reis/ 46

racing driver

/'reɪsɪŋ ,draɪvə(r)/ 45

railings /'reɪlɪŋz/ 31

railroad /'reɪlrəʊd/ 80

rainbow /'reɪnbəʊ/ 13

rainforest /'reɪmfɒrɪst/ 13

raise capital /,reɪz 'kæpɪtl/ 55

range *as in* wide range

/reɪndʒ/ 2

rare /reə(r)/ 69

rarely /'reəli/ 76

raspberry /'rɑ:zbəri/ 16

rat /ræt/ 15

rather /'rɑ:ðə(r)/ 76

rather *as in* would rather

/'rɑ:ðə(r)/ 62

rather than /'rɑ:ðə ðən/ 21

reach /ri:tʃ/ 11

reach an agreement

/ri:tʃ ən ə'ɡri:mənt/ 39

react /ri'ækt/ 73

reaction /ri'ækʃn/ 73

read widely /,ri:d 'waɪdli/ 50

readable /'ri:dəbl/ 47

real /'ri:əl/ 69, 73

realism /'ri:əlɪzəm/ 43

realistic /,ri:ə'lɪstɪk/ 43, 58

reality /ri'æləti/ 73

realize /'ri:əlaɪz/ 8

rear /rɪə(r)/ 70

rear-view mirror

/rɪə ,vju: 'mɪrə(r)/ 21

reasonable /'ri:znəbl/ 69

recall /rɪ'kɔ:l/ 74

receding /rɪ'si:ɪŋ/ 5

receipt /rɪ'si:t/ 18

recent /'ri:snt/ 70

recently /'ri:sntli/ 70

reception /rɪ'sepʃn/ 10

recipe /'resəpi/ 17

reckon /'rekən/ 63, 77

recognition /,rekəg'nɪʃn/ 1

recognize /'rekəgnaɪz/ 1

record n /'rekɔ:d/ 46

record v (= make a note)

/rɪ'kɔ:d/ 1

record v (= put onto a disc)

/rɪ'kɔ:d/ 44

recording /rɪ'kɔ:dɪŋ/ 44

recover /rɪ'kʌvə(r)/ 25

recruit /rɪ'kru:t/ 52

recruitment /rɪ'kru:tmənt/ 52

rectangle /'rektæŋgl/ 31

rectangular

/rek'tæŋɡjələ(r)/ 31

reduce /rɪ'dju:s/ 18, 58, 63

reduction /rɪ'dʌkʃn/ 18, 58

redundant /rɪ'dʌndənt/ 53

reel /ri:l/ 26

ref /ref/ 45

referee (at a sports match)

/,refə'ri:/ 45

referee (for a job) /,refə'ri:/ 51

referee's assistant

/,refə,ri:z ə'sɪstənt/ 45

reference /'refrəns/ 51

reference book

/'refrəns ,bʊk/ 47

refine /rɪ'faɪn/ 57

refund /'ri:fʌnd/ 18

refuse /rɪ'fju:z/ 74

regards *as in* kind regards

/rɪ'gɑ:dz/ 78

region /'ri:dʒən/ 29

regret /rɪ'gret/ 8, 74

regularly /'regjələli/ 76

relate /rɪ'leɪt/ 3



- related (= connected) /rɪ'leɪtɪd/ 3  
 related (= in the same family) /rɪ'leɪtɪd/ 9  
 relation /rɪ'leɪʃn/ 9  
 relationship *as in* in a relationship /rɪ'leɪʃnʃɪp/ 8  
 relative /'relatɪv/ 9  
 release (= set free) /rɪ'li:s/ 40  
 release *N, v* (an album) /rɪ'li:s/ 44  
 relevant /'reləvənt/ 2, 72  
 reliable /rɪ'laɪəbl/ 8  
 relief /rɪ'li:f/ 49  
 relieved /rɪ'li:vɪd/ 49  
 religious /rɪ'lɪdʒəs/ 10  
 religious ceremony /rɪ'lɪdʒəs 'serəməni/ 10  
 rely on /rɪ'laɪ, ɒn/ 8, 71  
 remain unchanged /rɪ'meɪn ən'tʃeɪndʒd/ 55  
 remind /rɪ'maɪnd/ 74  
 remote /rɪ'məʊt/ 69  
 remove /rɪ'mu:v/ 26  
 rent /rent/ 22  
 rep *as in* sales rep /rep/ 52  
 repair /rɪ'peə(r)/ 26  
 repeat /rɪ'pi:t/ 1  
 repetition /,repə'tɪʃn/ 1  
 replace /rɪ'pleɪs/ 26  
 report /rɪ'pɔ:t/ 36  
 represent /,reprɪ'zent/ 38  
 representative /,reprɪ'zentətɪv/ 52  
 republic /rɪ'pʌblɪk/ 40  
 reputation /,repju'teɪʃn/ 56  
 request /rɪ'kwest/ 51  
 require /rɪ'kwaɪə(r)/ 51  
 research *as in* do research /rɪ'sɜ:tʃ, 'ri:sɜ:tʃ/ 57  
 research *as in* market research /rɪ'sɜ:tʃ, 'ri:sɜ:tʃ/ 56  
 rescue /'reskju:/ 14  
 residence *as in* hall of residence /'rezɪdəns/ 50  
 resign /rɪ'zam/ 53  
 resist /rɪ'zɪst/ 46  
 resistance /rɪ'zɪstəns/ 46  
 resolve /rɪ'zɒlv/ 66  
 resource /rɪ'sɔ:s, rɪ'zɔ:s/ 58  
 respond /rɪ'spɒnd/ 58  
 response /rɪ'spɒns/ 58  
 responsible /rɪ'spɒnsəbl/ 6, 53, 71  
 responsibility /rɪ'spɒnsə'bɪləti/ 53  
 responsible (= sensible) /rɪ'spɒnsəbl/ 6  
 responsible (= having control) /rɪ'spɒnsəbl/ 53, 71  
 restless /'restləs/ 19  
 result *as in* as a result /rɪ'zʌlt/ 68  
 retail /'ri:teɪl/ 52  
 retain /rɪ'teɪn/ 57  
 retention /rɪ'tenʃn/ 57  
 return *as in* day return /rɪ'tɜ:n/ 22  
 revenue *as in* sales revenue /'revənju:/ 55  
 reverse /rɪ'vɜ:s/ 21  
 revise /rɪ'vaɪz/ 1, 50  
 revision /rɪ'vɪʒn/ 50  
 revolution /,revə'lʊ:ʃn/ 40  
 revolve /rɪ'vɒlv/ 11  
 reward *N, v* /rɪ'wɔ:d/ 53  
 rid *as in* get rid of /rɪd/ 71  
 ridiculous /rɪ'dɪkjələs/ 73  
 right *as in* have the right to /raɪt/ 54  
 right-hand /'raɪt, hænd/ 33  
 ring /rɪŋ/ 23  
 rise /raɪz/ 13, 55  
 risk /rɪsk/ 25, 56  
 risky /'rɪski/ 56  
 rival /'raɪvl/ 56  
 roast /rəʊst/ 17  
 rob /rɒb/ 35  
 robber /'rɒbə(r)/ 35  
 robbery /'rɒbəri/ 35  
 rock /rɒk/ 12  
 rocket /'rɒkɪt/ 11  
 rocks /rɒks/ 12  
 role /rəʊl/ 42  
 roll of film /,rɒl əv 'fɪlm/ 43  
 roof /ru:f/ 30  
 rope /rəʊp/ 26  
 rosemary /'rəʊzməri/ 16  
 rough (of a surface) /rʌf/ 5  
 rough (of the sea) /rʌf/ 12  
 roughly /'rʌfli/ 11, 76  
 round /raʊnd/ 31  
 round trip /,raʊnd 'trɪp/ 80  
 roundish /'raʊndɪʃ/ 5  
 row *as in* have a row /raʊ/ 8  
 royal /'rɒjəl/ 9  
 rub /rʌb/ 32  
 rubber /'rʌbə(r)/ 31  
 rubbish /'rʌbɪʃ/ 77  
 rude /ru:d/ 69  
 rugby player /'rʌɡbi, pleɪə(r)/ 45  
 ruin /'ru:ɪn/ 66  
 rule /ru:l/ 64  
 run out /,rʌn 'aʊt/ 75  
 running water /,rʌnɪŋ 'wɔ:tə(r)/ 20  
 rural /'rʊərəl/ 69  
 rush /rʌʃ/ 29  
 rush *as in* in a rush /rʌʃ/ 71  
 rush hour /'rʌʃ, ʌʊə(r)/ 22  
 sack *N, v* /sæk/ 53  
 safety helmet /'seɪftɪ, helmɪt/ 57  
 sales *as in* the sales /seɪlz/ 18  
 sales rep /'seɪlz, rep/ 52  
 sales representative /'seɪlz, reprɪ'zentətɪv/ 52  
 sales revenue /'seɪlz, revənju:/ 55  
 salmon /'sæmən/ 16  
 salty /'sɔ:ltɪ/ 32  
 same *as in* all the same /sem/ 68  
 sand /sænd/ 12  
 sandy /'sændi/ 12  
 satellite /'sætələɪt/ 11  
 satisfaction /,sætɪs'fækʃn/ 66  
 satisfied /'sætɪsfaid/ 69  
 satisfying /'sætɪsfɑ:ɪŋ/ 69  
 saucepan /'sɔ:spən/ 17  
 save /serv/ 14  
 saxophone /'sæksəfəʊn/ 44  
 saxophonist /sæk'səfənɪst/ 44  
 say /seɪ/ 61  
 scan /skæn/ 25  
 scar /ska:(r)/ 5  
 scare /skeə(r)/ 41  
 scared stiff /,skeəd 'stɪf/ 7  
 scene /si:n/ 33  
 scholarship /'skɒləʃɪp/ 50  
 science /'saɪəns/ 11  
 science fiction /,saɪəns 'fɪkʃn/ 47  
 scientific /,saɪən'tɪfɪk/ 11  
 scientist /'saɪəntɪst/ 11  
 scissors /'sɪsəz/ 26, 28  
 sci-fi /'saɪ, faɪ/ 47  
 scratch *N* /skrætʃ/ 18  
 scratch *V* /skrætʃ/ 34  
 scream /skri:m/ 34  
 screw /skru:/ 26  
 screwdriver /'skru:draɪvə(r)/ 26  
 sea bass /'si: bæs/ 16  
 section /'sekʃn/ 41  
 sector /'sektə(r)/ 52, 58

- secure /sɪ'kjʊə(r)/ 72  
 see (with your eyes) /si:/ 32  
 see (in your mind) /si:/ 6  
 seek /si:k/ 67  
 seem *as in* it seems to me  
     /si:m/ 63  
 seldom /'seldəm/ 76  
 select /sɪ'lekt/ 3  
 selection /sɪ'lekʃn/ 3  
 self-confident  
     /,self 'kɒnfɪdənt/ 6  
 Sellotape /'seləteɪp/ 26  
 semicolon /,semi'kəʊlən/ 4  
 semi-detached  
     /,semi'dætʃt/ 30  
 semi-final /,semi'faɪnl/ 46  
 seminar /'seminɑ:(r)/ 50  
 sense /sens/ 33  
 sense of humour  
     /,sens əv 'hju:mə(r)/ 6  
 sensible /'sensəbl/ 63  
 sensitive /'sensətɪv/ 7  
 sentence *n, v* /'sentəns/ 36  
 separate *adj* /'seprət/ 30  
 separate *v* /'sepəreɪt/ 4  
 serious /'sɪəriəs/ 22, 35  
 seriously /'sɪəriəsli/ 76  
 servant *as in* civil servant  
     /'sɜ:vənt/ 52  
 service *as in* civil service  
     /'sɜ:vɪs/ 52  
 services *as in* emergency  
     services /'sɜ:vɪsɪz/ 22  
 set the alarm  
     /,set ðɪ ə'lɑ:m/ 19  
 set up a business  
     /,set ,ʌp ə 'bɪznəs/ 56  
 settle /'setl/ 66  
 settlement *as in* peace  
     settlement /'setlmənt/ 39  
 several /'sevrəl/ 41  
 severe /sɪ'vɪə(r)/ 52  
 sew /səʊ/ 26  
 sex /seks/ 5  
 shade /ʃeɪd/ 33  
 shadow /'ʃædəʊ/ 33  
 shake /ʃeɪk/ 34  
 shall /ʃæl, ʃəl/ 51  
 shallow /'ʃæləʊ/ 12  
 shame /ʃeɪm/ 29  
 shape /ʃeɪp/ 31  
 shape *as in* in good/bad shape  
     /ʃeɪp/ 5  
 -shaped /ʃeɪpt/ 31  
 share /ʃeə(r)/ 56  
 shares /ʃeəz/ 56  
 shark /ʃɑ:k/ 15  
 sharp /ʃɑ:p/ 55  
 sharply /'ʃɑ:pli/ 55, 76  
 shell /ʃel/ 16  
 shift work /'ʃɪft ,wɜ:k/ 54  
 ship /ʃɪp/ 12  
 shirt /ʃɜ:t/ 23  
 shocked /ʃɒkt/ 69  
 shocking /'ʃɒkɪŋ/ 69  
 shockproof /'ʃɒkpru:f/ 73  
 shoe /ʃu:/ 23  
 shoelace /'ʃu:leɪs/ 72  
 shoot /ʃu:t/ 35  
 shooting /'ʃu:tɪŋ/ 46  
 shoplifter /'ʃɒplɪftə(r)/ 35  
 shoplifting /'ʃɒplɪftɪŋ/ 35  
 shopping list /'ʃɒpɪŋ ,lɪst/ 4  
 shopping mall  
     /'ʃɒpɪŋ ,mɔ:l, ,mæl/ 80  
 shore /ʃɔ:(r)/ 12  
 short sleeves /,ʃɔ:t 'sli:vz/ 23  
 shoulder /'ʃəʊldə(r)/ 5  
 shout /ʃaʊt/ 34  
 show *as in* on show /ʃəʊ/ 43  
 show your feelings  
     /,ʃəʊ ,jɔ: 'fi:lɪŋz/ 7  
 shutters /'ʃʌtəz/ 30  
 sick pay /'sɪk ,peɪ/ 54  
 side *as in* left/right-hand side  
     /saɪd/ 33  
 side (in a war) /saɪd/ 39  
 sidewalk /'saɪdwɜ:k/ 80  
 sigh /saɪ/ 34  
 sight /saɪt/ 37  
 sign a contract  
     /,saɪn ə kɒntrækt/ 57  
 significant /sɪg'nɪfɪkənt/ 55  
 significantly /sɪg'nɪfɪkəntli/ 55  
 silence /'saɪləns/ 34  
 silent /'saɪlənt/ 34  
 silk /sɪlk/ 23  
 silly /'sɪli/ 63  
 silver /'sɪlvə(r)/ 31  
 similar /'sɪmələ(r)/ 60  
 similarity /,sɪmə'lærəti/ 60  
 simple /'sɪmpl/ 69  
 since /sɪns/ 68  
 sincerely *as in* yours sincerely  
     /,sɪn'sɪəli/ 78  
 singer *as in* lead singer  
     /'sɪŋə(r)/ 45  
 single parent  
     /,sɪŋgl 'peərənt/ 9  
 sink /sɪŋk/ 12  
 Sir /sɜ:(r)/ 78  
 skid /skɪd/ 21, 22  
 skier /'ski:ə(r)/ 45  
 skilful /'skɪfl/ 58  
 skill /skɪl/ 58  
 skilled /skɪld/ 43, 58  
 skim /skɪm/ 47  
 skin /skɪn/ 5  
 skinned *as in* dark/light/pale-  
     skinned /skɪnd/ 5  
 skinny /'skɪni/ 5  
 slang /slæŋ/ 3  
 slash /slæʃ/ 4  
 sleep *n, v* /sli:p/ 19  
 sleep like a log  
     /,sli:p ,lɑ:k ə 'lɒg/ 19  
 sleepy /'sli:pi/ 19  
 sleeve /sli:v/ 23  
 slender /'slendə(r)/ 5  
 slight /slaɪt/ 55  
 slightly /'slaɪtli/ 55  
 slim /slɪm/ 5  
 slip /slɪp/ 23  
 slipped /slɪpt/ 20  
 slow down /,sləʊ 'daʊn/ 21  
 small letters /'smɔ:l ,letəz/ 4  
 smash /smæʃ/ 34  
 smell /smel/ 32  
 smooth /smu:ð/ 5  
 smoothly *as in* go smoothly  
     /'smu:ðli/ 65  
 snack /snæk/ 17  
 snake /sneɪk/ 15  
 sneeze /sni:z/ 34  
 snore /snɔ:(r)/ 19  
 so /səʊ/ 68  
 so that /'səʊ ðæt/ 68  
 soaked /səʊkt/ 13  
 soaking wet /,səʊkɪŋ 'wet/ 13  
 sociable /'səʊʃəbl/ 8  
 social worker  
     /'səʊʃl ,wɜ:kə(r)/ 52  
 soft /sɒft/ 69  
 solar system  
     /'səʊlə ,sɪstəm/ 11  
 soldier /'səʊldɪə(r)/ 39  
 solid /'sɒlɪd/ 13  
 solo artist /'səʊləʊ ,ɑ:tɪst/ 44  
 solution /sə'lu:ʃn/ 53  
 solve a problem  
     /,sɒlv ə 'prɒbləm/ 53  
 songwriter /'sɒŋraɪtə(r)/ 44  
 sorry to bother you  
     /,sɒri tə 'bɒðə ,ju:/ 66  
 sort /sɔ:t/ 43  
 sort of /'sɔ:t əv/ 77  
 sort out /,sɔ:t 'aʊt/ 65  
 sound like /'saʊnd ,laɪk/ 32



- space (= area round planets) /speɪs/ 11  
 space (= area that is empty) /speɪs/ 29  
 spacious /ˈspeɪʃəs/ 30, 69  
 specialist /ˈspeʃəlɪst/ 25  
 specialized /ˈspeʃəlaɪzd/ 2  
 spectacular /ˈspekˌtækjələ(r)/ 48  
 spectators /ˈspekˌtətəz/ 45  
 speech *as in* make a speech /spi:tʃ/ 10  
 speed /spi:d/ 79  
 speed limit /ˈspi:d ˌlɪmɪt/ 21  
 speedometer /ˈspiːˈdɒmɪtə(r)/ 21  
 spicy /ˈspaɪsi/ 73  
 spider /ˈspaɪdə(r)/ 15  
 spinach /ˈspɪnɪʃ, -ɪdʒ/ 16  
 spite *as in* in spite of /spaɪt/ 68  
 split up /ˌsplɪt ˈʌp/ 8  
 spoil /spɔɪl/ 66  
 spot /spɒt/ 59  
 spots /spɒts/ 15  
 spray /spreɪ/ 34  
 spread /spred/ 13  
 square *adj, n* /skweə(r)/ 31  
 squeeze /skwiːz/ 34  
 squid /skwɪd/ 16  
 stab /stæb/ 35  
 stability /stəˈbɪləti/ 55  
 stable /ˈsterbl/ 55  
 stadium /ˈstædɪəm/ 45  
 stain /stem/ 26  
 staircase /ˈsteɪkɪs/ 30  
 stand *as in* can't stand /stænd/ 62  
 stand for /ˈstænd ˌfɔː(r), ˌfə(r)/ 79  
 standard /ˈstændəd/ 45  
 stare /steə(r)/ 32  
 star /stɑː(r)/ 11  
 starve /stɑːv/ 14  
 starve to death /ˌstɑːv tə ˈdeθ/ 14  
 stay the same /ˌsteɪ ðə ˈseɪm/ 55  
 steadily /ˈstedɪli/ 55  
 steady /ˈstedi/ 55  
 steal /stiːl/ 35  
 steel /stiːl/ 31  
 steep /stiːp/ 12  
 steer /stɪə(r)/ 21  
 steering wheel /ˈstiəriŋ ˌwiːl/ 21  
 stepbrother /ˈstepbrʌðə(r)/ 9  
 stepdaughter /ˈstepdɔːtə(r)/ 9  
 stepfather /ˈstepfɑːðə(r)/ 9  
 stepmother /ˈstepmʌðə(r)/ 9  
 stepsister /ˈstepsɪstə(r)/ 9  
 stepson /ˈstepsən/ 9  
 stick /stɪk/ 26  
 stick together /ˌstɪk təˈgeðə(r)/ 26  
 stiff *as in* scared stiff /stɪf/ 7  
 still /stɪl/ 68  
 still life /ˌstɪl ˈlaɪf/ 43  
 sting /stɪŋ/ 15  
 stink /stɪŋk/ 32  
 stir /stɜː(r)/ 17  
 stock /stɒk/ 55  
 stocky /ˈstɒki/ 5  
 stone (= seed of a fruit) /stəʊn/ 16  
 stone (= building material) /stəʊn/ 30  
 stop *as in* full stop /stɒp/ 4  
 stop off /ˌstɒp ˈɒf/ 22  
 storage /ˈstɔːrɪdʒ/ 30  
 store *n* /stɔː(r)/ 80  
 store *v* /stɔː(r)/ 30  
 straight /streɪt/ 31  
 straightaway /ˌstreɪtəˈweɪ/ 25  
 stranger /ˈstreɪndʒə(r)/ 78  
 strategy /ˈstrætədʒi/ 58  
 stream /striːm/ 12  
 strength /streŋθ/ 58  
 stress (= emphasis) /stres/ 3  
 stress (= anxious state) /stres/ 54  
 stressful /ˈstresfl/ 54  
 strict /strikt/ 64  
 strike /straɪk/ 14  
 striking /ˈstraɪkɪŋ/ 48  
 string /strɪŋ/ 26  
 stripe /straɪp/ 15  
 stroke /straʊk/ 37  
 strongly /ˈstrɒŋli/ 76  
 struggle *n, v* /ˈstrʌɡl/ 56  
 stubble /ˈstʌbl/ 5  
 stuck /stʌk/ 22  
 studio /ˈstjuːdiəʊ/ 43  
 stuff /stʌf/ 77  
 stupid /ˈstjuːpɪd/ 6  
 style (in fashion) /stɑɪl/ 23  
 style (= way sth is written or drawn) /stɑɪl/ 3, 43  
 stylish /ˈstɑɪlɪʃ/ 23  
 subject to /ˈsʌbdʒɪkt tə/ 51  
 substantial /səbˈstænʃl/ 30  
 suburb /ˈsʌbəːb/ 29  
 subway (= path under a road/ railway) /ˈsʌbweɪ/ 29  
 subway (= underground railway) /ˈsʌbweɪ/ 80  
 succeed /səkˈsiːd/ 49  
 success /səkˈses/ 49  
 successful /səkˈsesfl/ 25  
 such as /ˈsʌʃ əz/ 4  
 sudden /ˈsʌdn/ 14  
 suddenly /ˈsʌdnli/ 14  
 sue /sweɪd/ 23  
 suffer from /ˈsʌfə frəm/ 19  
 suit /suːt/ 23  
 suitable /ˈsuːtəbl/ 42  
 sun /sʌn/ 11  
 supplier /səˈplaɪə(r)/ 56  
 supply *n* /səˈplaɪ/ 14  
 supply *v* /səˈplaɪ/ 56  
 support *n, v* (= agreement/ agree) /səˈpɔːt/ 63  
 support *v* (= help) /səˈpɔːt/ 9  
 support *v* (= follow a team) /səˈpɔːt/ 45  
 supporters /səˈpɔːtəz/ 45  
 supporting role /səˈpɔːtɪŋ ˌrɒl/ 42  
 supportive /səˈpɔːtɪv/ 7  
 suppose *as in* I suppose so /səˈpəʊz/ 65  
 supposed *as in* be supposed to /səˈpəʊzd/ 61  
 sure *as in* make sure /ʃʊə(r)/ 53, 66  
 surface /ˈsɜːfɪs/ 12  
 surfer /ˈsɜːfə(r)/ 57  
 surgeon /ˈsɜːdʒən/ 25  
 surgery /ˈsɜːdʒəri/ 24  
 surrender /səˈrendə(r)/ 39  
 surrounded by /səˈraʊndɪd ˌbaɪ/ 29  
 surrounding *adj* /səˈraʊndɪŋ/ 14  
 surroundings *n* /səˈraʊndɪŋz/ 14  
 survival /səˈvaɪvl/ 15, 56  
 survive /səˈvaɪv/ 15, 56  
 suspect /ˈsʌspekt/ 36  
 suspicious /səˈspɪʃəs/ 69  
 swallow /ˈswɒləʊ/ 67  
 swear /swɛə(r)/ 42  
 swearing /ˈswɛəriŋ/ 42  
 sweater /ˈswetə(r)/ 23  
 sweep /swiːp/ 27  
 sweetcorn /ˈswiːtkɔːn/ 16  
 sweets /swiːts/ 80  
 swimmer /ˈswɪmə(r)/ 45





swimming pool

/'swɪmɪŋ ,pu:l/ 45

switch off /,swɪtʃ 'ɒf/ 75

switch on /,swɪtʃ 'ɒn/ 75

swollen /'swɒləʊn/ 20

syllable /'sɪləbl/ 3

symbol /'sɪmbəl/ 3

sympathetic /,sɪmpə'θetɪk/ 7

symptom /'sɪmptəm/ 20

system *as in* solar system

/'sɪstəm/ 11

t (tonne) /tʌn/ 79

tail /teɪl/ 15

take a tooth out

/,teɪk ə 'tu:θ ,aʊt/ 24

take advantage of

/,teɪk əd'vɑ:ntɪdʒ əv/ 71

take after /'teɪk ,ɑ:fɪə(r)/ 9, 75

take care /,teɪk 'keə(r)/ 77, 78

take care of /,teɪk 'keə əv/ 25, 52, 71

take notes /,teɪk 'nəʊts/ 50

take out /,teɪk 'aʊt/ 50, 55

take over /,teɪk 'əʊvə(r)/ 56

take part in /,teɪk 'pɑ:t ,ɪn/ 46, 48

take pictures /,teɪk 'pɪktʃəz/ 43

take place /,teɪk 'pleɪs/ 36, 46

take sb on /,teɪk ,... 'ɒn/ 56

take sth off /,teɪk ,... 'ɒf/ 75

take time off

/,teɪk ,taɪm 'ɒf/ 54

takeover /'teɪkəʊvə(r)/ 56

talent /'tælənt/ 44

talented /'tæləntɪd/ 44

tallish /'tɔ:lɪʃ/ 5

tan /tæn/ 5

tanned /tænd/ 5

tap /tæp/ 32

target v /'tɑ:ɡɪt/ 58

target market

/,tɑ:ɡɪt 'mɑ:kɪt/ 58

task /tɑ:sk/ 27

taste /teɪst/ 32

tax /tæks/ 55

tear *as in* burst into tears

/tɪə(r)/ 34

tear up /,tɪər 'ʌp/ 34

technique /tek'ni:k/ 43

television /'telɪvɪʒn/ 79

tell /tel/ 5

telly /'teli/ 79

temper *as in* keep/lose your

temper /'tempə(r)/ 66

temporarily /'tempərəli/ 20

temporary /'tempərəri/ 69

tend /tend/ 74

tendency /'tendənsi/ 74

tennis player

/'tenɪs ,pleɪə(r)/ 45

terrible /'terəbl/ 66

terribly /'terəbli/ 76

terrified /'terɪfaɪd/ 7, 69

terrifying /'terɪfaɪn/ 69

test /test/ 25

text /tekst/ 1

the accused /ði ə'kju:zd/ 36

the defence /ðə dɪ'fens/ 36

the outskirts /ði 'aʊtskɜ:ts/ 22

the point is /ðə 'pɔɪnt ,ɪz/ 63

theater *as in* movie theater

/'θiətə(r)/ 80

theft /θɛft/ 35

theory *as in* in theory

/θiəri/ 63

therefore /'ðeəfɔ:(r)/ 68

these days /'ði:z ,deɪz/ 70

thesis /'θi:sɪs/ 50

thief /θi:f/ 35

think /θɪŋk/ 63

think *as in* I (don't) think so

/θɪŋk/ 65

third quarter

/θɜ:ð 'kwɔ:tə(r)/ 55

thoroughly /'θʌrəli/ 20

though /ðəʊ/ 68

though *as in* even though

/ðəʊ/ 68

thread /θred/ 26

threat /θret/ 41, 58

threaten /'θreɪn/ 41

thrilled /θrɪld/ 7

throughout /θru:'aʊt/ 70

throw /θrəʊ/ 48

throw away /θrəʊ ə'weɪ/ 27

thyme /taɪm/ 16

tidal wave /'taɪdl ,weɪv/ 14

tide /taɪd/ 12

tidy up /,taɪdi 'ʌp/ 27

tie /taɪ/ 26

tie up /,taɪ 'ʌp/ 72

tied up /,taɪd 'ʌp/ 61

tiger /'taɪɡə(r)/ 15

tighten /'taɪtn/ 26

tights /taɪts/ 23

time *as in* from time to time

/taɪm/ 70

time *as in* in time /taɪm/ 50time *as in* on time /taɪm/ 50

time off /,taɪm 'ɒf/ 54

tiny /'taɪni/ 30

tip /tɪp/ 21, 58

title /'taɪtl/ 47

to a certain extent

/,tu ə 'sɜ:tn ɪk'stent/ 76

to go /tə 'ɡəʊ/ 70

to some extent

/tə 'sʌm ɪk'stent/ 76

toast *as in* drink a toast

/təʊst/ 10

together *as in* get together

/tə'geðə(r)/ 8, 61

tolerance /'tɒlərəns/ 6

tolerant /'tɒlərənt/ 6

toll *as in* death toll /tɒl/ 14

ton /tʌn/ 48

tonne /tʌn/ 79

tools /tu:lz/ 26

tooth /tu:θ/ 24

toothache /'tu:θeɪk/ 24

top /tɒp/ 33

totally /'təʊtəli/ 76

touch /tʌtʃ/ 32

toward /tə'wɔ:d/ 70

towards /tə'wɔ:dz/ 70

toy /tɔɪ/ 31

track /træk/ 45

trade union /,treɪd 'ju:niən/ 54

traditional /trə'dɪʃənəl/ 10

traffic jam /'træfɪk ,dʒæm/ 22

train /treɪn/ 52

training /'treɪnɪŋ/ 52

transfer /træns'fɜ:(r)/ 43, 53

transform /træns'fɔ:m/ 23

translate /træns'leɪt/ 1

translation /træns'leɪʃn/ 1

trap /træp/ 14

trapped /træpt/ 14

trash /træʃ/ 80

trash can /'træʃ ,kæn/ 80

travel /'trævl/ 76

travel agent

/'trævl ,eɪdʒənt/ 52

treat /tri:t/ 24, 25

treatment /'tri:tment/ 24, 25

trend /trend/ 55

trial /'traɪəl/ 36

triangle /'traɪəŋɡl/ 31

triangular /traɪ'æŋɡjələ(r)/ 31

trim n, v /trɪm/ 28

trip /trɪp/ 22

tropical /'trɒpɪkl/ 73

trouble /trʌbl/ 22

trout /traʊt/ 16

truck /trʌk/ 80

trumpet /'trʌmpɪt/ 44

trumpeter /'trʌmpɪtə(r)/ 44



- trunk /trʌŋk/ 15  
 trust /trʌst/ 8  
 try /traɪ/ 36  
 tube /tju:b/ 34  
 tuition fees /tju:'fɪn ,fi:z/ 50  
 tune /tju:n/ 44  
 turkey /'tɜ:ki/ 15  
 turn down /,tɜ:n 'daʊn/ 77  
 turn up /,tɜ:n 'ʌp/ 22  
 turnover /'tɜ:nəʊvə(r)/ 55  
 tutor /'tju:tə(r)/ 50  
 TV (television) /,ti: 'vi:/ 79  
 two as in fold in two /tu:/ 34  
 typhoon /taɪ'fu:n/ 14  
 tyre /'taɪə(r)/ 21, 31
- UFO (unidentified flying  
 object) /ju: ,ef 'əʊ/ 79  
 UN (United Nations)  
 /ju: 'en/ 79  
 UEFA /ju:'eɪfə/ 79  
 umpire /'ʌmpaɪə(r)/ 45  
 unacceptable  
 /,ʌnək'septəbl/ 72  
 unambitious /,ʌnæm'bɪʃəs/ 6  
 unconscious /,ʌn'kɒnʃəs/ 20  
 underestimate  
 /,ʌndər'estɪmeɪt/ 56  
 undergraduate  
 /,ʌndə'grædʒuət/ 50  
 underneath /,ʌndə'ni:θ/ 70  
 underpants /'ʌndəpænts/ 23  
 underwater  
 /,ʌndə'wɔ:tə(r)/ 12  
 underwear /'ʌndəweə(r)/ 23  
 undo /,ʌn'du:/ 72  
 unemployed /,ʌnɪm'plɔɪd/ 53  
 unexpected /,ʌnɪk'spektɪd/ 69  
 unfair /,ʌn'feə(r)/ 72  
 unfasten /,ʌn'fɑ:sn/ 72  
 unhealthy /,ʌn'helθi/ 17  
 union /'ju:niən/ 54  
 universe /'ju:nɪvɜ:s/ 11  
 unless /ən'les/ 68  
 unlikely /,ʌn'laikli/ 59  
 unlimited /,ʌn'limɪtɪd/ 58  
 unload /,ʌn'ləʊd/ 72  
 unlock /,ʌn'lɒk/ 72  
 unpack /,ʌn'pæk/ 72  
 unplug /,ʌn'plʌg/ 72  
 unpredictable  
 /,ʌnpri'dɪktəbl/ 13  
 unreasonable /,ʌn'ri:znəbl/ 69  
 unskilled /,ʌn'skɪld/ 58  
 unsuitable /,ʌn'su:təbl/ 42  
 untie /,ʌn'taɪ/ 72
- unwilling /,ʌn'wɪlɪŋ/ 39  
 unwrap /,ʌn'ræp/ 72  
 up as in it's up to me /ʌp/ 64  
 up as in what's up? /ʌp/ 77  
 up to /'ʌp tə/ 15  
 upset /ʌp'set/ 7  
 upturn /'ʌptɜ:n/ 58  
 urban /'ɜ:bən/ 69  
 urgent /'ɜ:ʤənt/ 25  
 useful /'ju:sfl/ 73  
 useless /'ju:sləs/ 73
- VAT (value added tax)  
 /,vi: ,er 'ti:/ 79  
 vacancy /'veɪkənsi/ 51  
 vacation /və'keɪʃn/ 80  
 vacuum /'vækjuəm/ 27  
 vacuum cleaner  
 /'vækjuəm ,kli:nə(r)/ 27  
 vague /veɪg/ 77  
 valid /'vælɪd/ 22, 51  
 value n, v /'vælju:/ 18  
 van /væn/ 22  
 vanish /'vænɪʃ/ 13  
 variety /və'reɪəti/ 43  
 vary /'veəri/ 15, 43  
 veal /vi:l/ 16  
 vehicle /'vi:əkl/ 22, 52  
 versatile /'vɜ:sətəɪl/ 23  
 vertical /'vɜ:tɪkl/ 31  
 very /'veri/ 7  
 vest /vest/ 23  
 vet /vet/ 79  
 victim /'vɪktɪm/ 36  
 violence /'vaɪələns/ 14, 35  
 violent /'vaɪələnt/ 14, 35  
 violin /vaɪə'lin/ 44  
 violinist /vaɪə'lnɪst/ 44  
 vital /'vartl/ 69  
 vitally /'vartəli/ 76  
 v-neck /'vi: ,nek/ 23  
 voice /vɔɪs/ 44  
 volcanic /vɒl'kænik/ 14  
 volcano /vɒl'keɪnəʊ/ 14  
 vote n, v /vəʊt/ 38
- waistcoat /'weɪskəʊt/ 23  
 wake /weɪk/ 19  
 wall /wɔ:l/ 30  
 walled /wɔ:ld/ 30  
 wallet /'wɒlɪt/ 80  
 war /wɔ:(r)/ 39  
 ward /wɔ:d/ 25  
 warmth /wɔ:mθ/ 33  
 warn /wɔ:n/ 67, 74  
 warning /'wɔ:nɪŋ/ 22, 67
- washable /'wɒʃəbl/ 73  
 washing up /,wɒʃɪŋ 'ʌp/ 27  
 waste of money  
 /,weɪst əv 'mʌni/ 17, 18  
 waste of time  
 /,weɪst əv 'tʌm/ 17  
 watch /wɒtʃ/ 32  
 watch out /,wɒtʃ 'aʊt/ 21, 67  
 water as in running water  
 /'wɔ:tə(r)/ 20  
 watercolour /'wɔ:təkələ(r)/ 43  
 waterfall /'wɔ:təfɔ:l/ 12  
 waterproof /'wɔ:təpru:f/ 73  
 wave /weɪv/ 12  
 wave as in tidal wave  
 /weɪv/ 14  
 wax /wæks/ 31  
 way as in on my/the way  
 /weɪ/ 22  
 weakness /'wi:knəs/ 58  
 wealthy /'welθi/ 18  
 wedding /'wedɪŋ/ 10  
 wedding reception  
 /'wedɪŋ rɪ'sepʃn/ 10  
 weigh /weɪ/ 15  
 weight /weɪt/ 15  
 weightlifting /'weɪtlɪftɪŋ/ 46  
 well /wel/ 25  
 well built /,wel 'bɪlt/ 5  
 well informed  
 /,wel ɪn'fɔ:md/ 47  
 well known /,wel 'nəʊn/ 47  
 well off /,wel 'ɒf/ 18  
 well written /,wel 'rɪtn/ 47  
 whale /weɪl/ 15  
 what about ...?  
 /'wɒt ə,baʊt/ 61  
 what do you think about ...?  
 /,wɒt də ,ju: ,θɪŋk ə,baʊt  
 '.../ 63  
 what does your job involve?  
 /,wɒt dəz ,jɔ: ,ɪnvəʊv  
 m'vɒlv/ 53  
 what for? /,wɒt 'fɔ:/ 77  
 what's more /,wɒts 'mɔ:(r)/ 68  
 what's the point of ...?  
 /'wɒts ðə ,pɔɪnt əv/ 66  
 what's up with ...? /,wɒts ,ʌp  
 wɪð '.../ 77  
 what've you been up to?  
 /,wɒtəv ,ju: bɪn 'ʌp ,tu:/ 77  
 wheel /wi:l/ 21  
 whereas /,weər'æz/ 68  
 whether /'weðə(r)/ 78  
 while as in after a while  
 /waɪl/ 2



- whisper /'wɪspə(r)/ 34  
 whistle /'wɪsl/ 29  
 whole /həʊl/ 41  
 whole as in on the whole /həʊl/ 76  
 wide /waɪd/ 12, 45  
 wide awake /,waɪd ə'weɪk/ 19  
 wide range /,waɪd 'reɪndʒ/ 2  
 widely /'waɪdli/ 76  
 widow /'wɪdəʊ/ 10  
 widower /'wɪdəʊə(r)/ 10  
 width /wɪð/ 12, 45  
 wife /waɪf/ 10  
 wild (= living in natural conditions) /waɪld/ 15  
 wild (= exciting and enjoyable) /waɪld/ 48  
 will /wɪl/ 10  
 willing /'wɪlɪŋ/ 39  
 win /wɪn/ 42  
 windscreen /'wɪndskri:n/ 21  
 windscreen wiper /'wɪndskri:n ,waɪpə(r)/ 21  
 wing /wɪŋ/ 15  
 wing mirror /'wɪŋ ,mɪrə(r)/ 21  
 winner /'wɪnə(r)/ 42  
 wipe /waɪp/ 27  
 wiper as in windscreen wiper /'waɪpə(r)/ 21  
 wire /'waɪə(r)/ 26  
 wish /wɪʃ/ 10  
 wishes as in best wishes /'wɪʃɪz/ 78  
 witness /'wɪtnəs/ 36  
 wonder /'wʌndə(r)/ 29  
 words as in in other words /wɜ:dz/ 11  
 wood /wʊd/ 31  
 wooden /'wʊdn/ 31  
 wool /wʊl/ 31  
 woollen /'wʊlən/ 31  
 work (= get a result) /wɜ:k/ 1  
 work (= function) /wɜ:k/ 26  
 work as in out of work /wɜ:k/ 53  
 work as in shift work /wɜ:k/ 54  
 work of art /,wɜ:k əv 'ɑ:t/ 43  
 work out /,wɜ:k 'aʊt/ 75  
 work overtime /,wɜ:k 'əʊvətaɪm/ 54  
 work permit /'wɜ:k ,pɜ:mɪt/ 51  
 working conditions /'wɜ:kɪŋ kən,dɪʃnz/ 54  
 worldwide /wɜ:ld'waɪd/ 45  
 worth /wɜ:θ/ 18  
 would rather /,wʊd 'rɑ:ðə(r)/ 62  
 wound /wu:nd/ 20  
 wrap up /,ræp 'ʌp/ 72  
 wrestling /'reslɪŋ/ 46  
 wrinkles /'rɪŋklz/ 5  
 write a thesis /,raɪt ə 'θi:sɪs/ 50  
 writing as in in writing /'raɪtɪŋ/ 66  
 wrong /rɒŋ/ 26  
 wrong as in go wrong /rɒŋ/ 8, 65  
 yawning /'jɔ:nɪŋ/ 19  
 yeah /jeə/ 77  
 you must be joking /,ju: ,mʌst ,bi 'dʒəʊkɪŋ/ 77  
 you're joking /,jɔ: 'dʒəʊkɪŋ/ 77  
 youngish /'jʌŋɪʃ/ 5  
 yours faithfully /,jɔ:z 'feɪθfəli/ 78  
 yours sincerely /,jɔ:z sɪn'sɪəli/ 78  
 zoom lens /'zu:m ,lenz/ 43



## Acknowledgements

*The authors and publishers would like to thank teachers and students from the following schools who helped with the development of this book:*

International House, Business English Centre, Madrid, Spain  
Shamrock School of English, Getxo, Bizkaia, Spain  
English Language Institute, Macarena, Seville, Spain  
English Centre, Valencia, Spain  
Tti School of English, London, UK  
Bell International, London, UK  
Mark Appleton, Mark Lloyd, and the students at International House,  
Bath, UK  
Małgorzata Salomądry, Dorota Brach, Anna Wnuk, and Iza  
Algermissen in Poland

*They would also like to thank:*

Theresa Clementson, Sian Morgan, Carol Tabor, and Scott Thornbury  
for their valuable comments on early drafts of the text.

The actors Nigel Greaves and Joanna Hall and The Soundhouse Ltd  
for the listening material.

Daniel Bleyer (Germany); Blanca Gonzalez (Spain); Atena Juszko  
(Poland); Ilaria Milisenna (Italy); Claire Ransom (Britain); Sadako  
Shokatsu (Japan); Maurizio Tinnirello (Colombia); and Nina  
Weirum (Norway) for ABOUT YOU answers.

Suzanne Williams for picture research.

Pippa Mayfield for phonetic transcriptions.

# Oxford Word Skills

Learn and practise English vocabulary

**Intermediate** for intermediate and upper-intermediate learners

- Learn the words you need to know at each level (Basic, Intermediate, and Advanced)
- See how the words and phrases are used in spoken and written English
- Practise using the vocabulary
- Revise what you've learned
- Improve your vocabulary-learning skills
- Learn the words as preparation for the major exams



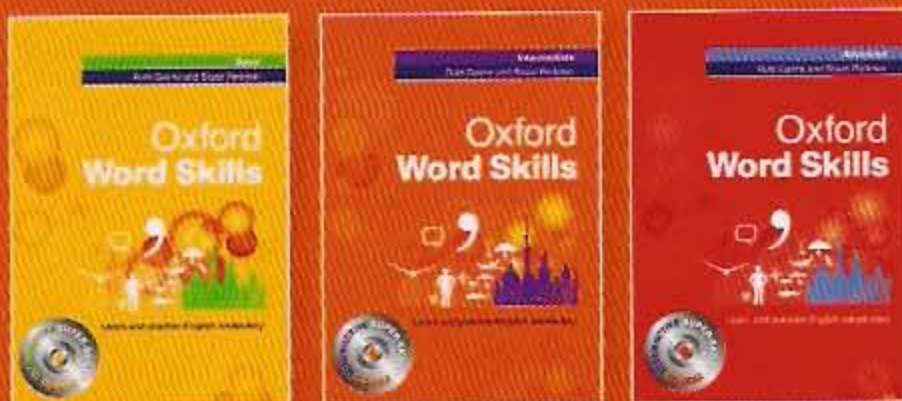
Use the CD-ROM to listen to the words, learn how to say them, and practise using them.



It's easy to test yourself. Just use the card inside to 'cover and check'.

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman are language teaching experts who specialize in writing materials for learning and teaching vocabulary.

[www.oup.com/elt/wordskills](http://www.oup.com/elt/wordskills)



**OXFORD**  
UNIVERSITY PRESS

[www.oup.com/elt](http://www.oup.com/elt)

**CEF**  
C1  
B2  
B1

OXFORD ENGLISH  
ISBN 978-0-19-462007-9



9 780194 620079